

sui generis
ANCE
G
ONAL

Court Assistance in the Taking of
Evidence in International Arbitration

Lorenz Raess

Lorenz Raess

Court Assistance in the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration

*To my wife and best friend Joëlle, our son Aaron,
and my parents Annelise and Hugo for their loving support.*

Lorenz Raess

Court Assistance in the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration

Dissertation

sui generis, Zürich 2020

Dissertation zur Erlangung der Würde eines Doktors der Rechte,
vorgelegt der Rechtswissenschaftlichen Fakultät der Universität Freiburg
in der Schweiz von Lorenz Raess.

Genehmigt von der Rechtswissenschaftlichen Fakultät der
Universität Freiburg am 20. April 2020 auf Antrag von
Herrn Professor Dr. Ramon Mabillard (erster Referent) und
Herrn Professor Dr. Michel Heinzmann (zweiter Referent).

Mit der Annahme einer Dissertation beabsichtigt die Rechtswissen-
schaftliche Fakultät der Universität Freiburg nicht, zu den darin
enthaltenen wissenschaftlichen Meinungen des Verfassers Stellung
zu nehmen (Fakultätsratsbeschluss vom 1. Juli 1916).

Acknowledgments

After finishing my bar exam, I was convinced I would never write a doctoral thesis: ‘It’s complicated, takes time and, worst of all, you are all on your own!’ But two and a half years later, it has come to pass. And the occasional challenges were far outweighed by the exciting research and writing process, in which—much to my surprise—I found considerable joy. This was due not only to the process itself, but also to the many people who accompanied me along the way.

It would take too many pages and too much time to thank all the people involved in this fascinating project. Nevertheless, the help and support of certain people cannot be emphasised enough and they deserve special mention here.

Professor Ramon Mabillard not only supervised my doctoral thesis, but also helped me to carve out the topic and provided indispensable help and guidance all along the way. *Merci!* Furthermore, profound thanks go to Professor Michel Heinzmüller for drafting the second expert report.

For their feedback on the comparative section of this book, I owe my gratitude to the following arbitration practitioners around the world: Dr. Ben Steinbrück (Mannheim); Carine Dupeyron (Paris); Professor Charles Jarrosso (Paris); Dr. Emilia Onyema (London); Jonathan Chambers (Bristol); Giles A. Harvey (London); Christopher Adams (London); Yasmine Lahlou (New York); and Lucas Bento (New York). I am also grateful for the support of Julia Ramseyer and Thomas Trösch, who read parts of my dissertation and provided me with helpful advice. Warm thanks also to Carolyn Boyle, who reviewed this book and made it sound so much better! I am also very grateful to the whole team from *sui generis* for their outstanding work in the publication process—thank you!

Three people deserve very special praise. From the very beginning, my parents always supported my project and have been there for me every step of the way. They are both such great role models! I particularly want to thank my father, Dr. Hugo Räss, who not only reviewed the whole book, but also encouraged me to keep pushing on and finish this project, just as he did when writing his own doctoral thesis. Finally, my wife Joëlle deserves the highest praise. She never doubted me, but instead always showed empathy and understanding. I dedicate this work to Joëlle and our son, Aaron.

This doctoral thesis was submitted to the Faculty of Law of the University of Fribourg in the fall semester of 2019 and was successfully defended on 20 April 2020. Case law and legal doctrine have been considered until May 2020.

Berne, May 2020

Brief Contents

Acknowledgments	V
Brief Contents	VII
Table of Contents	XI
List of Abbreviations	XIX

Chapter 1: Introduction	1
Chapter 2: Different Approaches to the Taking of Evidence	7
Chapter 3: Legal Framework for the Taking of Evidence	17
Chapter 4: Sanctions of the Arbitral Tribunal	55
Chapter 5: Limits to the Taking of Evidence	79
Chapter 6: Court Assistance in International Arbitration	85
Chapter 7: Comparative Analysis	133
Chapter 8: Swiss Perspective	219
Chapter 9: Conclusion	283
Bibliography	293
Table of Cases	323
Table of Legislation	335
Legislative Materials	339

Table of Contents

Acknowledgments	V
Brief Contents	VII
Table of Contents	IX
List of Abbreviations	XXI
<hr/>	
Chapter 1: Introduction	1
§ 1 International Arbitration and its Limitations	1
§ 2 Importance of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	2
§ 3 Method and Distinctions	3
§ 4 Structure of the Book	4
<hr/>	
Chapter 2: Different Approaches to the Taking of Evidence	7
§ 1 Introduction	7
§ 2 Distinctions	9
§ 3 Common Law Approach	10
§ 4 Civil Law Approach	13
§ 5 Conclusion	15
<hr/>	
Chapter 3: Legal Framework for the Taking of Evidence	17
§ 1 Introduction	17
§ 2 Leges Arbitri	17
A. Introduction	17
B. Seat of Arbitration	19
C. Broad Discretion of Leges Arbitri	20
D. Limits to the Broad Discretion	21
E. Summary	22
§ 3 Arbitration Agreement	23
A. Introduction	23
B. Content of the Arbitration Agreement	23
C. Separability	24
D. Summary	26
§ 4 Arbitration Rules	26

A. Introduction	26
B. General Provisions	27
C. Case Management Conference	29
D. Harmonisation Initiatives	30
1. IBA Rules	31
a. Content	31
b. Application	31
c. Scope of Application	33
d. Result	33
2. UNCITRAL Notes	34
E. Examples of Evidence in International Arbitration	34
1. Document Production	35
a. Introduction	35
b. Document Production in the IBA Rules	36
c. Civil Law Institutional Arbitration Rules	37
d. Common Law Institutional Arbitration Rules	38
e. Result	40
2. Witnesses	41
a. Introduction	41
b. Witnesses in the IBA Rules	42
I. <i>Identity of Witnesses</i>	42
II. <i>Interaction Between Parties and Witnesses</i>	43
III. <i>Examination of Witnesses</i>	44
c. Civil Law Institutional Arbitration Rules	45
d. Common Law Institutional Arbitration Rules	48
e. Result	50
F. Summary	52
§ 5 Conclusion	53
<hr/> Chapter 4: Sanctions of the Arbitral Tribunal	55
§ 1 Introduction	55
§ 2 Adverse Inference	56
A. Introduction	56
B. Sources of Adverse Inference in International Arbitration	57
1. Leges Arbitri and Institutional Arbitration Rules	57
2. IBA Rules	58
3. Iran-United States Claims Tribunal	60

C. Anticipated Assessment of Evidence	63
D. Drawing of an Adverse Inference in Practice	64
E. Summary	65
§3 Cost Sanctions	66
A. Introduction	66
B. Allocating the Costs	66
C. Sanctions Against Party Representatives	68
1. Introduction	68
2. IBA Guidelines	69
3. LCIA Guidelines	71
4. Result	72
D. Monetary Penalties	73
1. Introduction	73
2. Legal Basis	73
3. Astreintes in Switzerland	74
4. Result	76
E. Summary	76
§4 Conclusion	77
<hr/> Chapter 5: Limits to the Taking of Evidence	79
§1 Introduction	79
§2 Temporary Lack of Jurisdiction	79
§3 Lack of Coercive Power	81
§4 Third Parties	82
§5 Conclusion	83
<hr/> Chapter 6: Court Assistance in International Arbitration	85
§1 Introduction	85
§2 Measures of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	85
A. Introduction	85
B. Interim Measures	86
C. Measures of Taking Evidence	89
D. Summary	91
§3 Court Assistance versus Court Intervention	91
A. Introduction	91
B. UNCITRAL ML	92

1. Court Assistance in General	92
2. Court Assistance in the Taking of Evidence	93
3. Result	95
C. Arbitration Rules	96
1. IBA Rules	96
a. Documentary Evidence	96
b. Witnesses	98
2. Institutional Arbitration Rules	99
3. Result	99
D. Intention of the Parties	100
E. Summary	102
§ 4 Obligation to Assist Arbitral Tribunals	103
A. Introduction	103
B. Swiss Constitutional Law	104
1. Introduction	104
2. Access to Justice	105
3. Right to be Heard	106
4. Result	108
C. International Public Law	109
1. Introduction	109
2. European Convention on Human Rights	110
a. Introduction	110
b. Case Law of the ECtHR	111
c. Case Law of the Federal Tribunal	112
d. Result	113
3. New York Convention	114
a. Introduction	114
b. Art. II(3) NYC	115
c. Result	116
4. Hague Evidence Convention	118
a. Introduction	118
b. Drafting Process	119
c. Criticism	120
d. Procedural Consequences	121
I. Non-Exclusivity	121
II. Requesting Arbitral Tribunal	122
III. Jurisdiction	122
IV. Participation of the Parties and the Arbitral Tribunal	123

V. Applicable Law and Procedure	123
VI. Costs	123
VII. Duration of Proceedings	124
e. Result	125
5. Summary	125
D. European Law	126
1. Introduction	126
2. ECICA and the Paris Agreement	126
3. European Evidence Regulation	128
4. Result	130
E. Summary	130
§5 Conclusion	131
<hr/>	
Chapter 7: Comparative Analysis	133
§1 Introduction	133
§2 Germany	134
A. Introduction	134
B. Legal Bases	135
C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance	136
1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal	136
2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	137
D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target	138
1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement	138
2. Evidence According to the CCP DE	139
a. In General	139
b. Independent Evidentiary Proceeding	139
3. Foreign Types of Evidence	140
4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence	142
5. Target of Evidence	142
E. Competence of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	143
1. Scope of Discretion	143
2. Principle of Subsidiarity	144
3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement	145
F. Appellate Remedies	146
G. Summary	148

§3 France	150
A. Introduction	150
B. Legal Bases	151
1. Prior to the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal	151
2. After the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal	153
3. Support for Foreign Arbitral Tribunal	154
C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance	155
1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal	155
2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	156
D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target	156
1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement	156
2. Evidence According to the CCP FR	157
a. Prior to the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal ...	157
b. After the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal ...	158
3. Foreign Types of Evidence	159
4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence ...	160
5. Target of Evidence	160
E. Competence of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	161
1. Scope of Discretion	161
2. Principle of Subsidiarity	162
3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement	162
F. Appellate Remedies	163
G. Summary	164
§4 England	166
A. Introduction	166
B. Legal Bases	167
C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance	169
1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal	169
2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	170
D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target	171
1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement	171
2. Evidence According to the EAA 1996	172
a. In General	172
b. Securing the Attendance of Witnesses	172
c. Court Powers Exercisable in Support of Arbitral Proceedings	173
3. Foreign Types of Evidence	174
4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence ...	175
5. Target of Evidence	175

E. Competence of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	177
1. Scope of Discretion	177
2. Principle of Subsidiarity	178
3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement	179
F. Appellate Remedies	180
G. Summary	181
§ 5 USA	183
A. Introduction	183
B. Legal Bases	184
1. Federal Rules of Civil Procedure	184
2. 28 USC § 1782	185
a. General Scope of Application	185
b. Legislative Background	186
c. Case Law	187
I. <i>Introduction</i>	187
II. <i>Decisions prior to Intel</i>	188
III. <i>Intel</i>	190
IV. <i>Decisions after Intel</i>	197
d. Intermediate Result	202
C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance	203
1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal	203
2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	205
D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target	206
1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement	206
2. Evidence According to 28 USC § 1782	206
3. Foreign Types of Evidence	207
4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence	208
5. Target of Evidence	209
E. Competence of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	211
1. Scope of Discretion	211
2. Principle of Subsidiarity	211
3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement	212
F. Appellate Remedies	212
G. Summary	213
§ 6 Conclusion	216

Chapter 8: Swiss Perspective	219
§ 1 Introduction	219
A. Preliminary Remarks	219
B. Popularity of Switzerland as a Seat of Arbitration	219
C. Open Dualism of the Lex Arbitri	221
§ 2 Legal Bases	223
A. Overview	223
B. Court Assistance in Taking Evidence (Art. 184 PILA CH)	223
1. Jurisdiction	223
2. Centralised <i>Juge d'Appui?</i>	224
3. Restricted Assistance for Foreign Arbitral Tribunals	225
a. Situation <i>de lege lata</i>	225
b. Situation <i>de lege ferenda</i>	227
C. Interim Measures (Art. 183 PILA CH)	228
1. In General	228
2. Precautionary Taking of Evidence (Art. 158 CCP CH)	230
D. Other Court Assistance (Art. 185 PILA CH)	232
§ 3 Applicable Procedural Law	233
§ 4 Competence to Seek Court Assistance	233
A. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal	233
B. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence	235
1. Current Opinions in Legal Doctrine	235
2. Right of Minimum Legal Protection	235
3. Reasons in Favour of an Exclusion of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH	236
4. Conclusion	238
§ 5 Spectrum of Evidence and its Target	239
A. Evidence According to a Party Agreement	239
B. Evidence According to the PILA CH	240
C. Foreign Types of Evidence	242
D. Availability of Pre-trial Discovery of Documents?	244
E. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence	246
F. Target of Evidence	246
1. Parties to the Arbitration	246
2. Third Parties	248

§ 6 Competence of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	250
A. Scope of Discretion	250
B. Principle of Subsidiarity	252
C. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement	253
D. Decision on Costs	255
§ 7 Appellate Remedies, Recognition and Enforcement	256
A. Introduction	256
B. Challenge of the Decision of the <i>Juge d'Appui</i>	256
1. Third Parties	259
a. Legitimate Interest	259
b. Objection Against an Interim Decision	260
c. Requirement of the Lower Court	261
d. Result	262
2. Parties	262
a. Case Law of the SFT	262
b. Legitimate Interest	263
c. Objection Against an Interim Decision	265
d. Result	265
C. Challenge of the Arbitral Award	266
1. Conditions According to the FSCA CH	266
2. Equal Treatment of the Parties	268
3. Right to be heard	270
a. Comparative Aspects	270
b. Free Assessment of Evidence	271
c. Anticipated Assessment of Evidence	272
4. Violation of Public Policy	273
5. Result	275
D. Recognition and Enforcement	276
E. Summary	277
§ 8 Conclusion	279
<hr/>	
Chapter 9: Conclusion	283
§ 1 Introduction	283
§ 2 Results	283
A. Complex Legal Framework	283
B. Sanctions Available to the Arbitral Tribunal	284
C. Limited Power of the Arbitral Tribunal	285

D. Court Assistance versus Court Intervention	286
E. (No) Obligation to Assist in the Taking of Evidence	286
F. Inconsistency Among Different Leges Arbitri	287
1. Germany: Rising Popularity	287
2. France: Ongoing Success	288
3. England: Keep Calm and Carry on Arbitrating in London	288
4. USA: Lasting Confusion	289
G. Switzerland's Way Forward	290
§3 Outlook	291
<hr/>	
Bibliography	293
<hr/>	
Table of Cases	323
I. Arbitral Tribunals	323
II. European Court of Human Rights	323
III. Countries	324
<hr/>	
Table of Legislation	335
I. Conventions	335
II. European Law	335
III. Countries	335
<hr/>	
Legislative Materials	339
I. Bibliography of United Nations Documents	339
II. Bibliography of the Hague Convention on International Private Law	340
III. European Law	341
IV. Countries	341

List of Abbreviations

1st Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit
2d Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit
3d Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit
4th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit
5th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit
6th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit
7th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit
8th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Eighth Circuit
9th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit
10th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Tenth Circuit
11th Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit
AAA	American Arbitration Association
AAA Rules	Commercial Arbitration Rules and Mediation Procedures (2013)
AJP	Aktuelle Juristische Praxis
ALI	American Law Institute
All ER	All English Law Reports (UK)
Am. Rev. Int'l Arb.	– American Review of International Arbitration
Am. U. Int'l L. Rev.	– American University International Law Review
Anor	Another
Arb. Int.	Arbitration International
Art.	Article
Arts.	Articles
ASA	Association Suisse de l'Arbitrage (Swiss Arbitration Association)
ASA Bull.	ASA Bulletin
BeckOK	Beck'scher Online-Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Germany)
BK	Berner Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
BR DC	Baurecht / Droit de la construction
BR DC Online	Baurecht / Droit de la construction Online
BSK	Basler Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
BT	Bundestag (Parliament of the Federal Republic of Germany)
C.D. Cal.	Central District of California
CanLII	Canadian Legal Information Institute
CAS	Court of Arbitration for Sport
CAS Code	Code of Sports-related Arbitration (2019)
ch.	chapter

CHK	Handkommentar zum Schweizer Privatrecht (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
CIArb	Chartered Institute of Arbitrators
Cir.	Circuit (Court of Appeals in the USA)
Cirs.	Circuits
Colum. J. Transnat'l L.	– Columbia Journal of Transnational Law
Colum. L. Rev.	Columbia Law Review
Comm.	Commercial
cons.	consideration
CR	Commentaire Romand (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
D. Conn.	District of Connecticut
D. Del.	District of Delaware
D. Mass.	District of Massachusetts
D. Minn.	District Court of Minnesota
D. n. Mar. I.	District of the Northern Marian Islands
D.C. Cir.	United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit
D.C. Colo.	District of Colorado
D.C.C.	District of the District of Columbia
D.D.C.	District Court of Columbia
D.N.J.	District of New Jersey
D.S.C.	District of South Carolina
DFT	Decisions of the Swiss Federal Tribunal
DIKE	DIKE Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
DIS	Deutsche Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit (German Arbitration Institution)
DIS Rules	DIS Arbitration Rules (2018)
E.D. La.	Eastern District of Louisiana
E.D.N.Y.	Eastern District of New York
e.g.	exempli gratia (for example)
ECtHR	European Court of Human Rights
ed.	edition / editor
eds.	editors
et al.	et allii (and others)
et seq. / et seqq. – et sequens	(and the following) / et sequens (and those who follow)
etc.	et cetera (and so forth)
EWCA	Court of Appeal of England and Wales
EWHC	High Court of Justice of England and Wales
F. App'x	Federal Appendix (USA)

F. Supp. (2d/3d)	– Federal Supplement (USA)
F.R.D.	Federal Rules Decision (USA)
fn	footnote
H.R. Rep.	House of Representatives Report (USA)
HK	Handkommentar (Legal Commentary, Germany)
HK-EMRK	Handkommentar Europäische Menschrechtskonvention (Legal Commentary, Germany)
HKIAC	Hong Kong International Arbitration Centre
HKIAC Rules	Arbitration Rules of the Hong Kong International Arbitration Centre (2018)
i.c.w.	in conjunction/connection with
i.e.	id est (that is)
IBA	International Bar Association
IBA Guidelines	IBA Guidelines on Party Representation in International Arbitration (2013)
IBA Report (2016)	– Report on the reception of the IBA arbitration soft law products, the IBA Arbitration Guidelines and Rules Subcommittee (2016)
IBA Review Subcommittee	– Commentary on the revised text of the 2010 IBA Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration
IBA Rules	IBA Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration (2010)
IBA Working Party	– Commentary on the New IBA Rules of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration 1999
ibid.	ibidem (in the same place)
ICC	International Chamber of Commerce
ICC Rules	ICC Arbitration Rules (2017)
ICCA	International Council for Commercial Arbitration
ICDR	International Center for Dispute Resolution
ICDR Rules	International Dispute Resolution Procedures (2014)
ICSID	International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes
ICSID Convention	– Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and Nationals of Other States (2006)
Int. Arb.	International Arbitration
Int'l Bus. L.J.	International Business Law Journal
IPrax	Praxis des Internationalen Privat- und Verfahrensrecht
IUSCT	Iran-US Claims Tribunal
J. Int'l Arb.	Journal of International Arbitration
J. Priv. Int. L.	Journal of Private International Law
JC	Judicial Code

LCIA	London Court of International Arbitration
LCIA Rules	LCIA Arbitration Rules (2014)
lit.	litera (letter)
LMAA	London Maritime Arbitrators Association
M.D. Fla.	Middle District of Florida
MüKo	Münchner Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Germany)
n.	paragraph number
N.C.J. Int'l L. & Com. Reg.	– North Carolina Journal of International Law and Commercial Regulation
N.D. Cal.	Northern District of California
N.D. Ga.	Northern District of Georgia
N.D. Ill.	Northern District of Illinois
N.D. Ind.	Northern District of Indiana
N.Y.C. L. Rev.	New York City Law Review
no.	number
Notre Dame L. Rev.	– Notre Dame Law Review
NY	New York
OFK	Orell Füssli Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
OLG	Oberlandesgericht (Higher Regional Court)
Ors	Others
OSCE	Organization for Security and Co-operation in Europe
para.	paragraph
paras.	paragraphs
Penn St. L. Rev.	Penn State Law Review
Pepp. L. Rev.	Pepperdine Law Review
PICC	UNIDROIT Principles of International Commercial Contracts (2016)
Prof.	Professor
pt.	part
QB	Queen's Bench
Rep.	Report
Rev. Arb.	Revue de l'Arbitrage
S.	Section
S.D. Fla.	Southern District of Florida
S.D.N.Y.	Southern District of New York
S.D. Tex.	Southern District of Texas
SCAI	Swiss Chambers' Arbitration Institution
SchiedsVZ	Zeitschrift für Schiedsverfahren
Sen. Rep	Senate Report (USA)
Sess.	Session
SFT	Swiss Federal Tribunal

SGHC	High Court of Singapore
SGK	St. Galler Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
SIAC	Singapore International Arbitration Centre
SIAC Rules	SIAC Rules (2016)
SR	Systematische Sammlung des Bundesrechts (Classified Compilation of Federal Legislation, Switzerland)
Ss.	Sections
Stan. J. Complex Litig.	– Stanford Journal of Complex Litigation
Stan. J. Int'l L.	Stanford Journal of International Law
Swiss Rules	Swiss Rules of International Arbitration (2012)
Syracuse J. Int'l L. & Com.	– Syracuse Journal of International Law and Commerce
SZIER	Zeitschrift für internationales und europäisches Recht
TCC	Technology and Construction Court
U.S.	United States Reports (USA)
UN	United Nations
UNCITRAL	United Nations Commission on International Trade Law
UNCITRAL ML	UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration (1985), as amended in 2006
UNCITRAL Notes	– UNCITRAL Notes on Organizing Arbitral Proceedings (2016)
UNCITRAL Rules	– UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules (2013)
UNIDROIT	International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
US	United States
USA	United States of America
v.	versus (against)
Va. J. Int'l L.	Virginia Journal of International Law
Vand. L. Rev.	Vanderbilt Law Review
Vol.	Volume
WL	Westlaw
WLR	Weekly Law Report
WTO	World Trade Organization
Y.B. Comm. Arb	– Yearbook of Commercial Arbitration
YB	Yearbook
ZBJV	Zeitschrift des bernischen Juristenvereins
ZeuP	Zeitschrift für Europäisches Privatrecht
ZK	Zürcher Kommentar (Legal Commentary, Switzerland)
ZR	Blätter für Zürcherische Rechtsprechung
ZZPInt	Zeitschrift für Zivilprozess International
ZZZ	Schweizerische Zeitschrift für Zivilprozess- und Zwangsvollstreckungsrecht

Chapter 1: Introduction

§ 1 International Arbitration and its Limitations

International arbitration is truly a sphere of its own. Unlike in state court litigation, in arbitration the parties have almost unlimited discretion to tailor the proceedings to their needs—for example, to appoint the arbitrators, choose a neutral seat of arbitration, agree on procedural rules and determine the applicable substantive law.¹ Not only do the arbitral proceedings remain strictly confidential, but most often, the arbitral award can be challenged only on very limited grounds.² Besides, in order to facilitate the arbitral proceedings, the parties can choose from among numerous arbitration institutions seated all over the world. It is therefore unsurprising that, especially in the field of cross-border disputes, international arbitration remains the preferred dispute settlement mechanism.³

In light of these advantages, one could easily conclude that there is no reason *not* to choose arbitration as *the* alternative to state court litigation. However, since arbitration is mostly a purely private matter between the parties, the arbitral tribunal's power does not extend beyond this private realm. This issue becomes especially evident with regard to the taking of evidence. While the arbitral tribunal may request the parties to produce evidence, this does not apply to third parties outside the respective arbitration.⁴ In such a scenario, assistance from state courts is essential. However, numerous procedural questions arise from this course of action, as illustrated by the following example.⁵

A French company commences an ICC arbitration seated in Geneva against its trading partner company located in the US. Most likely, the crucial evidence will be located not at the seat of the arbitral tribunal in Geneva, but rather in France, the US or elsewhere in the world. If the evidence in question

1 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.03 n. 26; LEW, 490 et seqq.

2 SUTTON et al., n. 1-023 et seqq.

3 Queen Mary Survey (2018), 5; BLACKABY et al., n. 1.01; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 3.

4 DONDE, 269; DUPERYRON, 464; SCHAEFER, 529 et seq.

5 See also the example given by DONDE, 270.

is in the possession of third parties, the arbitral tribunal cannot force them to produce such evidence and court assistance becomes necessary. But which state court will render such assistance: the Swiss court in Geneva or the court where the evidence is located? Who is authorised to make a request for assistance and according to which law will the assistance be rendered? In what ways can the arbitral tribunal and the parties to the arbitration influence this procedure and how can third parties defend themselves?

§ 2 Importance of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

These questions are indeed justified. After all, the purpose of arbitration is to submit a dispute to a non-governmental decision maker; thus, the court assistance that is the topic of this book could be variously described as either helpful aid or unwelcome intervention.⁶ Ultimately, the issue at hand is positioned at the intersection between state courts and international arbitral tribunals; or, to put it in the words of ANDREWS⁷:

“The marriage between courts and arbitration is at times tempestuous ..., at other times harmonious. But the relationship is always interesting. The marriage has not broken down: too many depend on its success.”

This book will provide the reader with helpful insights concerning court assistance in the taking of evidence and its effect on efficient arbitral proceedings. However, court assistance in general, and in taking evidence in particular, has received little attention in the past. Although the possibility to seek state court assistance in the taking of evidence is foreseen in many arbitration rules, the UNCITRAL ML and various *leges arbitri*, the process has generally been considered too time consuming, burdensome and costly.⁸ However, two important exceptions suggest that this is about to change.

First, since the US Supreme Court’s *Intel* decision in 2004, a broad discourse has emerged around the availability of US discovery in aid of arbitral proceedings. To this day, US case law and legal doctrine remain inconsistent regarding this question, and as the latest decisions show, the discussion

⁶ See p. 91 et seqq. *infra*.

⁷ ANDREWS, n. 1.14.

⁸ DUPEYRON, 459; DASSER, *Schiedsgerichte*, 120; SCHAEFER, 522; Born, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9.02 n. 24; KNEISEL/LECKING, 153; see also Arts. 3(9) and 4(9) IBA Rules; Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML; Art. 184(2) PILA CH; § 1050 CCP FR; S. 43 and 44 EAA 1996.

appears to be ongoing.⁹ As a result, the topic of this book remains highly relevant—but not only as regards the situation in the US.

Second, in a recent study of more than 900 arbitration practitioners conducted at Queen Mary University of London, the lack of power in relation to third parties was rated as one of the three worst characteristics of international arbitration.¹⁰ Indeed, at a time when international disputes have become more complex, in terms of multiple contracts, parties, jurisdictions and third parties, the mechanisms for obtaining assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence are more crucial than ever.¹¹ This also holds true in the light of big data and related requests for vast categories of electronic documents stored in the form of emails, chat histories and e-databases.¹²

All in all, the present contribution aims to provide a thorough analysis of the relationship between state courts and arbitral tribunals, concentrating on the taking of evidence. At the heart of this debate lies the question of whether, when and under what conditions a state court can assist in the taking of evidence in international arbitral proceedings. Furthermore, it remains to be seen whether this process can be subject to a subsequent appellate proceeding, either directly against the decision of the respective state court or by challenging the arbitral award itself, immediately or during the recognition and enforcement stage. Such an in-depth examination will not only contribute to a better common understanding of this problem, but will also provide arbitration practitioners with helpful advice for their next tactical moves.

§ 3 Method and Distinctions

Since the present question can hardly be answered in general, the focus will mainly be on the situation in Switzerland. Quite recently, the Swiss *lex arbitri* has undergone several amendments in order to facilitate arbitral proceedings, including in relation to court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹³ Accordingly, it is intended that Swiss courts will now provide assistance in the taking of evidence to foreign arbitral tribunals with their seat outside Switzerland.¹⁴ Such assistance may be provided in many ways, offering foreign

9 See p. 198 and p. 202 et seq. *infra*.

10 Queen Mary Survey (2018), 8.

11 *Ibid.*

12 See e.g. Art. 3 (3) (a) (ii) IBA Rules; MARGHITOLA, 35; DASSER, *Schiedsgerichte*, 120.

13 See p. 223 et seqq. *infra*.

14 Art. 185a (2) Draft-PILA CH.

arbitral tribunals a more efficient means of obtaining evidence than the cumbersome route of international court assistance through, for instance, the Hague Convention on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters.¹⁵

By means of a comparative approach, this book presents an overview of how court assistance in the taking of evidence is provided in other important arbitration-friendly jurisdictions, such as England, France, the US and Germany. This comparison paves the way to assess the Swiss status quo and analyse it in depth. It will be shown that in Swiss case law as well as legal doctrine, the matter in question has not yet been sufficiently explored. This holds especially true as, in comparison to statutory law in Swiss domestic arbitration (CCP CH), its international counterpart (PILA CH) says very little about court assistance in the taking of evidence and thus leaves ample room for interpretation. As a consequence, the CCP CH will often provide helpful guidance and space for analogous application.

As the title of this book indicates, the focus primarily lies on the process of taking evidence itself, rather than the means through which evidence is taken (e.g., witnesses, document production, inspections). Other court assistance—for instance, as regards the constitution of the arbitral tribunal at the beginning of the arbitration or assistance during the enforcement stage—is only rarely discussed.¹⁶ This also applies to interim measures, which are not examined extensively, even though admittedly they are closely related to the taking of evidence. Finally, although the emerging field of international investment arbitration affords considerable scope to examine interesting issues related to the present one, this would go beyond the main focus of this book.

§ 4 Structure of the Book

This book is divided into nine chapters. The next chapter provides a brief outline of how the different approaches to the taking of evidence in international arbitral proceedings with parties from common and civil law countries work in general. In the third chapter, the legal framework for the taking of evidence in international arbitration is set out. To this end, various *leges arbitri* as well as the arbitration agreement itself and (ad hoc and institutional) arbitration rules are compared, with a focus on the two examples of document production and witnesses. Since parties might not always comply with

15 See p. 118 et seqq. *infra*.

16 LEW, 496 et seqq.; DUPEYRON, 458.

evidentiary orders, the arbitral tribunal can impose various sanctions on non-compliant parties; this is the subject of the fourth chapter. To understand why sanctions might not always prove helpful and why there is thus an urgent practical need for court assistance, the fifth chapter outlines the limitations of the arbitral tribunal's powers in relation to the taking of evidence.

The sixth chapter goes on to analyse the different measures that national courts can offer in this regard and considers whether court assistance in the taking of evidence may be regarded as true assistance or rather an unwelcome intervention. One might further ask whether national courts might even be obliged to assist in international arbitral proceedings, based on Swiss constitutional and international public law; if this is in fact the case, the national courts' discretion as regards whether to assist will be very limited. Having answered this crucial question, the seventh chapter compares the German, French, English and US *leges arbitri*, in order to arrive at a clearer picture of how different jurisdictions deal with the issue at hand.

Based on this comparison, the eighth chapter sets out an exhaustive analysis of the Swiss approach to court assistance in the taking of evidence, examining it at every stage of the arbitral proceedings. Finally, the ninth chapter draws conclusions on all relevant outcomes and provides a short summary of possible future developments in this area.

Chapter 2:

Different Approaches to the Taking of Evidence

§ 1 Introduction

In state jurisdictions as well as in arbitration, it is widely acknowledged that success in a case largely hinges on the evidence that the winning party can gather to support its claims.¹⁷ In fact, it is assumed that about 60% to 70% of all cases in international arbitration are decided based on the facts, rather than on the application of the relevant principles of law.¹⁸ Hence, it is crucial to understand how the evidentiary rules work in this regard. Needless to say, the fact that every legal system has its own methodology of fact finding does not make this objective any easier.

Compared to domestic litigation, in arbitration the parties and the arbitral tribunal have broad discretion when it comes to the taking of evidence, and the parties can tailor the proceedings in accordance with their needs.¹⁹ In most cases, therefore, subject to any party agreement or mandatory law, domestic rules of evidence are not applicable.²⁰ If the parties choose arbitration over litigation, they must decide whether they wish to proceed either in ad hoc arbitration or under an arbitration institution.²¹ If the parties desire their own tailor-made arbitration rules, they are more likely to choose ad hoc

¹⁷ WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 743.

¹⁸ BLACKABY et al., n. 6.75.

¹⁹ See the *numerus clausus* in many civil procedural rules such as Arts. 168 et seqq. CCP CH.

²⁰ POUDRET/BESSON, n. 644. See e.g. Section 2(1) of the Singapore Evidence Act which expressly excludes—with the exception of evidence in banking matters—arbitral proceedings from its scope of application. Theoretically, because of the parties' discretion in evidentiary matters, they could agree upon the application of national rules of evidence. This can be seen in domestic arbitration quite often, but it is not recommended in international arbitration where the parties come from different legal backgrounds and are thus not willing to agree upon 'foreign' rules of evidence; see also S. 34(2)(f) EAA 1996, which provides an opt-in clause to apply any law of evidence.

²¹ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.06 n. 35. Within the field of institutional arbitration, several institutions are now specialised in various matters such as sports, investment or IP/IT arbitration.

arbitration. However, one of the main disadvantages of this type of arbitration is the lack of a supporting institution; the effectiveness of the proceedings thus depends fully on the cooperation of the parties.²² That is why in most cases, the applicable procedure rules are chosen by referring to the rules of an experienced arbitration institution.²³

However, even where such a set of rules is referenced, it often says very little about the process of taking evidence.²⁴ In such cases, the normal reaction would be to seek inspiration from the national civil procedure rules of the country where one has been educated. Indeed, since there is no mandatory ‘international arbitration law’, a practitioner has many good reasons to look for help to the domestic legal system in which he or she was trained and educated.

As long as the parties come from the same country and are used to the same procedural rules, the chances of reaching agreement on the applicable evidentiary rules are quite high. However, if the parties are from countries with different legal backgrounds (e.g., common law versus civil law), the situation becomes more complex.²⁵ Quite often, parties from these backgrounds have almost opposing views as to how evidentiary matters should be handled—for instance, regarding whether document production is permissible or how witnesses are examined. Hence, from the arbitration practitioner’s perspective, it is in many ways beneficial—if not crucial—to understand the most significant differences between common and civil law systems concerning the taking of evidence. Only with this insight can arbitrators govern the proceedings accurately and judiciously, and render a verdict that is truly international and not merely a replication of domestic procedural rules applied to international arbitration.²⁶ If the arbitral tribunal can balance the two legal cultures and their diversities, the parties will be more willing to commit to arbitration and more likely to accept the arbitral award.

22 BLACKABY *et. al.*, n.1.145.

23 BÖCKSTIEGEL, *Beweiserhebung*, 4; see e.g. Art. 25 ICC Rules; Art. 24 Swiss Rules; Art. 34 AAA Rules.

24 E.g. Arts. 27-29 UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 22 HKIAC Rules; Art. 22.1(vi) LCIA Rules.

25 HAY, n.16; SLAPPER/KELLY, 4 et seq. Very broadly speaking, common law can be described as the law based on decisions, while civil law is based on statutes. In practice, however, both common law and civil law system are mostly mixed systems with a greater or smaller part of case or statutory law.

26 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9.01 n. 16.

§ 2 Distinctions

The interplay in international arbitration between arbitrators and the parties and their counsel, all of whom may sometimes be from different legal backgrounds, is unique. This is especially true when it comes to the taking of evidence and the clash of views in cross-cultural arbitration is a much-debated topic.²⁷ As this book examines court assistance in the taking of evidence in common and civil law countries, the following remarks focus primarily on these two legal systems.²⁸ In this regard, two preliminary remarks must be made.

First, anyone who tries to combine the two systems in an attempt to arrive at ‘the best of both worlds’ must bear in mind that the goal is to find an optimal, tailor-made compromise, and never a perfect solution or a feeling of being ‘at home’ in a procedural sense, which would contradict the very nature of *international* arbitration.²⁹

Second, the term ‘common and civil law’ is very broad and should not be overestimated or generalised.³⁰ As an example, a closer look at the rules of discovery/disclosure of two (mostly) common law countries, such as the US and England, reveals significant differences and variations.³¹ The same applies, of course, to civil law countries: again, there are significant differences between the Roman and German families of civil law.³² Nonetheless, and despite these divergences, there seems to be enough uniformity in evidentiary matters to justify the classification of common and civil law countries.³³

27 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 746 et seqq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 16; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.77 et seq.

28 For an in-depth analysis in comparative law of other legal families see ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 62 et seqq.

29 REYMOND, 367; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 41.

30 BLACKABY et al., n. 6.77 et seqq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 16; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2206; MARGHITOLA, 12. REYMOND even argues that there is no ‘Civil Law Procedure’ in civil and commercial litigation because of the lacking common origin. He reasons therefore that there are as many civil procedures as countries in Europe (358).

31 For example, in obtaining evidence, US-style discovery is much broader than the disclosure procedure in England; BETTINGER, 30 et seqq. and 125 et seqq.

32 ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 73 et seqq., 130 et seqq.

33 BLACKABY et al., n. 6.77, n. 6.80.

§ 3 Common Law Approach

The common law has its origins primarily in England and its former colonies, including the US, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and many more.³⁴ Despite the technical differences concerning evidentiary rules in many common law countries, some common principles can be identified in order to distinguish the common law approach to the taking of evidence from its civil law counterpart.³⁵

First, the common law system is in many ways adversarial, with the rivalry of the parties at its centre.³⁶ This is true even, for instance, of English law, where the adversarial approach has been maintained despite the revision of civil procedure and its partial adaption to civil law countries.³⁷ For the sake of simplicity, the following remarks will therefore focus on the US approach according to the FRCP USA, where the adversarial method is best illustrated.³⁸

The common law civil procedure for the taking of evidence can be divided into five stages: (1) filing the complaint, followed by (2) the pre-trial stage, during which the parties gather the relevant evidence for (3) the trial stage, when it is presented to the court, after which (4) the judge (as the case may be, together with a jury) renders his or her verdict;³⁹ (5) an appeal may follow if one of the parties wants to challenge the decision.

Compared to civil law proceedings, the complaint in common law proceedings is not as detailed and only defines the scope and nature of the action⁴⁰—or, in the words of the US Supreme Court, ‘enough facts to state a claim to relief that is plausible on its face’.⁴¹ Next, as opposed to civil law proceedings, where evidence is gathered through the exchange of written submissions and in the court proceedings, the pre-trial stage serves to obtain a wide range of evidence from the adverse party prior to any court proceeding.⁴² In

³⁴ SLAPPER/KELLY, 4; HAY, n. 1 et seqq.; KIDANE, 181; BETTINGER, 30 et seq.

³⁵ HAY, n. 15; DENNIS, n. 1.015; MARGHITOLA, 12.

³⁶ CRAIG, 12.

³⁷ BETTINGER, 49 and 135 et seq.; *see also* the remarks about the trend to alternative dispute resolution under the CPR 1998 (*Ibid.*, 119 et seq.).

³⁸ For the approach under English law, *see e.g.* BETTINGER, 125 et seqq.

³⁹ WIRTH, 10; DFT 4A_315/2017 of 17 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.3.1; DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1; HAY, n. 150 et seqq.

⁴⁰ Rule 8(a)(2) FRCP USA: ‘a short and plain statement of the claim showing that the pleader is entitled to relief ...’; HANOTIAU, 361; BETTINGER, 41 et seq.; DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1.

⁴¹ *Bell Atl. Corp. v. Twombly*, 550 U.S. 544, 570 (2007); *Ashcroft v. Iqbal*, 556 U.S. 662, 678 (2009); BETTINGER, 43.

⁴² *See* p. 206 et seqq. *infra*.

this critical stage, the parties try to collect evidence in the form of depositions, interrogatories, production of documents and even inspections.⁴³ If the evidence in question is protected by privilege, the court can impose a protective order.⁴⁴

In contrast, if a party fails to produce evidence without a valid reason, it can be forced to pay any expenses resulting from its failure to produce evidence, or the misconduct may be treated as contempt of court.⁴⁵ Aside from this, however, the role of the court is rather passive.⁴⁶ To summarise, during the pre-trial stage, the parties weigh up their chances of success and are encouraged to reach a settlement before the trial begins.⁴⁷

In the trial stage, the judge takes a mostly passive role and does not participate in the gathering of evidence, but rather acts as referee by determining whether the evidence offered by the parties (gathered in the pre-trial discovery) is admissible and choosing between the two options presented by the parties.⁴⁸ The idea here is that the best way to reveal the truth is to leave it solely to the parties to prepare and present their cases, in order to convince the court.⁴⁹ This should ensure a fair and just trial, since the judge remains receptive to the arguments of both parties until he or she finally renders a verdict.⁵⁰

Although a strict application of the adversarial method makes sense from a theoretical point of view, in most common law systems, no such strict model exists.⁵¹ In the interests of clarification, the judge is free to ask questions directly to witnesses, or to interrupt their examination if there is no need for further evidence on either a certain point or the entire case. Nevertheless, the judge must be very cautious on this point, to avoid a possible violation of the right to be heard.⁵²

43 See e.g. Rules 26(a)(1)(A)(ii) and (3)(A)(ii) FRCP USA; BETTINGER, 44.

44 Rules 26(c)(1)(g) and 45(d)(3)(iii) FRCP USA.

45 Rule 37(b)(2)(B) FRCP USA; BETTINGER, 45.

46 As an exception, see the possibility of a pre-trial conference, for instance, to facilitate an early settlement or discourage ‘wasteful pre-trial activities’ (Rule 16(a) FRCP USA).

47 DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1; HAY, n. 184 et seqq.

48 DENNIS, n. 1.015; Blackaby et al., n. 6.77; SUTCLIFFE/WIRTH, 34; KIDANE, 182.

49 ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 268; SUTCLIFFE/WIRTH, 34; RAESCHKE-KESSLER, *Discovery*, 45; BETTINGER, 46.

50 STAUGHTON, 353.

51 *Ibid.*, 353 et seqq.

52 *Ibid.*, 355. In addition, a constant excessive intervention by the judge is considered ‘entirely at odds with the adversarial system’ (*Lord Borough of Southwark v. Kofi-Adu* [2006] EWCA Civ. 281, n. 148).

Second, a great deal of common law evidentiary rules become comprehensible when considered in light of the jury trial.⁵³ Its underlying principle is that a person can be judged fairly only by a group of ordinary people (the jury).⁵⁴ The task of the jury is to determine the facts; the judge has exclusive authority over the application of law.⁵⁵ Traditionally, in civil and criminal cases, the arguments are presented to the court orally by the parties and their counsel in such a way that the jurors—who mostly have no legal education—can understand the relevant facts and arguments in order to render a verdict.⁵⁶

The principle of orality has its historical foundation in the idea that the most direct way to reveal the truth is by examining and cross-examining witnesses.⁵⁷ In this way, parties can confront their accusers and even disprove certain facts or the claim as a whole.⁵⁸ Because of the mandatory attendance of the jury, trials can last for hours, if not days; thus, court proceedings reach their climax in a single trial.⁵⁹ Consequently, lawyers must obtain relevant evidence before trial in order to present it to the judge.⁶⁰ While the role of the jury has weakened in recent times, its tradition and the important role of lawyers in convincing the jury have persisted.⁶¹ The fact that there are also lay judges in the judiciary, and that juries consist of individuals without any legal education, has necessitated complex laws of evidence relating to how evidence is obtained, adduced and evaluated at trial.⁶² Otherwise, misleading evidence could impress a jury and unduly influence their verdict.⁶³ While these laws of evidence are not binding on arbitrators, they may serve as inspiration in conducting the arbitral proceedings.⁶⁴

With these two differences in mind, it makes sense that a discovery procedure exists in common law countries, whereby all relevant—and even unfavourable—documents must be disclosed to the other party.⁶⁵ If the court

53 CRAIG, 11; ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 266.

54 CRAIG, 11.

55 *Ibid.*, 12.

56 *Ibid.*, 11.

57 DENNIS, n. 1.015.

58 *Ibid.*.

59 ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, S. 266 et seqq.

60 CRAIG, 14.

61 *Ibid.*, 11.

62 DENNIS, n. 1.001, 1.015; ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 270.

63 CRAIG, 12.

64 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 8.08 n. 51; see e.g. S. 34 (2) (f) EAA 1996; Civil Evidence Act 1995.

65 KÜHN, 3.

has not had all available relevant information, it cannot render a just verdict.⁶⁶ Notably, US discovery under the FRCP USA is very wide ranging,⁶⁷ while so-called ‘disclosure’ under the CPR 1998 is much more restrictive.⁶⁸ As will be discussed in detail, ‘discovery’ in international arbitration is less extensive than in domestic litigation, but nonetheless plays a vital role.⁶⁹

To sum up, one must bear in mind that the aim in common law systems is to reveal the ‘whole truth’.⁷⁰ This is possible only if the means of gathering evidence are very wide ranging.

§ 4 Civil Law Approach

Compared to the common law approach, with its search for truth through the adversarial method and the climax in a single trial, the civil law method is different in many ways. It has its origins in many European countries. In fact, depending on how one classifies civil law, there are at least three legal families: Roman, German and Nordic.⁷¹ Therefore, their origins extend from France through Spain and Italy, across Germany, Austria and Switzerland and north to Scandinavia. Here again, while there are various procedural differences within the civil law system, some commonalities in the approach to evidence can be identified that distinguish it from its common law counterpart.

While common law proceedings are mainly adversarial (party-led), civil law proceedings are in many ways inquisitorial (judge-led).⁷² They are informed more by the Roman law principle of ‘*Quod non est in actis non est in mundo*’ (‘What is not kept in the records does not exist’) than by the search for the whole truth.⁷³ Accordingly, the gathering of evidence is largely controlled by the judge and the parties have no wide-ranging discovery rights.⁷⁴ In light of this, a common law lawyer would claim that it is quite unfair for the adverse party to withhold documents which the other side does not know

66 Davies v. Eli Lilly & Co., [1987] 1 WLR 428, 431.

67 See Rule 26 et seqq. FRCP USA.

68 See Pt. 31 et seqq. CPR 1998.

69 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 36; see p. 194 et seqq. *infra*.

70 TRITTMANN, 20; Wagner, 463.

71 ZWEIGERT/KÖTZ, 73; KIDANE, 195.

72 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 746; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2344 et seqq.; RISSE/HALLER, n. 8.

73 DASSER, *Schiedsgerichte*, 120; see also p. 12 et seq. *supra*.

74 BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2345.

about. In contrast, the civil law lawyer would respond that broad discovery rights are a severe invasion of privacy, admissible only in criminal cases;⁷⁵ and further that it would be quite odd to file a complaint first and only then search for evidence to support the complaint.⁷⁶

The inquisitorial approach is mirrored in the different stages of civil law proceedings, which can, broadly speaking, be divided into five stages: (1) filing of the complaint, (2) exchange of written submissions, (3) the court proceeding, (4) the decision stage and (5) a possible appellate procedure.⁷⁷ In the first stage, the parties file a detailed complaint in which they set out the claimed facts and the law on which the complaint is based.⁷⁸ Furthermore, all relevant documents to the complaint and/or an exact explanation of which further evidence should be obtained must be attached.⁷⁹ Unlike in common law, where the initial complaint is more a summary of the facts and the legal bases of the claim, the complaint in civil law is much more detailed and conclusive.⁸⁰

The second stage is a sort of ‘interim stage’, in which the adverse party has time to respond to the complaint and the judge can intervene by holding an instruction hearing in preparation for the main hearing.⁸¹ At the instruction hearing, the matter in dispute can be discussed informally and the facts can be completed—for instance, by means of a precautionary taking of evidence.⁸² Finally, the instruction hearing gives the parties a first chance to reach agreement before the main hearing begins. All in all, in the interest of procedural economy, the second stage tries to balance out the level of information of the parties and ensure that in the subsequent main hearing, only matters which have not been subject to the second stage will be discussed.⁸³

The third stage involves the pleadings of the parties and the taking of evidence under the control of the judge.⁸⁴ During this stage, the role of the judge is very active—not only in the conduct of the proceedings, but also in the gathering of evidence (e.g., by examining witnesses and allowing or denying evi-

75 REYMOND, 360; HAZARD, 1022.

76 TERCIER/BERSHEDA, 80.

77 WILLISSEGGER, 321; BETTINGER, 69 et seqq.

78 ELSING/TOWNSEND, 60.

79 WIRTH, 10.

80 ELSING/TOWNSEND, 59 et seqq.; HANOTIAU, 361.

81 Art. 226 CCP CH.

82 Art. 158 CCP CH.

83 BETTINGER, 70 et seq.

84 See e.g. Arts. 228 et seqq. CCP CH.

dence requests).⁸⁵ The judge is obliged to identify the legal issues and deal with them accordingly in the fourth stage.⁸⁶ When the judge comes to render a verdict, he or she is usually bound by what the parties have demanded and will not go beyond what they have requested (*non ultra petita*).⁸⁷ In doing so, the judge may freely choose the applicable rule of law and assess the facts presented.⁸⁸

Because there is no jury, civil law proceedings take place in a succession of hearings, which ends with pronouncement of the verdict.⁸⁹ Compared to common law proceedings, the principle of orality does not play such a vital role and consequently the weight lies mainly on documentary evidence.⁹⁰ Therefore, witnesses are rarely cross-examined.⁹¹ Likewise, in many civil law jurisdictions, contact between lawyers and witnesses in order to interview or prepare them for trial is prohibited.⁹² Although there are some rules of evidence in various civil law rules of procedure,⁹³ they are not as detailed as their common law counterparts.⁹⁴

To sum up, it may be said that the aim in civil law systems is to find the ‘relative truth’. ‘Relative’ in this sense means that the truth is revealed based on what the parties present to the court, rather than what they are obliged to disclose through discovery.

§ 5 Conclusion

From this short outline of the different approaches to gathering evidence in common and civil law, it is evident that each system has its own advantages and disadvantages. While the common law procedure is more adversarial and party-led, the civil law system is largely inquisitorial and judge-led. The

85 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 746; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2345; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.77; KIDANE, 201.

86 HAZARD, 1021.

87 See e.g. Art. 58(1) CCP CH.

88 REYMOND, 366. This principle goes back to the Latin maxim of *iura novit curia* (the court knows the law); KIDANE, 199.

89 REYMOND, 359.

90 HANOTIAU, 360.

91 VAN HOUTTE, 458.

92 For Switzerland see e.g. DFT 2C_8/2010 of 4 Oct. 2010, cons. 3.2.2; for France see Paris Court of Cassation, 10 Sept. 2014, 13-22400, cons. 1; VAN HOUTTE, 461.

93 E.g. Arts. 150 et seqq. CCP CH; Arts. 132 et seqq. CCP FR.

94 E.g. the FRCP USA.

latter method is clearly apparent once the judge takes control of the whole case,⁹⁵ which occurs at a much earlier point in the civil law system. On the other hand, there is almost no court interference in the pre-trial procedure in the common law system, and it is almost fully incumbent on the parties to gather evidence and prepare it for trial.

These systemic differences may influence the dynamic in international arbitration—which suggests that the task of finding a compromise in the approach to taking evidence could be quite challenging. It is, to say the least. However, despite this clash of cultures, the parties have the main advantage of being able to choose the procedure *à la carte*.⁹⁶ Thus, for all participating parties, an understanding of the legal backgrounds at play is crucial in figuring out how evidentiary matters should be addressed. However, understanding the differences is just the first step. The next step is to decide where and when to agree to evidentiary rules, which leads to the legal framework for the taking of evidence in international arbitration.

95 REYMOND, 367.

96 HANOTIAU, 362.

Chapter 3: Legal Framework for the Taking of Evidence

§ 1 Introduction

At the time the parties to a contractual relationship agree on an arbitration clause, evidentiary issues seem to be of little importance. The parties rather hope that no dispute will arise in the first place, but nevertheless agree that should this come to pass, the dispute will be resolved by an arbitral tribunal.⁹⁷ However, evidentiary rules must be addressed once a dispute arises, so it is crucial to understand where, when, how and by whom this is done. This gives rise to many questions about which procedural framework is applicable to the arbitral proceedings. Because of the parties' broad discretion in determining the procedural framework in arbitration, the range of legal sources can be (and often is) quite vast. Thus, it is paramount for the parties and arbitrators to know and define which laws and procedural rules will shape the taking of evidence.

In this respect, national arbitration laws (henceforth '*leges arbitri*') act as a kind of minimal standard,⁹⁸ and set the scene for the arbitral proceedings to take place within the boundaries of the parties' agreement and (in the vast majority of cases) institutional arbitration rules. One may think of the legal framework in international arbitration as a temple built on these three pillars. In this chapter, the three pillars will be examined, with a focus on how the taking of evidence may be conducted by the parties and the arbitral tribunal.

§ 2 Leges Arbitri

A. Introduction

As the first pillar, the *leges arbitri* play a key role by determining not only 'external' procedural issues (i.e. the relationship between the arbitral tribunal and the national courts—for example, in relation to the possible annulment

⁹⁷ BLACKABY et al., n. 1.41.

⁹⁸ GÖKSU, n. 181.

of the arbitral award), but also ‘internal’ matters (e.g. the appointment, removal and replacement of arbitrators and the taking of evidence).⁹⁹ Before comparing various *leges arbitri* and their approach to the taking of evidence, a few remarks are necessary to distinguish this term from other concepts.

First, the *leges arbitri* should not be confused with the substantive law governing matters in dispute such as the interpretation and validity of the contract or the rights and obligations of the parties.¹⁰⁰ This law, also called the ‘applicable law’ or the ‘governing law’, is usually stated in a choice of law clause within the arbitration agreement.¹⁰¹ Even though the substantive law usually does not address evidentiary procedural issues, it is contentious if, for example, the burden of proof—which is clearly an evidentiary issue—falls under the regime of either substantive or procedural law.¹⁰² That is why the arbitral tribunal, when determining the applicable procedure for the taking of evidence, may also have to consider the substantive law.¹⁰³

Second, the term ‘procedural rules’ must be distinguished from the *leges arbitri*. While the *leges arbitri* serve as some sort of general legal framework, the procedural rules are found in more detailed institutional arbitration rules.¹⁰⁴ As will be discussed shortly (*see* p. 26 et seqq. *infra*), even these institutional arbitration rules are often insufficiently specific as regards the taking of evidence.

Third, although the national civil procedure laws at the seat of the *lex arbitri* can influence certain aspects of the arbitral proceedings, they do not apply in general.¹⁰⁵ Instead, it is the respective *lex arbitri* which establishes the general legislative (procedural) framework. The term ‘procedural law of arbitration’ is therefore nowadays understood as the *lex arbitri* of the selected state and not the respective national civil procedure law.¹⁰⁶ Luckily, the outmoded doctrine of automatically applying domestic civil procedure rules to international arbitral proceedings has long been rejected by nearly every jurisdiction.¹⁰⁷ Notwithstanding that in some cases (especially in domestic

⁹⁹ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 6.01 n. 6.

¹⁰⁰ BLACKABY et al., n. 3.37. While the substantive law of the arbitration agreement and the law of the underlying contract can differ, they are most often the same law.

¹⁰¹ *Ibid.*, n. 3.107. Which substantive law is chosen depends on the parties’ choice of which law they consider suitable to govern the contractual relationship (*see ibid.*, n. 3.114 et seqq.).

¹⁰² BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2315; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 746 et seqq.; EMANUELE et al., vii.

¹⁰³ For the situation in Germany, *see* TRITTMANN, 21.

¹⁰⁴ BLACKABY et al., n. 3.51.

¹⁰⁵ O’MALLEY, n. 1.18; RADICATI DI BROZOLO, 52 et seqq.

¹⁰⁶ BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 1624.

¹⁰⁷ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 6.02 n. 14.

arbitration) it can make sense to apply national civil procedure rules, this is not generally recommended in international arbitration, where far more procedural flexibility is needed.¹⁰⁸

With these distinctions in mind, the question arises of which of the many *leges arbitri* to apply in international arbitral proceedings. Since the parties are free to agree on almost any procedural aspect of the proceedings, this should also apply to the choice of the *lex arbitri*.

B. Seat of Arbitration

According to the well-established ‘seat theory’, the applicable *lex arbitri* is always that at the seat of arbitration.¹⁰⁹ Not only the UNCITRAL ML, but also the NYC and several *leges arbitri* provide that the *lex arbitri* at the seat of arbitration governs the most important issues of the arbitral proceedings.¹¹⁰ Thus, the seat of arbitration is not merely a geographical matter, but defines the place where the arbitration is held and which *lex arbitri* will be applied. The parties should therefore choose a seat in a jurisdiction which provides a certain degree of autonomy for arbitral proceedings and at the same time grants the necessary support.¹¹¹ Although the seat of arbitration is essential, this does not mean that the hearings must actually be held there (i.e. at a specific geographical location). In fact, the flexibility of international arbitral proceedings and practical reasons—such as the domicile of the parties and thus potentially high travel costs—mean that the hearings may need to be held elsewhere.¹¹² Although it is theoretically possible to change the seat of arbitration during the course of the proceedings, this is not recommended due to various procedural difficulties, such as the competence of different jurisdictions.¹¹³

The *lex arbitri* as the law which governs the basic principles of the arbitral proceedings is not necessarily the *lex arbitri* at the seat of arbitration. Hence, parties which have chosen the seat of arbitration in State A can agree on a foreign *lex arbitri* of State B. The Swiss *lex arbitri*, for instance, allows the

¹⁰⁸ GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 894; *see also* Art. 176 (2) PILA CH which provides an opt-out clause for the domestic arbitration rules as stated in the CCP CH (Arts. 353 et seqq. CCP CH).

¹⁰⁹ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 6.02 n. 16; RADICATI DI BROZOLO, 49 et seqq.

¹¹⁰ Art. 1 (2) UNCITRAL ML; Art. V (1) (a) (d) NYC; Art. 176 PILA CH; S. 2 and 3 EAA 1996.

¹¹¹ RADICATI DI BROZOLO, 57.

¹¹² BLACKABY et al., n. 3.57; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 172 et seqq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 6 n. 4; Art. 20 (2) UNCITRAL ML.

¹¹³ WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 172.

parties to proceed in this way.¹¹⁴ While the parties are free to do so, the arbitral tribunal must be aware that equal treatment of the parties and the right to be heard must be guaranteed at all times.¹¹⁵ This scenario gives rise to numerous practical questions. For example, in which jurisdiction can a party challenge the arbitral award—at the seat of arbitration or before the court in the country of the foreign *lex arbitri*? Are there any differences as to how the courts approach procedural and substantive matters? In light of these procedural complexities, it becomes obvious why in the vast majority of cases the parties choose the same *lex arbitri* as that at the seat of arbitration.¹¹⁶

C. Broad Discretion of Leges Arbitri

The *leges arbitri* take various approaches in defining the parameters of the arbitral proceedings. However, most often, the arbitral tribunal, subject to the parties' agreement, has broad discretion in conducting the arbitral proceedings, including as regards the taking of evidence. With the aim of harmonising the various *leges arbitri* of common law and civil law countries, and thus harmonising international arbitral proceedings, the UNCITRAL ML of 1985 states that the parties are free to agree on the rules of procedure:¹¹⁷

“(1) Subject to the provisions of this Law, the parties are free to agree on the procedure to be followed by the arbitral tribunal in conducting the proceedings.”

“(2) Failing such agreement, the arbitral tribunal may, subject to the provisions of Law, conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate. The power conferred upon the arbitral tribunal includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence.”

In the absence of such agreement, the arbitral tribunal can conduct the proceedings in an appropriate manner.¹¹⁸ This also includes the power to determine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of any evidence

¹¹⁴ Art. 182 (1) PILA CH.

¹¹⁵ Art. 182 (3) PILA CH.

¹¹⁶ BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 212. In contrast, the Swiss approach is very liberal and thus allows the parties to choose a foreign *lex arbitri* (Art. 182 (1) PILA CH).

¹¹⁷ See Art. 19 UNCITRAL ML. So far, 80 of a total of 111 jurisdictions have based their *lex arbitri* on the UNCITRAL ML. For a detailed list, see the current status.

¹¹⁸ Art. 19 (2) UNCITRAL ML; Art. 182 (3) PILA CH; § 1042 (1) CCP DE; Art. 1510 CCP FR; S.33 (1)(a) EAA 1996.

presented to the arbitral tribunal.¹¹⁹ It is important to note that S. 34 (1) (f) of the EAA 1996 gives the arbitral tribunal, subject to the parties' agreement, the power to apply strict rules of evidence. It refers to the laws of evidence which have already been mentioned (*see p. 12 supra*). Even though the EAA 1996 provides such an opt-in clause, arbitrators will not usually impose restrictions according to laws of evidence.¹²⁰ At this point, much could be said about the assessment of evidence and the burden of proof in different legal traditions, let alone in institutional arbitration rules. Nonetheless, it should suffice to state that when it comes to the conduct of the proceedings, the arbitral tribunal and the parties enjoy the widest discretion.

D. Limits to the Broad Discretion

In addition to the parties' agreement, the broad discretion of the arbitral tribunal is limited by the principle of due process, which includes the right to equal treatment and the opportunity to present a case.¹²¹ Art. 18 UNCITRAL ML reads as follows:

“The parties shall be treated with equality and each party shall be given a full opportunity of presenting his case.”

Equality requires, for instance, that both parties be subject to the same time limits or be allowed to present the same number of expert witnesses.¹²² The opportunity to present a case entitles each party to give its opinion on the relevant facts, to present the legal arguments and the supportive evidence, to comment on the arguments of the opponent and its presented evidence, and finally to present new evidence in reply.¹²³ S. 33 (1) (a) of the EAA 1996 recognises the right to present a case as one aspect of the principle of fair and impartial treatment, stating:

“The tribunal shall act fairly and impartially as between the parties, giving each party a reasonable opportunity of putting his case and dealing with that of his opponent”

¹¹⁹ Art. 19 (2) UNCITRAL ML; *see also*, for example, Art. 184 (2) PILA, § 1042 (4) CCP DE, Art. 1509 CCP FR, S. 34 (1) (f) EAA 1996 and S. 12 (3) IAA SG.

¹²⁰ SHEPPARD, S. 34 EAA 1996 n. 8.

¹²¹ O'MALLEY, n. 1.12; for examples in *Leges arbitri*, *see e.g.* Art. 18 UNCITRAL ML; Art. 182 (3) PILA CH; § 1042 (1) CCP DE; Art. 1510 CCP FR. Of course, there are other legal principles which must also be considered, such as attorney-client privilege or commercial or technical confidentiality. However, the main focus in this chapter remains due process.

¹²² Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 339.

¹²³ DFT 117 II 346, cons. 1; Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 340.

While the UNCITRAL ML refers to the ‘full’ opportunity to present a case, the EAA 1996 gives each party only a ‘reasonable’ opportunity to present its case. This English approach does not seek to limit the parties’ right to present their case, but rather aims to set boundaries to prevent the potential misuse of this right.¹²⁴ Accordingly, the parties have no right to present as many witnesses as they like or to ignore procedural deadlines on the grounds of due process.

The arbitral tribunal’s obligation to ensure due process can be quite demanding, especially in an international context in which the parties all have different ideas of this concept. In this regard, the situation may arise where one party from a common law country believes that broad discovery rights are a crucial part of due process, while the adverse party from a civil law background believes quite the contrary. Therefore, the parties must agree on rules which address the principle of due process more specifically. In this regard, it will be demonstrated that the IBA Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration (IBA Rules) serve as the authoritative body and best practice when it comes to rules of evidence in international arbitration.¹²⁵

E. Summary

The foregoing has shown that in order to define the term ‘*leges arbitri*’, a distinction must be made between the substantive law which governs the arbitration agreement and not only that which governs the underlying contract, but also the procedural rules—that is, the (institutional) arbitration rules and the national civil procedural rules at the seat of arbitration. According to the widely accepted seat theory, the *lex arbitri* at the seat of arbitration is applicable to the respective arbitral proceedings. Although this is not recommended, the parties can choose a different *lex arbitri* from that at the seat of arbitration. In such case they should be aware that they will still be bound by certain mandatory rules of the *lex arbitri* at the seat of arbitration and will also face numerous other procedural difficulties and uncertainties.

It is apparent from an outline of various *leges arbitri* that the arbitral tribunal has broad discretion—subject to the parties’ agreement—to tailor the arbitral proceedings. This discretion is limited by the principle of due process, which encompasses the right to be heard and the opportunity to present a case. Because there is no uniform consensus about this principle, it must be addressed in a more specific set of rules. The earliest possible way to agree on such rules is in the arbitration agreement.

¹²⁴ HARRIS et al., S. 33 EAA 1996 n. 33D; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 185.

¹²⁵ O’MALLEY, n. 1.16; see p. 31 et seqq. *infra*.

§ 3 Arbitration Agreement

A. Introduction

The importance of the arbitration agreement as the second pillar cannot be stressed enough, since it is the basic condition for the arbitral proceedings to take place. According to the NYC, if there is no (valid) arbitration agreement, the arbitration itself is invalid and, as a consequence, there is no enforceable arbitral award.¹²⁶ When considering the process of taking evidence, the question arises as to whether the arbitration agreement mentions evidentiary issues by means of either direct or indirect reference. Furthermore, a few remarks about the features of a valid arbitration agreement highlight its importance.

B. Content of the Arbitration Agreement

In the overwhelming majority of cases, the arbitration agreement will have been included in a commercial contract between the parties *before* the dispute arises.¹²⁷ If that is not the case and the parties nevertheless wish to commit to arbitration, they can still draft a separate agreement to this effect—a so-called ‘submission agreement’ or ‘compromise’.¹²⁸ This seldom happens, however, as the parties may have already developed their litigation tactics by this stage and are therefore unlikely to agree to settle the dispute through arbitration.¹²⁹

As regards content, the parties are largely free in drafting the arbitration agreement.¹³⁰ That is why the extent of arbitration agreements varies so widely. For instance, an arbitration clause which says simply that ‘any dispute is to be settled by arbitration in Geneva’ is considered to be valid.¹³¹ Nonetheless, it is highly recommended that the arbitration agreement at least includes key elements such as the agreement to arbitrate, the scope of the disputes to be submitted to arbitration, the institutional arbitration rules, the

126 See Arts. II(1) and V NYC.

127 Art. 7 (1) UNCITRAL ML; BLACKABY et al., n. 1.40; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.07 n. 52; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 130.

128 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.07 n. 52; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 131.

129 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.07 n. 52; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 131.

130 BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 204.

131 BLACKABY et al., n. 1.49; Art. 179 (2) Draft-PILA CH.

arbitral seat, the language of arbitration and a choice of law clause.¹³² The parties can also agree *directly* to certain evidentiary rules, although this rarely seems to happen.¹³³ This view is also confirmed in light of various standard arbitration clauses: no such clause—whether under the AAA¹³⁴, DIS¹³⁵, HKIAC¹³⁶, ICC¹³⁷ or LCIA¹³⁸ Rules—refers directly to evidentiary issues. In this regard, the standard clause of the Swiss Rules¹³⁹ is an exception by proposing wording which allows an arbitral award based only on documentary evidence. Usually, however, parties handle evidentiary issues *indirectly* by referring to an institutional arbitration clause, in which these are addressed more specifically. In addition to institutional arbitration rules, it is possible to refer to international guidelines for the taking of evidence, such as the IBA Rules, which are analysed below (*see p. 31 et seqq. infra*).

C. Separability

In discussing the arbitration agreement, the concept of separability must inevitably be addressed. The existence of a valid arbitration agreement is crucial in order to decide whether the parties are willing to submit the dispute to an arbitral tribunal or a state court. In this respect, the principle of separability, which is enshrined in almost all *leges arbitri*, comes into play.¹⁴⁰ This means that the arbitration agreement, which is usually included within a contract, is to be considered separate from that contract.¹⁴¹ If the arbitral tribunal concludes that the contract in dispute is invalid, this would logically encompass the arbitration agreement too. Accordingly, in order to uphold the parties' commitment to arbitrate, separability ensures that the arbitration agreement can exist on its own, separate from the (perhaps invalid) contract.

¹³² For a detailed checklist of elements in international arbitration agreements *see* BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.07 n. 53 *et seqq.*

¹³³ CRAIG, 21. He points out that American parties occasionally draft arbitration clauses which refer to some provisions of the FRCP USA regarding discovery; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 754.

¹³⁴ Standard AAA-ICDR arbitration clause.

¹³⁵ Standard DIS arbitration clause.

¹³⁶ Standard HKIAC arbitration clause.

¹³⁷ Standard ICC arbitration clause.

¹³⁸ Standard LCIA arbitration clause.

¹³⁹ Standard Swiss Rules arbitration clause.

¹⁴⁰ *See e.g.* Art. 16(1) UNCITRAL ML; Art. 178(3) PILA CH; Art. 1506 i.c.w. Art. 1447 CCP FR; S. 7 EAA 1996.

¹⁴¹ BLACKABY et al., n. 2.101. Of course, the problem is less obvious when there is a submission agreement, which is indeed separate from the contract from the outset of the dispute.

Because of this principle of separability, the aforementioned choice of law clause may address not only the applicable law applying to the underlying contract (i.e. the substantive law), but also a different law which may apply to disputes in relation to the arbitration agreement itself.¹⁴² In most cases, however, the applicable law governing the arbitration agreement is not specifically addressed, and in case of a dispute it is anything but clear which law must be applied.¹⁴³

This issue, called the ‘conflict of laws’, is the subject of heated debate in legal doctrine, which shall not be explored further at this point.¹⁴⁴ Rather, it is sufficient to summarise that in such cases, the doctrine considers the applicable law to be either the law chosen by the parties, the law of the underlying contract or the *lex arbitri* at the seat of arbitration.¹⁴⁵ Apart from that, there are two less popular positions that are nonetheless noteworthy. First, the Swiss approach represents a so-called ‘validation principle’, whereby the arbitration agreement is valid under either the law chosen by the parties, the law of the contract or Swiss law.¹⁴⁶ Second, the French position, tailored by numerous decisions of the Paris Court of Appeal, has the parties’ intention at its centre and thus is not bound to national laws.¹⁴⁷ Accordingly, the arbitration agreement remains independent and there is no conflict of laws to be settled at all.¹⁴⁸

This short outline of the different laws which might possibly be applied to an arbitration agreement reveals that the complexity of the conflict of laws can be very challenging if the parties have not addressed this issue in advance. Therefore, it is highly recommended to determine the law applicable to the arbitration agreement, as well as that applicable to the matter in dispute, when drafting the arbitration agreement.¹⁴⁹

142 See p. 23 *supra*; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 209.

143 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 2.06 n. 32.

144 For an overview of how this problem is treated by various authors and jurisdictions, see WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 136 et seq.; BLESSING, *Applicable Law*, 169 et seqq.

145 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 135; BLACKABY et al., n. 3.11; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 2.06 n. 30 et seq.

146 See Art. 178(2) PILA CH.

147 *Société d'étude et représentations navales et industrielles (SOERNI) et autres. v. Société Air Sea Broker limited (ASB)*, Paris Court of Appeal, Cass., 1st Civil Chamber, 8 Jul. 2009, 08-16.025.

148 BLACKABY et al., n. 3.33.

149 *Ibid.*, n. 3.10. For conflict of law clauses regarding the substantive law, see e.g. Art. 187 (1) PILA CH and Art. 24.1 DIS Rules.

D. Summary

The principle of separability ensures that the arbitration agreement survives even if the arbitral tribunal concludes that the underlying contract is invalid. Precisely because of this separation, the law applicable to the agreement can differ from that governing the underlying contract. Because the parties can choose from a multitude of laws which could be applicable to the arbitration agreement, they would be well advised to agree explicitly on the law which governs any dispute in relation to the agreement in order to avoid a conflict of laws.

As the drafting of the arbitration agreement is completely in the hands of the parties, evidentiary issues can be addressed as part of this process. The parties can thus agree directly on certain matters, such as the extent of discovery or proceedings based solely on documentary evidence. In practice, however, this seldom seems to happen, as a short summary of different standard arbitration clauses reveals. It seems that these clauses are drafted rather briefly and generally, simply stating the intention to settle disputes through arbitration and designating the applicable laws and rules to the arbitration. Hence, evidentiary issues are referred to indirectly through the choice of applicable institutional arbitration rules. These rules address evidentiary matters in far more detail than the *leges arbitri* and the arbitration agreement.

§ 4 Arbitration Rules

A. Introduction

Where the *lex arbitri* does not provide for adequate procedural measures, the parties themselves can draft rules which are tailored to their specific needs (ad hoc arbitration rules). In practice, however, this seldom tends to happen; the parties normally choose institutional arbitration rules to govern the arbitral proceedings. This third pillar is examined next.

The popularity of these rules is due to the fact that the arbitral proceedings are conducted under a standard set of rules, managed by professional staff and held almost anywhere in the world—that is, not only at the seat of the institution.¹⁵⁰ Furthermore, today more than ever, arbitration institutions

¹⁵⁰ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.06 n. 38.

provide a fast and efficient way to settle disputes.¹⁵¹ Their rules offer a comprehensive procedural framework, addressing the composition of the arbitral tribunal, the arbitral proceedings, the award and the costs. In this way, the proceedings become more predictable and therefore more likely acceptable by the parties than the sometimes very general default provisions of the *leges arbitri*.¹⁵²

There follows an examination of various approaches to the taking of evidence under several of the most popular institutional arbitration rules from common law and civil law countries. It begins by looking at the general power of the arbitral tribunal to conduct the proceedings in taking evidence. Next, in order to understand how the arbitral tribunal and the parties must find a compromise in this respect, a few observations are made about the initial evidentiary issues to be addressed. The process of taking evidence is very broad; this is illustrated by considering two types of evidence as examples—document production and witnesses. It is beyond the scope of this book to analyse all evidence extensively (e.g. documentary evidence, witnesses, party and tribunal-appointed experts, inspections); it should rather be sufficient to focus on these two examples, which play prominent roles in international arbitral proceedings.

As will be seen, there are significant differences between the approaches of common and civil law institutional arbitration rules—sometimes quite contrary to what one might have expected. Thus, the arbitral tribunal must do its best to find a compromise in this regard. In this respect, the IBA Rules offer a well-established tool to harmonise and simplify the taking of evidence in international arbitration by combining common law and civil law approaches. These rules will be considered in showing how document production and witnesses are treated in international arbitration.

B. General Provisions

Although all institutional arbitration rules provide that the arbitral tribunal shall conduct the arbitral proceedings with broad discretion, there are noteworthy differences in the exact wording in which they do so. In this regard, and although UNCITRAL is not an institutional arbitration organisation, its rules have played an important role in inspiring the wording of institutional

¹⁵¹ See the recent developments in relation to expedited arbitration rules, which apply either automatically or by means of an opt-in clause; Art. 30 ICC Rules; Art. 42 Swiss Rules; Rule 5 SIAC Rules; Art. 1(4) ICDR Rules.

¹⁵² UNCITRAL Notes, n. 7.

arbitration rules.¹⁵³ Like their counterpart, the UNCITRAL ML, their goal is to harmonise arbitral proceedings and to avoid discrepancies.¹⁵⁴ Art. 17(1) UNCITRAL Rules reads as follows:¹⁵⁵

“Subject to these Rules, the arbitral tribunal may conduct the arbitration in such manner as it considers appropriate, provided that the parties are treated with equality and that at an appropriate stage of the proceedings each party is given a reasonable opportunity of presenting its case. The arbitral tribunal, in exercising its discretion, shall conduct the proceedings so as to avoid unnecessary delay and expense and to provide a fair and efficient process for resolving the parties’ dispute.”

Similar provisions can be found in the Swiss, ICDR, ICC and LCIA Rules, with only small linguistic differences.¹⁵⁶ The DIS Rules even emphasise procedural efficiency by stating: ‘The arbitral tribunal and the parties shall conduct the proceedings in a time- and cost-efficient manner, taking into account the complexity and economic importance of the dispute.’¹⁵⁷ The SIAC Rules put it slightly differently, stating that the arbitral tribunal must ensure a ‘fair, expeditious, economical and final resolution’.¹⁵⁸ The first sentence of Art. 17 UNCITRAL Rules is a clear reminder of the provisions of the various *leges arbitri* previously mentioned (*see p. 20 et seqq. supra*). As in the *leges arbitri*, the institutional arbitration rules equip the arbitral tribunal, subject to the parties’ agreement, with broad discretion in governing the proceedings. The limits are again found in the principle of due process and therefore reference can be made to what has already been said in this respect.¹⁵⁹

Compared to the *leges arbitri*, the UNCITRAL Rules provide for the case to be presented at an ‘appropriate stage of the proceedings’, which refers to the provisions set out in the procedural timetable, as will be discussed shortly.¹⁶⁰ The second phrase of Art. 17(1) UNCITRAL Rules obliges the arbitral tribunal to act as a diligent case manager, and therefore to avoid delay and

¹⁵³ Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 1, 6, 13.

¹⁵⁴ UNCITRAL YB (1968-1970), 261, n.1.

¹⁵⁵ *See* Art. 17(1) UNCITRAL Rules; While Art. 18 UNCITRAL ML speaks of the ‘full opportunity’ to present the case, the UNCITRAL Rules, under the same reasoning as the EAA 1996, mention only a ‘reasonable opportunity’ (*see p. 21 supra*).

¹⁵⁶ Art. 15 (1) Swiss Rules; Art. 20(1) ICDR Rules; Art. 22(4) ICC Rules; Art. 14.4 (i) LCIA Rules.

¹⁵⁷ Art. 27.1 DIS Rules; SCHARDT, 29.

¹⁵⁸ *See* Rule 19(1) SIAC Rules and the similar provision in Art. 14(5) LCIA Rules, but from the point of view of the parties.

¹⁵⁹ *See p. 23 et seqq. supra*.

¹⁶⁰ Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 343; *see p. 29 et seqq. infra*.

expenses and ensure a fair and efficient process.¹⁶¹ To avoid delay, therefore, the preliminary meeting may take place by telephone conference instead of waiting to find a convenient date when all the parties can meet in person.¹⁶² To avoid unnecessary expense, in lieu of granting a party's request for the appearance of eight witnesses, the arbitral tribunal may limit this number to two significant witnesses.¹⁶³ Thus, the question of whether it is appropriate to present the case at any stage of the proceedings depends on whether this accords with the schedule as set out in the procedural timetable.

C. Case Management Conference

At the outset of the proceedings, many institutional arbitration rules include a preliminary meeting (also called a 'case management conference'),¹⁶⁴ at which the arbitral tribunal will consult the parties on procedural issues and establish a timetable which sets out the time limits for each step of the proceedings.¹⁶⁵ The content of this conference depends in large part on the institutional arbitration rules and—as always—on the will of the parties. Thus, the arbitral tribunal must find a proper balance between the intentions of the parties and the arbitral tribunal's duty to ensure fair and efficient proceedings, avoiding unnecessary delay and expenses.¹⁶⁶

The case management conference usually includes a timetable for the initial pleadings, claims and counterclaims, and the timeframe within which the arbitral award must be rendered.¹⁶⁷ As regards evidentiary matters, an overview of issues that must be dealt with gives an idea of how complex the case management conference can be:¹⁶⁸

- Document production: timeframe for submission and request of discovery/disclosure, consequences of failure to submit documents, presentation of documentary evidence;

¹⁶¹ See also Art. 14.4 (ii) LCIA Rules; Rule 19 (1) SIAC Rules; Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 345.

¹⁶² It has become common practice to hold the preliminary meeting via telephone or video-conference (BLACKABY et al., n. 6.41); see e.g. Art. 24 (4) ICC Rules; Rule 19 (3) SIAC Rules.

¹⁶³ Schütze-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER, n. 346.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. Art. 24 ICC Rules; Art. 27.2 DIS Rules.

¹⁶⁵ See e.g. Art. 17 (2) UNCITRAL Rules; Rule 19 (3) SIAC Rules; Art. 20 (2) ICDR Rules; Art. 27.2 DIS Rules.

¹⁶⁶ Art. 17 (1), 2nd sentence *in fine* UNCITRAL Rules; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 8.07 n. 31.

¹⁶⁷ *Ibid.*; as regards an expedited procedure whereby an arbitral award must be rendered within six months of the case management conference, see Art. 30 ICC Rules.

¹⁶⁸ This short overview is inspired by Art. 2 IBA Rules and Arts. 13-17 UNCITRAL Notes; see also ICC, *Effective Management of Arbitration*; DIS Rules annex 3; SCHARDT, 30 et seqq.

- Hearings: decision on whether to hold hearings, schedule of hearings, admission of cross-examination;
- Witnesses: permitted number of witnesses, their preparation and the timing of submission of witness statements;
- Party and tribunal-appointed experts: permitted number of experts and timing of submission of expert reports;
- Inspections: measures of safekeeping physical evidence and organisation of inspection of site, property or goods; and
- Confidentiality: rules applicable to commercial or technical confidentiality.

The approaches taken to these issues under various institutional arbitration rules vary significantly, as will be demonstrated below (*see* p. 34 et seqq. *infra*). Moreover, the parties often have divergent opinions—for example, on whether cross-examination of witnesses and experts should take place or whether the parties can make disclosure requests. The arbitrators, in establishing the procedural measures, should consider all different points of view in order to ensure fair and equal proceedings. To facilitate and harmonise the taking of evidence in international arbitration, several organisations have provided helpful guidelines.

D. Harmonisation Initiatives

One could argue that since every international arbitration has its own difficulties and challenges, there is no need to harmonise such proceedings through international guidelines. On the one hand, it is true that every case should be treated differently by considering its peculiarities. On the other hand, however, if the parties come from different legal backgrounds, the guidelines offer a well-established compromise between different views of how evidence might be taken in international arbitration. Moreover, where such guidelines are used, the proceedings become more predictable and transparent, while the arbitrators retain the right to adapt them in order to meet the special needs of the respective arbitration.¹⁶⁹

¹⁶⁹ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.08 n. 65.

In this respect, there is one main source, among others,¹⁷⁰ which serves as a guideline for the taking of evidence and can be used in conjunction with institutional arbitration rules: the IBA Rules. These guidelines are not institutional arbitration rules, but rather a code of best practice.¹⁷¹ The term ‘rules’ can therefore be misleading, especially if they are used purely as guidelines. The IBA Rules and another (less important) harmonisation initiative are addressed briefly below, before considering how institutional arbitration rules and such guidelines can work together.

1. IBA Rules

a. Content

The IBA Rules have become the preferred guidelines and best practice in harmonising the process of taking evidence in international arbitration.¹⁷² First published in 1983 as the ‘IBA Supplementary Rules Governing the Presentation and Reception of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration’, they were first revised in 1999, when their name was changed to the IBA Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration. The IBA Rules were last revised in 2010. Their success depends significantly on the fact that they offer a broadly accepted combination of evidentiary rules from common law and civil law countries.¹⁷³ They include not only provisions on document production, witnesses, experts and inspections, but also detailed technical norms relating to the evidentiary hearing and the admissibility and assessment of evidence. In this way, where neither the *leges arbitri* nor the institutional arbitration rules provide enough guidance, the IBA Rules can fill this vacuum.¹⁷⁴

b. Application

Although the IBA Rules are not institutional or ad hoc arbitration rules, they are intended to work in conjunction with them as supplementary guidance.¹⁷⁵

¹⁷⁰ See e.g. the CIarb Guidelines on Party-appointed and Tribunal-appointed Expert Witnesses in International Arbitration; CIarb Guideline on Documents Only Arbitration Procedures; ICC Commission Report on Controlling Time and Costs in Arbitration; ALI/UNIDROIT Principles of Transnational Civil Procedure.

¹⁷¹ BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 199.

¹⁷² WAINC MYER, 752; RISSE/HALLER, n. 6; EMANUELE et al., n. 58; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.95; O'MALLEY, n. 1.05; LAU, 563 et seqq.; IBA Report (2016), 1, 8 ff. According to this study, out of 845 respondents, 48% frequently refer to the IBA Rules. It is noteworthy that in certain key jurisdictions, the use of the IBA Rules varies significantly, *see ibid.*, 15; *see also* Queen Mary Survey (2015), 36. This survey involved more than 700 practitioners and shows that the IBA Rules are used in more than 60% of arbitrations.

¹⁷³ Born, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9.01 n. 18; IBA Report (2016), 9.

¹⁷⁴ RISSE/HALLER, n. 2.

¹⁷⁵ IBA Rules, Preamble, n.1.

As well as applying them in their entirety, it is possible to apply only parts thereof or to adapt them to particular circumstances.¹⁷⁶ Their binding application can be achieved in two ways: either by agreement of the parties or by direct order of the arbitral tribunal.¹⁷⁷ As an alternative, the IBA Rules can also be used as non-binding guidelines.¹⁷⁸

Implementation by party agreement can take place by inclusion in the arbitration agreement, although this seldom seems to happen (*see p. 23 supra*).¹⁷⁹ More often, the parties will agree on their application at the case management conference upon the suggestion of the arbitral tribunal.¹⁸⁰ If the parties are silent as to the application of the IBA Rules, the arbitral tribunal can decide at its discretion whether and how to apply them. Usually, however, the IBA Rules are used as non-binding guidelines in the form of soft law.¹⁸¹ This is confirmed by a recent survey, which revealed that of the 60% of respondents who applied the IBA Rules, 53% adopted them as guidelines and only 7% as binding rules.¹⁸² In this way, the arbitral tribunal has maximum flexibility in taking evidence.¹⁸³ Consequently, the parties must be aware that they have no right to enforce the IBA Rules.¹⁸⁴

Another advantage of using the IBA Rules as pure guidelines is that it strengthens the finality of the arbitral award. Several *leges arbitri* state that an arbitral award can be set aside if the arbitral tribunal did not consider the parties' agreement in conducting the proceedings.¹⁸⁵ Thus, in using the IBA Rules as non-binding guidelines, the risk of the arbitral award being set aside because of mistakes in the taking of evidence can be avoided or at least significantly reduced.¹⁸⁶

¹⁷⁶ *Ibid.*, n. 2.

¹⁷⁷ RISSE/HALLER, n. 22 et seqq.

¹⁷⁸ IBA Rules, Preamble, n. 2.

¹⁷⁹ RISSE/HALLER, n. 23.

¹⁸⁰ IBA Rules, Foreword, 3; RISSE/HALLER, n. 24.

¹⁸¹ Queen Mary Survey (2015), 36; Queen Mary Survey (2012), 11.

¹⁸² *See also* IBA Report (2016), 9, 16 et seqq. Accordingly, approximately 80% of respondents declared the IBA Rules as non-binding.

¹⁸³ Queen Mary Survey (2012), 11; RISSE/HALLER, n. 27; EMANUELE et al., n. 59.

¹⁸⁴ RISSE/HALLER, n. 27.

¹⁸⁵ Art. V (1) (d) NYC; Art. 34 (2) (a) (iv) UNCITRAL ML; § 1059 (2) (1.) (d) CCP DE; S. 68 (2) (c) EAA 1996; conversely, *see* the Swiss perspective (*see p. 270 infra*); ASA Bull. 2004, 779; DFT 117 II 346, cons. 1b.

¹⁸⁶ EMANUELE et al., n. 59.

c. Scope of Application

Reading the previous remarks, one might easily conclude that there seem to be only advantages to using the IBA Rules as guidelines in an international arbitration. However, although the IBA Rules are a very effective and tested tool to be utilised in the taking of evidence, both parties and arbitrators must consider carefully whether to use them in their arbitration.

In this respect, two remarks are noteworthy. First, the IBA rules are designed to be used in international arbitration.¹⁸⁷ Where the arbitration is purely domestic, even though the rules could be applied, the parties should refrain from doing so and should choose familiar evidentiary rules, instead of international guidelines. Second, although the IBA Rules represent a well-accepted compromise between common law and civil law, they remain a compromise between ‘different legal traditions’.¹⁸⁸ If the parties are both from either the common law or civil law tradition, the application of the IBA Rules can present unnecessary difficulties. This becomes evident in the context of an international arbitration where the parties are both from civil law countries. To implement document production according to the IBA Rules, which contain several common law elements, would not meet the parties’ expectations; nor would it have any other justification from an objective point of view.¹⁸⁹

d. Result

When the parties must agree on evidentiary matters in international arbitration, the IBA Rules are the most commonly used tool, as they cleverly combine common law and civil law elements. They fill the gap if neither the *lex arbitri* nor the institutional arbitration rules are of help regarding evidentiary issues. Therefore, they are meant to be used in conjunction with (institutional or ad hoc) arbitration rules. Not only can the parties agree on their application; in the absence of such an agreement, the arbitral tribunal can declare them applicable and binding, either in whole or in part. However, they are most commonly applied in a non-binding way—that is, as pure guidelines. This strengthens the finality of the arbitral award, while at the same time supporting the arbitral tribunal in its procedural flexibility. However, application of the IBA Rules makes sense only if the arbitral proceedings are international and the parties are from different legal traditions. Otherwise, there is no logical reason for implementing rules with which the parties and their lawyers are unfamiliar.

¹⁸⁷ IBA Rules, Preamble, n.1.

¹⁸⁸ *Ibid.*, n.1; RISSE/HALLER, n. 33.

¹⁸⁹ *Ibid.*

2. UNCITRAL Notes

In addition to this preferred evidentiary tool, another harmonisation initiative should be mentioned. Although not comparable in importance to the IBA Rules, the UNCITRAL Notes on Organizing Arbitral Proceedings provide helpful inspiration in shaping international arbitral proceedings.¹⁹⁰ First established in 1996 and revised in 2016, they can be used in conjunction with ad hoc or institutional arbitration rules. The notes—as compared to the IBA Rules—are not intended to serve as a code of best practice; their *raison d'être* is rather to be used as a sort of general checklist.¹⁹¹ Since the UNCITRAL Notes are not binding and serve only as guidelines, the parties can use them or refer to them at their full discretion.¹⁹² Regarding evidentiary issues in particular, the UNCITRAL Notes contain recommendations about document production, witnesses, experts, inspections and hearings. Hence, it might be helpful for arbitrators and the parties to consult the UNCITRAL Notes at the beginning of arbitration to check whether the most import (evidentiary) issues have been addressed.

E. Examples of Evidence in International Arbitration

In the following, two examples of evidence will be examined in order to show the differences in their treatment under different sets of institutional arbitration rules. In particular, it shall be demonstrated to what extent institutional arbitration rules mirror the legal domestic regime at their headquarters (e.g. the ICC in Paris, France). In doing so, one should remember that how institutional arbitration rules are applied in practice always depends on the parties and arbitrators. An ICC arbitration with parties from Austria and Switzerland and a German arbitrator will therefore be conducted differently from an arbitration under the same rules but with parties from England and the US and an Australian arbitrator.

In order to bridge the gaps between different legal traditions, and where institutional arbitration rules might not provide an answer, the aforementioned IBA Rules can provide helpful guidance in order to find a compromise regarding evidentiary issues. The two examples that will be examined have not been chosen randomly. The way that document production and witnesses

¹⁹⁰ Queen Mary Survey (2015), 35, 36. Even though the UNCITRAL Notes 1996 seem to be known in international arbitration, they are not yet used frequently.

¹⁹¹ UNCITRAL Notes, n. 1-2.

¹⁹² *Ibid.*, n. 3.

of fact are treated in international arbitration serves as a perfect illustration of its flexibility and facility to settle disputes in a fast and efficient manner. Furthermore, as has been shown, the oral and written parts of arbitral proceedings differ significantly between the civil law and common law traditions.

1. Document Production

a. Introduction

As a rule, of all types of evidence in international arbitration, documentary evidence enjoys the greatest credibility.¹⁹³ This is especially true in commercial disputes, where documentary evidence provides a record of what the parties have undertaken and agreed upon (e.g. in the minutes of the board of directors or balance sheets).¹⁹⁴ In addition, it is often far less time consuming and costly to present documentary evidence than to examine witnesses, who might have to be prepared to give testimony on an event that happened years ago.¹⁹⁵ As mentioned above (*see p. 12 supra*), the weight in common law countries still lies heavily on oral testimony, while in civil law countries documentary evidence is paramount.¹⁹⁶ Anyone who might conclude that international arbitration is primarily influenced by civil law should bear in mind that ‘documentary evidence’ is not the same as ‘document production’. While the former is a form of evidence, the latter relates to how documentary evidence is made available for the parties and the arbitral tribunal.

A quick look at a selection of international arbitration rules reveals that the arbitral tribunal has broad discretion to order document production, which has its origins in the common law tradition. Therefore, document production as a means of requesting a party to disclose documents which it has not voluntarily delivered itself is widely accepted in international arbitration.¹⁹⁷

Nonetheless, there are some differences between the institutional arbitration rules in this regard. It would be logical to conclude that although arbitration institutions in civil law countries accept document production, their provisions are more moderate, given that in the courts in civil law countries are very reluctant to order broad document production (*see p. 13 supra*). In contrast, common law arbitration institutions would be assumed to have more extensive provisions in this regard. Before examining whether this

¹⁹³ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 8.07 n. 38; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 826; KARRER, 54.

¹⁹⁴ WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 826.

¹⁹⁵ BLACKABY et al., n. 6.90.

¹⁹⁶ WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 827; O'MALLEY, n. 3.02.

¹⁹⁷ O'MALLEY, n. 3.03.

assertion holds true, the IBA Rules on document production will be quickly examined in order to outline why they are such a widely accepted compromise between the common law and civil law traditions.

b. Document Production in the IBA Rules

Art. 3 IBA Rules deals with three groups of documents: (1) documents on which the parties base their claim and defence; (2) documents on which one party wants to rely but cannot produce it on its own; and (3) documents held by third parties. As document production plays a vital role in international arbitration, Art. 3 is one of the provisions most commonly referred to.¹⁹⁸ Although extensive US or English-style discovery/disclosure is not available in international arbitration, there is a consensus that document production is appropriate to a certain degree.¹⁹⁹ Thus, various institutional arbitration rules state that the arbitral tribunal must establish the facts ‘by all appropriate means’.²⁰⁰ Hence, the question is not whether, but rather to what extent, there should be document production.²⁰¹

Art. 3(3) IBA Rules limits document production in various ways:

- lit. a: Each requested document must be identified sufficiently (author, date and content);²⁰²
- lit. b: The requesting party must provide a statement as to how the document is relevant to the case and material to its outcome; and
- lit. c: A further statement is necessary, confirming that the requested document is not in the possession of the requesting party, and stating why it would be unreasonably burdensome to produce the document on its own and why the party assumes that the requested document is in possession of the adverse party.

Following the document request, the arbitral tribunal will set a time limit within which the party to which the request is addressed must either produce the document or raise an objection (e.g. attorney-client privilege or commercial or technical confidentiality).²⁰³ In case of an objection, the arbitral tribunal will consult the parties in order to reach agreement.²⁰⁴ If no

¹⁹⁸ IBA Report (2016), 15 et seq.

¹⁹⁹ IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 7.

²⁰⁰ See e.g. Art. 25(i) ICC Rules; Art. 22.1(iii) LCIA Rules.

²⁰¹ ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 3 IBA Rules n. 34.

²⁰² *Ibid.*, n. 109 et seqq.

²⁰³ Art. 3(4), (5) IBA Rules; Art. 9(2) IBA Rules.

²⁰⁴ Art. 3(6) IBA Rules.

agreement is reached, the arbitral tribunal will finally decide whether to order document production.²⁰⁵

This rather narrow extent of document production combines the different common law and civil law approaches quite thoughtfully. On the one hand, parties from civil law countries consider these provisions helpful, since they limit document production to a degree where the requested documents must be sufficiently specified and fishing expeditions are thus avoided, or even impossible.²⁰⁶ Furthermore, the high costs of document production in state court litigation can be bypassed by focusing on those documents that are claimed to be relevant to the case. On the other hand, parties from common law countries who are used to discovery/disclosure rights in state court litigation can still seek access to internal documents from the adverse party.²⁰⁷ With Art. 3 IBA Rules in mind, the focus will now shift to the provisions of document production under common law and civil law institutional arbitration rules.

c. Civil Law Institutional Arbitration Rules

To begin with, Art. 24 (3) Swiss Rules reads as follows:

“At any time during the arbitral proceedings the arbitral tribunal may require the parties to produce documents, exhibits or other evidence within such a period of time as the tribunal shall determine.”

This provision, as an exact copy of Art. 27 (3) UNCITRAL Rules, affords the arbitral tribunal broad discretion to order document production. The term ‘other evidence’ refers to inspections of sites or even witness examination.²⁰⁸ Similar provisions are found in Art. 25(5) ICC Rules and Art. 28(2) DIS Rules. None of these rules seems to limit the discretion of the arbitral tribunal to order document production beyond the general limits of due process. Accordingly, the extent of document production here is even wider than under the IBA Rules. Nonetheless, various commentators point out that although the abovementioned rules do not explicitly impose any restrictions on document production, they are not intended to pave the way for wide-ranging discovery/disclosure rights.²⁰⁹ Rather, the arbitral tribunal is bound by the principle of due process and must thus conduct the proceedings accordingly (i.e. also meeting the expectations of the parties).

205 Art. 3 (7) IBA Rules.

206 ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 3 IBA Rules n. 108; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 8.

207 *Ibid.*

208 Zuberbühler et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ, Art. 24 Swiss Rules n. 30.

209 GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 994; Schütze-REINER/ASCHAUER, n. 552.

d. Common Law Institutional Arbitration Rules

Unlike institutional arbitration rules from civil law countries, those from common law origins are less uniform. This shall be demonstrated by means of two examples.

According to Art. 22.1(v) LCIA Rules, the arbitral tribunal has the following power:

“To order any party to produce to the Arbitral Tribunal and to other parties documents or copies of documents in their possession, custody or power which the Arbitral Tribunal decides to be relevant.”

This provision specifies that only documents in the parties’ ‘possession, custody or power’ can be subject to document production. Moreover, the documents must be ‘relevant’. These limitations have been drafted bearing in mind that the arbitration might be held in a civil law country with very restricted (or even no) discovery or disclosure rights.²¹⁰ Art. 22.1(v) LCIA Rules is therefore quite similar to Art. 3(3) IBA Rules, since it limits the scope of document production and therefore takes into account that the provisions will be potentially used in an international context between parties from different legal traditions.

Another example is Art. 21(4) ICDR Rules, which reads as follows:

“The tribunal may, upon application, require a party to make available to another party documents in that party’s possession not otherwise available to the party seeking the documents, that are reasonably believed to exist and to be relevant and material to the outcome of the case. Requests for documents shall contain a description of specific documents or classes of documents, along with an explanation of their relevance and materiality to the outcome of the case.”

In general, Art. 20(4) ICDR Rules provides that the tribunal can order document production which it finds necessary or appropriate. Unless the parties agree otherwise, this article shall be applicable. At first glance, there seem to be no differences at all compared to Art. 3(3) IBA Rules: The requested documents have to be specified, relevant and material to the outcome of the case. Furthermore, they need to be not otherwise available to the requesting party.

²¹⁰ SCHERER et al., Art. 22 LCIA Rules n. 28.

Despite the resemblance to the IBA Rules, two differences should be pointed out. The first one concerns categories of documents. While the IBA Rules speak of ‘narrow and specific requested category of documents’²¹¹, Art. 21(4) ICDR Rules requires only ‘specific documents or classes of documents’. The fact that the parties can ask for a whole category of documents has led to much discussion.²¹² Behind the ‘narrow and specific’ standard lies the argument that there might be a relevant document that cannot be identified sufficiently specifically.²¹³ This is the case, for instance, if a party knows that the adverse party has made a decision—for example, about the termination of a contract—which should have been recorded in the minutes of the meeting of the board of directors.²¹⁴ The party may be unable to specify the author, date and exact content of such a document, but may nonetheless be able to describe the requested document in a narrow and specific way.

The ICDR Rules do not seem to have adopted this standard and therefore they do not limit document production to narrow categories of documents.²¹⁵ Consequently, they provide for even wider document production than under the IBA Rules. One would be mistaken in assuming that this broad document production under the ICDR Rules is due to the wide-ranging discovery rights in US state court litigation. Art. 21(10) ICDR Rules explicitly states that certain measures of US-style discovery are not applicable in arbitration under the ICDR Rules.

The second difference concerns control over the requested documents. According to Art. 21(4) ICDR Rules, the arbitral tribunal can require a party to present only documents that are in its possession. By contrast, Art. 3(3)(c)(ii) IBA Rules obliges the requesting party to provide a statement of the reasons why it assumes that the documents requested are in the possession, custody or control of another party. This difference can be explained by the fact that US law grants arbitral tribunals the power, under certain conditions, to order

211 Art. 3(3)(a)(ii) IBA Rules.

212 O’MALLEY, n. 3.35 et seq.; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 9; ZUBERBÜHLER, Art. 3 Swiss Rules n. 114.

213 IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 9.

214 *Ibid.*

215 MARGHITOLA, 29; see also Art. 21(6) ICDR Rules, which states that requests for document production regarding e-documents must be ‘narrowly focused’. Therefore, the extent of document production for e-documents is more limited than that for physical documents. However, this provision only complements the general rule about physical document production in Art. 21(4) ICDR Rules and does not adopt the ‘narrow and specific’ standard (GUSY/ILLMER, 289).

documents from third parties which are not part of the arbitration.²¹⁶ Therefore, Art. 21(4) ICDR Rules refers only to documents in the possession of the requested party and does not mention third parties.²¹⁷

e. Result

The previous remarks on document production in international arbitration have revealed different controversies. Although virtually all institutional arbitration rules provide for document production, there are significant differences. The thesis was proposed that since civil law countries tend not to provide for broad document production, institutional arbitration rules from these countries would mirror this in their provisions by limiting document production; and vice versa for institutional arbitration rules from common law countries. This thesis has been disproved, at least partially.

Institutional arbitration rules from civil law countries grant broad discretion when it comes to document production, subject only to the general principle of due process and other legal principles such as attorney-client privilege and commercial and technical confidentiality. However, this broad discretion does not form the basis for far-reaching discovery/disclosure rights. Still, compared to the IBA Rules, the Swiss, ICC and DIS Rules take a very liberal, arbitration-friendly approach. The institutional arbitration rules from common law countries show a different picture. The LCIA Rules are quite similar to the IBA Rules. Anticipating that they may also be used in international arbitral proceedings with parties from different legal traditions, they narrow document production accordingly. At the other end of the scale are the ICDR Rules, which, despite many similarities to the IBA Rules, do not adopt the ‘narrow and specific’ standard with regard to requests for categories of documents. Therefore, the ICDR Rules allow for broader document production than the IBA Rules.

What consequences can be drawn from this brief examination? The fact that common law institutional arbitration rules contain detailed provisions on document production is because this procedure is also well known in state court litigation in those countries. On the other hand, arbitration institutions from civil law countries, which are unfamiliar with document production, content themselves with affording the arbitral tribunal broad discretion. At the end of the day, however, institutional arbitration rules should leave enough space for the parties and the arbitral tribunal to reach agreement on the degree of document production that is permissible.

²¹⁶ MARGHITOLA, 30; S. 7 FAA USA; *see* p. 183 *infra*.

²¹⁷ MARGHITOLA, 30.

2. Witnesses

a. Introduction

Despite the preference in international arbitration to rely mainly on documentary evidence, the practical significance of fact witnesses is considerable.²¹⁸ The main advantage of examining witnesses is that questions can be asked directly by all parties. Even though the arbitral tribunal governs the hearings, it has become standard practice in international arbitral proceedings that the parties themselves (i.e. their lawyers) can question not only their own witnesses, but also those of the adverse party. The drawbacks to this are the significant expenses and often time-consuming examinations involved.²¹⁹ Nonetheless, the significance of fact witnesses should not be underestimated. This is especially true given that documentary evidence and the examination of fact witnesses are regularly linked. Witnesses are often indispensable to explain the background and nature of documentary evidence.²²⁰ Many institutional arbitration rules therefore include detailed provisions on the hearing and the examination of witnesses.²²¹

The differences in the approach to witnesses in common law and civil law countries are quite astonishing.²²² As previously mentioned (*see* p. 12 *supra*), compared to civil law countries, orality plays a much more important role in state court litigation in common law countries. The two legal traditions differ with regard not only to who can be a witness, but also to how witnesses can be prepared for examination and how the examination itself works.²²³ Even though the institutional arbitration rules examined below are designed for an international setting and the differences between legal traditions seem to be diminishing, it would be unsurprising if there were certain provisions that can be explained only within the context of their legal background. Whether this is in fact true shall now be analysed. To this end, the provisions on witnesses in the IBA Rules shall be quickly addressed before turning to institutional arbitration rules.

218 O'MALLEY, n. 4.01; BLACKABY *et al.*, n. 6.120; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 885; MOLITORIS, n. 1.

219 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 885.

220 BLACKABY *et al.*, n. 6.120.

221 *See e.g.* Arts. 17 (3), 27 (2), 28 and 31 UNCITRAL Rules; Arts. 15 (2), 25, 29 (2) Swiss Rules; Arts. 25 (3), 26 ICC Rules.

222 ZUBERBÜHLER *et al.*, Art. 3 IBA Rules n. 4.

223 IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 14.

b. Witnesses in the IBA Rules

With regard to witness examination, the IBA Rules have adopted many common law elements. This applies in relation not only to the identity of witnesses, but also to the degree of interaction between parties and witnesses. The examination also includes cross-examination, with which civil law lawyers will usually be unfamiliar.²²⁴ Despite this common law approach, the IBA Rules also state that the arbitral tribunal shall have full power over the hearing at all times, which clearly refers to the judge-led civil law approach (*see p. 13 et seqq. supra*).

Art. 4 IBA Rules addresses numerous issues in regard to witnesses of fact. Thus, only those on which the common law and civil law traditions diverge most significantly are discussed here, which are as follows:

- Who can be a witness?
- How can parties interact with witnesses?
- How and by whom are witnesses examined?

I. Identity of Witnesses

The first issue concerns the identity of witnesses. Art. 4(2) IBA Rules makes it quite clear that ‘any person’ may be a witness and present evidence, including the parties, their officers, lawyers, employees and other representatives. For a civil law practitioner, this may come as a surprise, as civil law systems often exclude parties from acting as witnesses; in common law systems, by contrast, the term ‘witness’ is interpreted broadly.²²⁵ The exclusion of parties as witnesses in civil law countries is mostly due to the fact that as the parties have a special interest in the outcome of the proceedings, their statements are considered less valuable.²²⁶ In international arbitration, however, the view has been established that anyone who is capable of commenting on the facts based on his or her own experience can be a witness.²²⁷ While the parties and related persons can therefore testify as witnesses, their credibility can be tested according to their identity and relation with the parties.²²⁸

²²⁴ ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 8 IBA Rules n. 19.

²²⁵ See e.g. for civil law: Art. 169 CCP CH; § 402 CCP DE (*see also* exceptions for minors according to § 455(2) CCP DE); Art. 204 CCP FR; ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 8 et seqq; for common law *see e.g.* Rule 30(a)(1) FRCP USA; Rule 34.1(b) CPR 1998.

²²⁶ WAGNER, 485 et seqq.; O’MALLEY, n. 4.08; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.125 et seqq.

²²⁷ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 8.07 n. 43; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2276 et seq.; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 896 et seq.; O’MALLEY, n. 4.08; UNCITRAL Notes, n. 89.

²²⁸ WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 897; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.129.

Consequently, the arbitral tribunal might weigh the statement of a party's officer differently from that of a more independent witness.²²⁹

II. Interaction Between Parties and Witnesses

The second question concerns the degree of interaction between the parties and witnesses. Art. 4 (3) IBA Rules states:

“It shall not be improper for a Party, its officers, employees, legal advisors or other representatives to interview its witnesses or potential witnesses and to discuss their prospective testimony with them.”

Again, the approaches in common and civil law systems differ significantly. The fact that in civil law countries, it is the judge (and not the parties' lawyers) who examines witnesses explains why contact between lawyers and (potential) witnesses prior to the hearing is considered unethical in some countries.²³⁰ In contrast, because the proceedings are more party-led in common law countries, lawyers may discuss and prepare the statements with and of their own witnesses.²³¹ Despite these differences, in international arbitration the view has been adopted that lawyers are generally permitted to contact their²³² witnesses prior to the hearing in order to prepare and discuss their statements.²³³

While the degree of preparation may vary from a general discussion of the issues of the case to an intensive rehearsal of witness examination, there are certain limits.²³⁴ It would be unethical and under some laws even criminal to encourage a witness to lie in court or to give misleading statements.²³⁵ Therefore, lawyers would be well advised not to ‘over-prepare’ their witnesses, for

²²⁹ Art. 9 (1) IBA Rules; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 15.

²³⁰ IBA Working Party, 27; ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 12 et seqq.; O'MALLEY, n. 4.15; SINCLAIR, 29 et seqq.; see e.g. also the Swiss Federal Act of the Free Movement of Lawyers (SR 935.61), Art. 12a; Swiss National Rules of Professional Conduct, Art. 7; DFT 2C_8/2010 of 4 Oct. 2010, cons. 3.2.1.

²³¹ IBA Working Part, 27; SINCLAIR, 36 et seq.

²³² Art. 4 (3) IBA Rules. The IBA Rules are thus quite clear that to contact a party's own witness is permissible by speaking of ‘its’ witness—that is, the witness a party intends to present. As regards contacting adverse witnesses, the ICSID developed certain conditions under which this is allowed (*Azinian et al. v. United Mexican States*, ICSID, ARB (AF)/92/2), 1 Nov. 1999, n. 56); concerning contacting adverse witnesses in general see O'MALLEY, n. 4.19 et seqq.

²³³ IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 16; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.123 et seqq; VON SEGESSE, *Witness Preparation*, 224; O'MALLEY, n. 4.15; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 898; see also IBA Guidelines 24.

²³⁴ VON SEGESSE, *Witness Preparation*, 225.

²³⁵ ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 15; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.124; VON SEGESSE, *Witness Preparation*, 225; HOFFMANN/SHETTY, 211; see also IBA Guidelines 23.

fear of losing credibility.²³⁶ This also applies to witness statements that contain testimony on the facts experienced by a witness.²³⁷ These statements not only help the parties to prepare for the hearing, but also help the arbitral tribunal to conduct the proceedings time and cost efficiently.²³⁸ Nonetheless, the arbitral tribunal should consider carefully whether such statements are in fact necessary. This is especially true if the arbitral tribunal intends to rely solely on a witness statement and does not request direct examination of the witness. Thus, a well-prepared witness statement can be time consuming and costly for the parties.²³⁹

III. Examination of Witnesses

The third and last point concerns how and by whom witnesses are examined in the hearing. As already mentioned, one of the significant differences between common law and civil law proceedings is the fact that in common law countries, the proceedings are more party led and therefore witnesses are mostly examined by the parties; while in civil law countries, witnesses are usually questioned by the judge (*see p. 14 supra*). Notwithstanding this fact, it is common practice in international arbitration that a witness who has delivered a witness statement must appear in person at the hearing for examination and cross-examination if his or her attendance is requested by either the parties or the arbitral tribunal.²⁴⁰ Cross-examination as a main feature of adversarial (common law) proceedings has become widely accepted in international arbitral proceedings.²⁴¹ Even civil law lawyers today appreciate it, because it allows them not only to elicit facts that were not mentioned in the witness statement, but also to reveal contradictions and to undermine the reliability and credibility of a witness.²⁴²

According to Art. 4(7) IBA Rules, the arbitral tribunal will usually disregard the witness statement if a witness whose attendance has been requested fails to appear without any valid reason. According to Art. 8 IBA Rules, the arbitral tribunal shall have full control over the hearings and shall therefore conduct and govern it appropriately—a provision which calls to mind judge-led

²³⁶ ZUBERBÜHLER *et al.*, Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 16; VON SEGESSE, *Witness Preparation*, 225; SINCLAIR, 31; *see also* IBA Guidelines 21.

²³⁷ Arts. 4(4)–(6) IBA Rules; ZUBERBÜHLER *et al.*, Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 22 et seqq.; SINCLAIR, 29 et seqq.

²³⁸ IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 16; OETIKER, *Witnesses*, 254; O'MALLEY, n. 4.23.

²³⁹ ZUBERBÜHLER *et al.*, Art. 4 IBA Rules n. 25; OETIKER, *Witnesses*, 255.

²⁴⁰ Art. 8(1) IBA Rules; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 17.

²⁴¹ SINCLAIR, 41; VAN HOUTTE, 459 et seq.

²⁴² SINCLAIR, 41; MEKAT, 121; NEWMAN, 408 et seqq.

civil law proceedings.²⁴³ Furthermore, Art. 8 (3) IBA Rules recommends the order in which the examination should be carried out: starting with the claimant's witnesses, followed by the respondent's witnesses and experts. After the direct examination of each witness, there is the possibility for cross-examination by the adverse party and in some cases even for re-examination.²⁴⁴ Since the IBA Rules aim to provide for flexible proceedings, the arbitral tribunal can change the suggested order of examination as it considers appropriate.²⁴⁵

c. Civil Law Institutional Arbitration Rules

When it comes to witnesses, institutional arbitration rules based in civil law countries differ in their level of detail. While the Swiss Rules govern witness examination quite specifically, the DIS and ICC Rules content themselves with a few general provisions. Art. 25 (1) ICC Rules merely states:

“The arbitral tribunal shall proceed within as short a time as possible to establish the facts of the case by all appropriate means.”

Although this wording is a clear reminder of the inquisitorial civil law approach, the tendency in international arbitration is that responsibility for producing and presenting the evidence falls first and foremost on the parties.²⁴⁶ At the same time, the arbitral tribunal has maximum flexibility, since it must establish the facts of the case ‘by all appropriate means’. This allows the arbitral tribunal to consider the different legal backgrounds of the parties and to tailor the proceedings accordingly. Concerning witnesses, the ICC Rules provide a general procedural framework only, and refrain from establishing specific and detailed rules.²⁴⁷ Consequently, this leaves plenty of space to handle every case individually and specifically. Apart from these general remarks, Art. 26 (3) ICC Rules says that the arbitral tribunal, subject to the parties’ agreement, shall be in full charge of the hearings, which underlines the arbitral tribunal’s broad discretion in tailoring the arbitral proceedings.²⁴⁸ This means, for instance, that the arbitral tribunal may hear witnesses on its own initiative.²⁴⁹

243 See p. 13 *supra*; Art. 8(2) IBA Rules; IBA Review Subcommittee (201), 23. The arbitral tribunal is therefore entitled not only to question witnesses at any time, but also to limit or exclude questions and answers if it considers them unnecessary (Arts. 8(2) and 8 (3)(g) IBA Rules).

244 Art. 8 (3)(a) IBA Rules; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 23.

245 Art. 8 (3)(f) IBA Rules; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 24.

246 VERBIST/SCHÄFER/IMHOOS, 140.

247 Mistelis-BOND/PARALIKA/SECOMB, Art. 25 ICC Rules n. 1 and 2.

248 *Ibid.*, Art. 26 ICC Rules n. 2; VERBIST/SCHÄFER/IMHOOS, 150.

249 Arts. 25(2) and (3) ICC Rules.

A typical civil law approach is pursued by the DIS Rules, Art. 28.2 of which states the following:

“For this purpose, the arbitral tribunal may, *inter alia*, on its own initiative, appoint experts, examine fact witnesses other than those called by the parties, and order any party to produce or make available any documents or electronically stored data. The arbitral tribunal shall not be limited to admit only evidence offered by the parties.”

The arbitral tribunal has full discretion in hearing witnesses on its own initiative and is not bound by the parties’ offer of evidence. Here, the inquisitorial civil law approach is mirrored by defining the arbitral tribunal as an active case manager.²⁵⁰ This is confirmed by the new Art. 27.2 DIS Rules, as amended in 2018, which obliges the arbitral tribunal to hold a case management conference as soon as possible after its constitution.²⁵¹ The fact that the DIS Rules emphasise the active role of the arbitrator does not mean that he or she must act purely inquisitorially, as judges do in some state court litigation proceedings.²⁵² Rather, Art. 28.2 is modelled as a ‘may’ provision, leaving the arbitral tribunal with broad discretion.²⁵³

According to a practitioner of the DIS Rules, most DIS arbitral tribunals seem to avoid being too proactive in conducting the proceedings, but rather leave it to the parties to present the relevant evidence or to file requests to produce evidence.²⁵⁴ However, this may change following the amendment of the DIS Rules in 2018 and the introduction of the mandatory case management conference.²⁵⁵ Annex 3 of the DIS Rules sets out a list of measures to increase procedural efficiency. Accordingly, the arbitral tribunal can discuss with the parties, for example, whether to limit the length or number of submissions of any written fact witness statements or expert reports.²⁵⁶ Further suggestions are made—for example, to hold only one oral hearing, including any taking of evidence, or to limit requests regarding document production.²⁵⁷

²⁵⁰ BESCH/KREUZEDER, 266; Böckstiegel et al.-RISSE, S. 27 DIS Rules n. 2.

²⁵¹ See also DIS Rules annex 3; BESCH/KREUZEDER, 257 et seq.; SCHARDT, 29; BOOG/WIMALASENA, 25 et seq.

²⁵² Böckstiegel et al.-RISSE, S. 27 DIS Rules n. 2. In this regard see, for example, §139 CCP DE, stating that in order to establish the relevant facts of each case, state courts must question the parties.

²⁵³ BESCH/KREUZEDER, 256.

²⁵⁴ Böckstiegel et al.-RISSE, S. 27 DIS Rules n. 6.

²⁵⁵ Art. 27.2 DIS Rules.

²⁵⁶ DIS Rules Annex 3, A.

²⁵⁷ DIS Rules Annex 3, B and E.

On the other hand, the Swiss Rules contain detailed provisions on witnesses. In many ways inspired by the UNCITRAL Rules, they cover not only who can be a witness, but also interaction with and examination of witnesses.²⁵⁸ Art. 25 (2) Swiss Rules says:

“Any person may be a witness or an expert witness in the arbitration. It is not improper for a party, its officers, employees, legal advisors, or counsel to interview witnesses, potential witnesses, or expert witnesses.”

Regarding the identity of witnesses, the Swiss Rules are in line with international standard practice, as in Art. 4 (2) IBA Rules, by confirming that ‘any person may be a witness’. As compared to the UNCITRAL Rules, they take a more liberal approach by declaring that interaction with (potential) witnesses is not improper.²⁵⁹ Since such contact is allowed, it is standard practice for the evidence of witnesses to be presented in the form of witness statements.²⁶⁰ As compared to Art. 4 (3) IBA Rules, the Swiss Rules do not limit contact with witnesses that a party has requested to present, although they do distinguish between potential witnesses and named witnesses. Since a potential witness does not belong to either party, it is theoretically not improper to interview witnesses of the opposing party.²⁶¹ To avoid any uncertainty in this regard, the parties should discuss this issue early in the proceedings. They could, of course, exclude any contact with witnesses of the opposing party by applying Art. 4 (3) IBA Rules.

As regards the way in which witnesses are examined, Art. 25 (4) Swiss Rules provides:

“At the hearing, witnesses and expert witnesses may be heard and examined in the manner set by the arbitral tribunal.”

No suggestions are made about the manner and order in which witnesses should be examined. Thus, the arbitral tribunal, in accordance with the

²⁵⁸ See Art. 27 (1) UNCITRAL Rules; Zuberbühler et al.-BESSON/THOMMESEN, Introduction Swiss Rules n. 6 et seqq.; Zuberbühler et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ, Art. 25 Swiss Rules n. 3, 4.

²⁵⁹ Zuberbühler et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ, Art. 25 Swiss Rules n. 11. Even though the UNCITRAL Rules do not expressly allow contact with witnesses, they seem to accept this, given that witness statements are foreseen in Art. 27 (2) UNCITRAL Rules. The UNCITRAL Rules, as compared to other institutional arbitration rules, say little about the conduct of hearings to avoid over-regulating arbitral proceedings (UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/669 (2009), n. 69).

²⁶⁰ Art. 25 (3) Swiss Rules.

²⁶¹ Zuberbühler et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ, Art. 25 Swiss Rules, n. 13; BLESSING, *Witnesses*, 46; OETIKER, *Witnesses*, 264 et seq.

parties, must choose the appropriate way to do so. Depending on the arbitration, arbitrators often choose the common law practice of examining, cross-examining and re-examining witnesses.²⁶² Furthermore, the arbitral tribunal is free to order ‘witness conferencing’, where various witnesses are examined at the same time on specific issues.²⁶³

d. Common Law Institutional Arbitration Rules

As is the case with document production, the institutional arbitration rules diverge considerably in their provisions about witnesses. The LCIA Rules, which are some of the most detailed institutional arbitration rules, provide in Art. 19 (2):

“The Arbitral Tribunal shall have the fullest authority under the Arbitration Agreement to establish the conduct of a hearing, including its date, form, content, procedure, time-limits and geographical place.”

As a general statement, this passage makes it crystal clear that the arbitral tribunal enjoys the widest discretion in conducting the hearings. Not surprisingly, Art. 20.6 LCIA Rules declares that even a party itself can testify as a witness:

“Subject to any order by the Arbitral Tribunal otherwise, any individual intending to testify to the Arbitral Tribunal may be treated as a witness notwithstanding that the individual is a party to the arbitration or was, remains or has become an officer, employee, owner or shareholder of any party or is otherwise identified with any party.”

The word ‘may’ indicates that the drafters of the LCIA Rules were aware that the parties cannot be considered as witnesses in all countries, and therefore they allow exceptions.²⁶⁴ Also, like the Swiss Rules, Art. 20.5 LCIA Rules allows contact with potential witnesses:

“Subject to the mandatory provisions of any applicable law, rules of law and any order of the Arbitral Tribunal otherwise, it shall not be improper for any party or its legal representatives to interview any potential witness for the purpose of presenting his or her testimony in written form to the Arbitral Tribunal or producing such person as an oral witness at any hearing.”

²⁶² WIRTH, 14; GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 1009; ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 25 IBA Rules n. 19.

²⁶³ Zuberbühler et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ, Art. 25 Swiss Rules, n. 30; HANOTIAU, 376 et seq.; MCILWRATH/SAVAGE, n. 5-243; PETER, 47 et seqq.; RAESCHKE-KESSLER, *Witness Conferencing*, 415 et seqq.

²⁶⁴ SCHERER et al., Art. 20 LCIA Rules n. 37. While the LCIA version of 1998 used to contain the word ‘shall’, under the revised version of 2014 it is now possible to treat parties differently from witnesses.

Here again, it is acknowledged that in some jurisdictions, witness contact might not be permissible and therefore the arbitral tribunal will be bound by such restrictions. The ability of the arbitral tribunal to forbid any pre-hearing contact with witnesses serves to level out the imbalance where one party might not be allowed to make such contact due to national laws or professional standards.²⁶⁵ Reading this passage in its strict wording, one might recognise that it speaks only of ‘potential witnesses’, and not of all witnesses. Compared to Art. 4 (3) IBA Rules, which allows contact with all witnesses, the LCIA Rules are therefore more restrictive. However, since Art. 20.5 LCIA addresses only interviewing witnesses, *preparing* witnesses is considered permissible.²⁶⁶

When the hearing finally takes place, Art. 20.8 LCIA Rules provides for different possibilities:

“Any witness who gives oral testimony at a hearing before the Arbitral Tribunal may be questioned by each of the parties under the control of the Arbitral Tribunal. The Arbitral Tribunal may put questions at any stage of such testimony.”

While the parties are often limited in the time given for their examination and cross-examination, the arbitral tribunal may put questions to the witnesses at any given time. Like judge-led examination, this supports a fast and efficient hearing, without too much time lost to exhaustive examinations. Although Art. 20.8 LCIA Rules is not as detailed as Art. 8 (2) IBA Rules (*see p. 44 supra*), it puts the arbitral tribunal in full control of the hearing. However, the arbitral tribunal must consult the parties about the manner in which the examination should take place—for example, by proposing time limits for examination and cross-examination.

As compared to the LCIA Rules, the ICDR Rules mention witnesses and their examination just briefly in Art. 23 (4):

“The tribunal shall determine the manner in which witnesses are examined and who shall be present during witness examination.”

Like the respective provisions in the UNCITRAL Rules and the Swiss Rules, Art. 23 (4) ICDR Rules reminds the arbitral tribunal to choose a method of examination which is appropriate to the case.²⁶⁷ Apart from that, there are no other provisions on the identity of witnesses, let alone about contact with

²⁶⁵ SCHERER et al., Art. 20 LCIA Rules n. 34.

²⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, Art. 20 LCIA Rules n. 35.

²⁶⁷ Art. 28 (2) UNCITRAL Rules; Art 25 (4) Swiss Rules; GUSY/HOSKING, Art. 23 ICDR n. 23.10.

witnesses or the examination of witnesses. Art. 23 (4) ICDR Rules gives a hint in this regard by saying:

“Unless otherwise agreed by the parties or directed by the tribunal, evidence of witnesses may be presented in the form of written statements signed by them. In accordance with a schedule set by the tribunal, each party shall notify the tribunal and the other parties of the names of any witnesses who have presented a witness statement whom it requests to examine. The tribunal may require any witness to appear at a hearing.”

As a default, the ICDR Rules follow the IBA Rules by suggesting that unless a party asks to examine a witness who has submitted his or her statement, there is no need for direct examination.²⁶⁸ It seems to be common practice in ICDR proceedings to draft witness statements together with the witnesses and, if necessary, to prepare them for the hearing where they will be (cross-) examined.²⁶⁹ As always, the parties and/or the arbitral tribunal can depart from this default procedure. Although in many cases witness statements contribute to efficient and less expensive proceedings, they should not be allowed without careful consideration, given the time and effort needed to produce well-prepared witness statements.²⁷⁰ This is especially true if there are just a few witnesses and the issues at stake are limited.²⁷¹

e. Result

The thesis that various provisions concerning witnesses in institutional arbitration rules make sense only when considered in the context of their legal background has only partially been affirmed. One might have expected that since the principle of orality is paramount in common law proceedings, institutional arbitration rules from common law countries would include detailed and extensive provisions on witnesses and the hearing itself. On the other hand, because the main emphasis in civil law proceedings is on documentary evidence, the rules of arbitration institutions based in civil law countries might be thought more likely to limit the oral part of the proceedings (i.e. the presentation and examination of witnesses). As the previous examples have demonstrated, however, institutional arbitration rules from civil and common law countries do not result in a uniform picture, either as a whole or within each system.

²⁶⁸ Arts. 4(4)–(8) IBA Rules.

²⁶⁹ Mistelis-FELLAS/MOSQUERA, Art. 23 ICDR Rules n. 2.

²⁷⁰ OETIKER, *Witness Statements*, 30; OETIKER, *Witnesses*, 255.

²⁷¹ *Ibid.*

Compared to the Swiss and IBA Rules, the ICC Rules say very little about how to treat witnesses. That the silence of the ICC Rules on typical witness issues, such as their identity, interaction and examination, is due to their civil law background seems unlikely. Rather, to grant maximum flexibility, the ICC Rules provide the arbitral tribunal with broad discretion when it comes to witnesses. The DIS Rules in turn allow for the arbitral tribunal to act in a quasi-inquisitorial (civil law) way. While this might be suitable for German domestic arbitration, the practice in international DIS arbitration places the responsibility for presenting evidence largely on the parties. At the other end of the spectrum, the Swiss Rules include more specific provisions about witnesses. As previously discussed, they adopt the common law approach not only by allowing anyone to be a witness, but also by allowing for the parties to interact with witnesses quite freely. Therefore, they represent a very liberal, up-to-date set of rules that mirror modern practice in international arbitration, quite similar to, but not as detailed as, the IBA Rules.

The provisions on witnesses in the LCIA Rules are almost as detailed as those in the IBA Rules. In terms of content, the LCIA Rules not only allow the parties to serve as witnesses, but also consider contact with witnesses as permissible and cross-examination as standard procedure. Furthermore, as the arbitral tribunal is in full control of the hearings, the arbitrators can put questions to witnesses at any given time. Thus, the LCIA Rules combine common and civil law elements regarding the treatment of witnesses. In contrast, the ICDR Rules say very little about witnesses. Much less detailed than the LCIA Rules, they leave it almost entirely to the arbitral tribunal to decide how witnesses should be treated. The provisions on witness statements, which are quite similar to the IBA Rules, are therefore exceptional.

To sum up, it has been shown that, regarding witnesses, institutional arbitration rules, regardless of their legal background, are either very detailed or just briefly mention the issue. In only a few cases are the provisions explicable solely due to their legal background (e.g. the DIS Rules, *see* p. 46 et seqq. *supra*). Hence, traces of domestic civil court litigation in institutional arbitration rules are increasingly seeming to disappear.²⁷² The overwhelming majority of rules provide the arbitral tribunal with broad discretion to conduct the proceedings in regard to witnesses. This could include applying the IBA Rules as a whole or at least partly, especially in cases where institutional arbitration rules say almost nothing about witnesses (*see e.g. the ICC and DIS Rules*, p. 45 et seqq. *supra*).

272 SINCLAIR, 47 et seq.

F. Summary

This part of the chapter has highlighted the effectiveness and flexibility of institutional arbitration rules. Their general provisions grant the arbitral tribunal broad discretion in conducting the proceedings, which finds its limits mainly in the principle of due process. Regarding evidence, it has been demonstrated that to ensure the proceedings run smoothly, all sorts of evidentiary issues should be addressed in the case management conference. Here, parties may have very different views—for example, concerning document production or the conduct of hearings. The IBA Rules provide solid guidelines to bridge the gap between opposing opinions. In most cases, they are used not as binding rules, but as guidelines, which strengthens the flexibility of the fact finding and the finality of the arbitral award. Despite these advantages, their application should not be ordered or agreed upon without due consideration. Since they are made to work between parties from different legal traditions, their application in domestic arbitration is often against the parties' intentions.

In a further step, an examination of the treatment of document production and witnesses under institutional arbitration rules and the IBA Rules has revealed the following findings. Regarding document production, the difference between common and civil law countries is evident in either detailed provisions (common law approach) or provisions which afford the arbitral tribunal broad discretion to decide to what extent document production is permissible (civil law approach). This difference might be due to the fact that in civil law state court litigation, document production is almost unknown. Under both approaches, however, there is enough space for the arbitral tribunal, in accordance with the parties and the guidance of the IBA Rules, to find a suitable solution for each case. The situation regarding witnesses is more complex. The rules are either general remarks or rather detailed provisions, with no commonalities evident among common and/or civil law institutional arbitration rules. Compared to document production, the traces of the legal traditions within which the specific institutions are based seem to have disappeared over time. Here too, the IBA Rules offer useful solutions and a balanced compromise between the common law and civil law traditions in handling witnesses.

Summing up, with regard to the taking evidence, institutional arbitration rules in themselves provide barely enough guidance. In conjunction with the IBA Rules, however, the process of taking evidence becomes more tangible and effective for both the parties and the arbitral tribunal.

§ 5 Conclusion

After examining the three pillars of the legal framework of international arbitration—namely the *leges arbitri*, the arbitration agreement and the institutional arbitration rules—several conclusions can be drawn.

The *leges arbitri* contain the general legislative framework by determining external issues such as the relation between state courts and the arbitral tribunal, as well as internal matters such as the taking of evidence. It has been shown that the parties should choose as the seat of arbitration an arbitration-friendly country where state courts will not interfere in the arbitral proceedings without good reason, and will also grant support (e.g. assistance in taking evidence or enforcement of the arbitral award). Unsurprisingly, the *leges arbitri* examined in this chapter are all very arbitration friendly, granting the arbitral tribunal wide discretion to govern the arbitral proceedings as long as due process is respected. Even though the *leges arbitri* provide a general procedural framework, the taking of evidence is in most cases only briefly mentioned. Thus, the question is where the parties should agree more specifically on evidentiary matters.

The arbitration agreement is crucial, since the validity of the arbitration itself—let alone that of the arbitral award—hinges on its validity. Because of the principle of separability, parties would be well advised to agree on the law governing the arbitration agreement and the underlying contract. In the arbitration agreement itself, the parties usually refer to evidentiary matters indirectly by agreeing on the application of institutional arbitration rules, in which all sorts of evidentiary issues are addressed in more detail. Although the parties can directly agree on the application of, for instance, the IBA Rules in the arbitration agreement, this seldom happens in practice.

An examination of the institutional arbitration rules reveals that, as in the *leges arbitri*, the arbitral tribunal has vast discretion to choose the procedural rules *à la carte*. In consultation with the parties, the arbitral tribunal should address matters of evidence at the outset of the proceedings (i.e. at the case management conference). By means of two examples, it has been demonstrated how views on these matters differ among institutional arbitration rules from common law and civil law systems. In this regard, the IBA Rules combine different elements from common law and civil law, and therefore represent an excellent compromise that works well in conjunction with institutional arbitration rules.

From this study of the legal framework, one thing is clear: in arbitration, as perhaps nowhere else, party autonomy is paramount.²⁷³ This is evident in all three pillars of the arbitral procedural framework. Applied to the taking of evidence, the parties are at liberty, according to their intentions, to choose the seat of arbitration, draft the arbitration agreement and agree therein on a suitable set of institutional arbitration rules. In addition, those arbitration rules can be tailored to a high degree to the special needs of the respective case. Thus, compared to state court litigation, the taking of evidence in international arbitration seems to be almost limitless.

Obviously, however, this is true only as long as the parties play by the rules. So what happens if the parties do not comply with evidentiary orders? How can the arbitral tribunal respond? Can it sanction the disobedient party and if so, by what means? The next chapter will focus on the various possibilities the arbitral tribunal has at its disposal in this regard.

273 RADICATI DI BROZOLO, 40.

Chapter 4:

Sanctions of the Arbitral Tribunal

§ 1 Introduction

The previous chapter has shown the arbitral tribunal's broad discretion to order document production and to summon witnesses as it deems appropriate. However, because the tribunal has no coercive power, the effectiveness of such orders depends largely on the parties' compliance. In this regard, there are several good reasons for parties to comply with evidentiary orders. First, they have an interest in the smooth functioning of the proceedings, in order to obtain an arbitral award within a reasonable timeframe. Second, since it is the arbitral tribunal that will eventually decide on the merits of the case, the parties are usually inclined to follow its procedural orders to keep the arbitral tribunal onside.²⁷⁴ Third, despite the arbitral tribunal's lack of coercive power, it has some very effective sanctions at hand, which the parties should try their best to avoid.

Inevitably, however, in certain situations it may be impossible to present evidence, due to *force majeure* or other unforeseen circumstances.²⁷⁵ In addition, the parties might have the right to refuse to comply with evidentiary orders due to (among other things) attorney-client privilege, technical and/or commercial confidentiality, or loss or destruction of a document.²⁷⁶ However, the arbitral tribunal has various sanctions at its disposal if a party is unable to explain sufficiently why evidence has not been produced or if other obstructionist behaviour is revealed. Otherwise, parties might be able to unduly influence the proceedings by destroying or forging documents,²⁷⁷ by providing false testimony or by improperly influencing witnesses and their statements.²⁷⁸ This chapter outlines several sanctions that the arbitral tribunal

²⁷⁴ SACHS/NIEDERMAIER, n. 4.

²⁷⁵ HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 81.

²⁷⁶ Art. 9 (2) IBA Rules.

²⁷⁷ HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 110 et seqq.

²⁷⁸ *Ibid.*, 112 et seqq.

can impose and considers whether they are in fact helpful to effectively gather evidence.²⁷⁹ The focus is on the main sanction—so-called ‘adverse inference’—although cost sanctions, sanctions against party representatives and monetary penalties are also addressed.

§ 2 Adverse Inference

A. Introduction

The previous chapter has demonstrated the paramount significance that evidence plays in arbitral proceedings. As pointed out in the introduction to this chapter, the parties’ compliance with evidentiary orders is crucial for the arbitral proceedings to function smoothly. In order to facilitate the parties’ right to present their case and to render an award based on a broad evaluation of the facts, a certain degree of disclosure is necessary.²⁸⁰

In contrast, if a party fails to produce a document without sufficient reason, the arbitral tribunal can draw an adverse inference under certain circumstances—that is, conclude that the document is adverse to the interests of the reluctant party. Or, to put it differently, the arbitral tribunal may consider a fact as proven despite the absence of the evidence in question.²⁸¹ This principle is widely accepted in international arbitration.²⁸² Its origin is found in English common law rules of evidence, but it has also become popular in civil law jurisdictions as a tool to sanction non-compliant parties.²⁸³ Its *raison d'être* lies in the tension between parties’ reluctance to present evidence that is harmful to their case and the arbitral tribunal’s lack of coercive power to order the parties to present such evidence.²⁸⁴ By contrast, any party which has evidence that is advantageous to its case in its possession would present this to the arbitral tribunal. International arbitration resolves this situation by letting the arbitral tribunal draw an adverse inference from any failure to

²⁷⁹ In the Queen Mary Survey of 2015, 46% of all respondents cited the ‘lack of effective sanctions during the arbitral process’ as one of the main disadvantages of international arbitration (7).

²⁸⁰ SHARPE, 550.

²⁸¹ SOURGENS et al., n. 8.01.

²⁸² WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 775; O’MALLEY, n. 7.37; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 181; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2391; for investment arbitration *see also* SOURGENS et al., n. 8.03.

²⁸³ LUTTRELL, 283 et seq., 285; O’MALLEY, n. 7.03; DFT 4A_2/2007 of 28 Mar. 2007, cons. 4. *see also* Art. 10 and 11 CCP FR i.c.w. Art. 1464 CCP FR, according to which an arbitrator may draw an adverse inference in case of non-compliance with evidentiary orders.

²⁸⁴ SHARPE, 549; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 180; LUTTRELL, 281.

present evidence by concluding that the reluctant party has something to hide and such evidence is adverse to its interest.²⁸⁵ Another advantage of this sanction is the fact that it need not be enforced separately in state courts.²⁸⁶

In terms of proportionality, the arbitral tribunal should always consider whether the other evidence in the case is already sufficiently strong that drawing an adverse inference becomes superfluous.²⁸⁷ Since this sanction can have a significant influence on both the arbitral proceedings and the award, its application is subject to certain conditions, which are examined below.

B. Sources of Adverse Inference in International Arbitration

1. Leges Arbitri and Institutional Arbitration Rules

Today, the power of the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference is broadly accepted in international arbitration.²⁸⁸ That said, there are very few provisions regarding this issue in *leges arbitri* and institutional arbitration rules. Although several ‘default clauses’²⁸⁹ are included in some *leges arbitri* and institutional arbitration rules, they should not be confused with the right to draw an adverse inference. These clauses provide only that the arbitral tribunal may continue the proceedings if a party fails to participate and produce evidence. Consequently, the arbitral tribunal can render an award based on the evidence at hand. Still, it must take care not to violate the right of the parties to present their case.²⁹⁰ This is why it is common practice to keep a passive party updated about every step of the proceedings and why there is no automatic award in favour of the other (more active) party.²⁹¹

Most *leges arbitri*, however, contain no provisions concerning adverse inference. S. 41(7)(b) EAA 1996 is therefore exceptional by allowing the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference ‘from the act of non-compliance as the circumstances justify’ within the scope of a peremptory order. Under English law, peremptory orders go one step further than normal procedural orders by setting a timeframe for compliance for the production of docu-

285 HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 147 et seq.

286 HOSANG, *Adverse Inferences*, 803.

287 GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 204.

288 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 775; SHARPE, 549 et seq.; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 181; SACHS/NIEDERMAIER, n. 3.

289 See e.g. Art. 25(c) UNCITRAL ML; Art. 30(3) UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 28(3) Swiss Rules; Art. 30 DIS Rules; Art. 26(3) ICDR Rules.

290 Mistelis-BREKOULAKIS et al., Art. 25 UNCITRAL ML, 887.

291 BUTCHERS/KIMBROUGH, 236.

ments, for example.²⁹² If a party fails to produce the document, the arbitral tribunal can draw an adverse inference, among other measures.²⁹³ The EAA 1996 thus sees adverse inference not as an automatic sanction, but merely as one possibility among others.²⁹⁴ According to other *leges arbitri*—for instance, those of Germany and Switzerland—even though it is not mentioned explicitly, adverse inference is considered to be inherent in the powers of the tribunal to conduct the taking of evidence.²⁹⁵

Institutional arbitration rules present a similar picture. Of the examined institutional arbitration rules, only the ICDR Rules explicitly allow the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference.²⁹⁶ However, many other rules equip the arbitral tribunal with the power to assess the evidence by determining its admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight.²⁹⁷ In drawing an adverse inference, the arbitral tribunal is in fact assessing the evidence by deciding how to weigh the fact that certain evidence has not been presented as requested.²⁹⁸ Over the years, arbitral practice has developed various criteria under which it is possible to draw an adverse inference. Although these conditions should not be understood as strict rules, they ensure that this part of the assessment of evidence is more rational, predictable and equitable.²⁹⁹

2. IBA Rules

Art. 9(5) and (6) IBA Rules expressly allow the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference:

“If a Party fails without satisfactory explanation to produce any Document requested in a Request to Produce to which it has not objected in due time or fails to produce any Document ordered to be produced by the Arbitral Tribunal, the Arbitral Tribunal may infer that such document would be adverse to the interests of that Party.”

“If a Party fails without satisfactory explanation to make available any other relevant evidence, including testimony, ... the Arbitral Tribunal may infer that such evidence would be adverse to the interests of that Party.”

292 S. 41(5) EAA 1996.

293 S. 41(7)(b) EAA 1996; SHEPPARD, S. 41 EAA 1996 n. 4; HARRIS et al., S. 41 EAA 1996 n. 41E.

294 VAN HOUTTE, 200; HARRIS et al., S. 41 EAA 1996 n. 41E.

295 BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 21; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1042 CCP DE n. 65.

296 Arts. 20(7) and 21(9) ICDR Rules.

297 See e.g. Art. 27(4) UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 24(2) Swiss Rules; Art. 22.1(vi) LCIA Rules.

298 SHARPE, 550 et seqq; VAN HOUTTE, 198; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 183.

299 SHARPE, 571.

Although in practice the main reason for which an adverse inference is sought is due to non-production of documents, the IBA Rules also allow this where ‘other evidence’ (e.g. examination of witnesses) is not presented.³⁰⁰ That is why Art. 9 (5) and (6) IBA Rules must be understood in conjunction with Art. 3 (3) and 4 (9), which list the conditions under which document production and the examination of witnesses can be requested. Under Art. 9 (5) and (6), an adverse inference may be drawn if a party fails to produce evidence (which it has not objected to) without satisfactory explanation, or if the arbitral tribunal has ordered either document production or production of other evidence (e.g. examination of a witness). Therefore, the arbitral tribunal has discretion to draw an adverse inference either by request of a party or on its own motion.

VAN HOUTTE points out that since it is the arbitral tribunal that ultimately decides on requests according to Art. 3 (3) and 4 (9) IBA Rules, Art. 9 (5) and (6) IBA Rules could be interpreted that no adverse inference can be drawn unless a direct order of the arbitral tribunal has been disregarded.³⁰¹ Consequently, if a party fails to produce evidence upon request of the other party and the arbitral tribunal has not confirmed this request, no adverse inference can be drawn. GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, on the other hand, argue that if a party that has been requested to produce evidence fails to object to this request, it is considered to have accepted the request.³⁰² As a result, they suggest that in this case, an express order to produce evidence seems superfluous, and if the requested party nonetheless fails to produce evidence, it is appropriate to draw an adverse inference. In addition, they hold that the procedural timetable is itself an indirect order of the arbitral tribunal.

However, along with GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, the view taken here is that in such a situation, the party should nonetheless be made aware that an adverse inference may be drawn.³⁰³ This gives that party one last chance to explain why the relevant evidence has not been produced. Although this warning should not be considered as a legal gateway to draw an adverse inference, it will certainly strengthen the evidentiary weight of that inference.³⁰⁴

300 GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 191 et seq.

301 VAN HOUTTE, 202.

302 GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 189.

303 *Ibid.*; VAN HOUTTE, 202; SACHS/NIEDERMAIER, n. 73.

304 WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 777.

The previous remarks have shown that the IBA Rules provide little guidance, but rather minimal standards regarding the circumstances in which an adverse inference may be drawn. A more extensive source of guidance in this respect is the vast case law of the Iran-United States Claims Tribunal.

3. Iran-United States Claims Tribunal

This tribunal has had to address a lack of evidence several times, due to the revolutionary turmoil in Iran.³⁰⁵ In order to shed some light on the matter of adverse inference, SHARPE has highlighted the following conditions from these cases:³⁰⁶

- “(1) The party seeking the adverse inference must produce all available evidence corroborating the inference sought;
- (2) the requested evidence must be accessible to the inference opponent;
- (3) the inference sought must be reasonable, consistent with facts in the record and logically related to the likely nature of the evidence withheld;
- (4) the party seeking the adverse inference must produce *prima facie* evidence; and
- (5) the inference opponent must know, or have reason to know, of its obligation to produce evidence rebutting the adverse inference sought.”

Several of these conditions are included to some extent in the IBA Rules. The first,³⁰⁷ however, is just partially covered by them. While Art. 3 (3) (i) IBA Rules expressly provides that the requesting party must state that the requested document is not in its possession, custody or control, Art. 4 (9) IBA Rules does not contain an equivalent provision regarding other evidence, such as witnesses. Nevertheless, the arbitral tribunal should also apply this criterion in regard to witnesses and other evidence.

The second condition³⁰⁸ is quite similar to Art. 3 (3) (ii) IBA Rules, as it obliges the requesting party to explain why it assumes that the requested documents are in the custody or control of the other party. This is unsurprising, since the arbitral tribunal has no reason to draw an adverse inference if it has not been shown that the other party is in fact in possession of certain evidence.³⁰⁹ Here again, no similar provision exists that would apply to other evidence except documents. Therefore, under the same reasoning as before, the second condition should also apply to other evidence.

³⁰⁵ SHARPE, 551.

³⁰⁶ SHARPE, 551.

³⁰⁷ *Ibid.*, 554 et seqq.; VAN HOUTTE, 203 et seq.; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 197.

³⁰⁸ SHARPE, 557 et seq; VAN HOUTTE, 204; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 197 et seq.

³⁰⁹ *Ibid.*

The third condition³¹⁰ is divided into three parts. The first part—that the inference sought be reasonable—might seem superfluous. What is meant here is that the arbitral tribunal can draw an adverse inference only if there is no substantial suspicion that drawing it would be inconsistent with the commercial reality.³¹¹ Parties can hence expect that the arbitral tribunal will be familiar with common business practices and will draw an adverse inference only where this makes sense within the broader picture (i.e. given the *external facts*).³¹² This could mean, for instance, that in the absence of any contemporaneous objection, invoices or payment documents presented during the course of a contract are considered to be correct.³¹³ The second part mirrors the first in providing that an adverse inference should also be consistent with the *internal facts*—that is, the facts of the record.³¹⁴ By requiring consistency with both external and internal facts, these two parts go beyond the IBA Rules. The third part presupposes that there must be a logical connection between the nature of the documents withheld and the inference derived therefrom.

In the illustrative *Riahi* case, the respondent failed twice to prove its ownership of a certain amount of bearer shares.³¹⁵ However, the arbitral tribunal refused to draw an adverse inference, based on the fact that according to Iranian law, there is no obligation to register bearer shares in a company's share register. Consequently, because the arbitral tribunal was not convinced that there was any connection, it did not draw an adverse inference.³¹⁶ This third part goes in the same direction as Art. 9(5) IBA Rules by stating that the adverse inference cannot go further than the withheld document.³¹⁷

The fourth condition³¹⁸ requires that the requesting party have a factual basis for the allegation according to which it seeks adverse inference.³¹⁹

310 SHARPE, 558 et seqq.; VAN HOUTTE, 204 et seqq.; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 199 et seqq.

311 SHARPE, 559; HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 154; LUTTRELL, 287 et seqq.; SOURGENS et al., n. 8.12 et seqq.

312 HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 154.

313 See e.g. *Houston Contracting Co. v. National Iranion Oil Co.*, IUSCT, 22 Jul. 1988, 378-173-3.

314 See e.g. *Methanex Corporation v. Government of the United States of America*, ICSID, 3 Aug. 2005, pt. II, ch. G, n. 25.

315 *Frederica Lincoln Riahi v. Government of the Islamic Republic of Iran*, IUSCT, 27 Feb. 2003, 600-485-1; see also the dissenting opinion of Judge BROWER, pointing out that the arbitral tribunal should not have rewarded the respondent for ‘stonewalling’ by refusing to draw an adverse inference (Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2003, n. 533 et seqq.).

316 VAN HOUTTE, 207; see also the illustrative example in LUTTRELL, 287 et seqq.

317 MARGHITOLA, 176; VAN HOUTTE, 207; SACHS/NIEDERMAIER, n. 39.

318 SHARPE, 564 et seqq.; VAN HOUTTE, 205 et seqq.; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 200 et seqq.

319 O’MALLEY, n. 7.41.

More specifically, this *prima facie* evidence ought to be consistent, complete and detailed, which is not always easy to demonstrate.³²⁰ Compared to the IBA Rules, this condition limits the possibility to draw an adverse inference even further.

The fifth condition³²¹ relates directly to the principle of due process³²² and requires the arbitral tribunal to inform a party that fails to produce evidence without sufficient reason that an adverse inference might be drawn.³²³ If the arbitral tribunal fails to do so, not only do the proceedings become less efficient and fair, but the arbitral award might ultimately be unenforceable.³²⁴

The IBA Rules do not mention this fifth condition. Of course, it could be argued that since the arbitral tribunal normally addresses the possibility of adverse inference in the case management conference, it is not necessary to repeat this warning if a party fails to produce evidence. This view was taken in a recent ICC case and later confirmed by the Paris Court of Appeal.³²⁵ What was particularly interesting here was that a party requested that certain documents be produced by the adverse party, which never responded. Neither the requesting party nor the arbitral tribunal commented on this failure to produce evidence. Eventually, the arbitral tribunal drew an adverse inference by its own motion without first consulting with the parties. Before the Paris Court of Appeal, the claimant stated that because the arbitral tribunal had not informed the parties of its intention to draw an adverse inference in advance, it had violated due process. However, the Paris Court of Appeal held that since the parties had agreed in the case management conference on the application of the IBA Rules, the arbitral tribunal, in applying those rules, was authorised to draw an adverse inference without first consulting the parties.³²⁶ Moreover, it held that the parties had had sufficient opportunity

³²⁰ SHARPE, 564 et seqq.; MARGHITOLA, 176.

³²¹ SHARPE, 568 et seqq; VAN HOUTTE, 205 et seq.; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 201 et seq.

³²² VAN HOUTTE, 208; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 201.

³²³ SHARPE, 568 et seq.

³²⁴ SHARPE, 570; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 202 et seq.; *Dongwoo Mann + Hummel Co. Ltd. v. Mann + Hummel GmbH* [2008] SGHC 67; MARGHITOLA points out that not every unjustified adverse inference leads to the annulment of the arbitral award based on the grounds of a violation of the right to be heard. Rather, he argues that parties against whom an adverse inference is sought should be warned first. Thus, due process is upheld if parties are made aware in the case management conference of the possibility that the arbitral tribunal may draw an adverse inference under certain conditions (MARGHITOLA, 214 et seq.).

³²⁵ *Société Dresser-Rand Group Inc. v. Société Diana Capital I.F.C.R.*, Paris Court of Appeal, 28 Feb. 2017, First Civil Chamber, 15/06036.

³²⁶ *Ibid.*, n. 292.

during the proceedings to explain why the relevant documents were not presented. Thus, the Court of Appeal reasoned that due process had been upheld at all times.

This decision certainly promotes the use of adverse inference.³²⁷ Parties should therefore think carefully before deliberately refusing to produce evidence, pursuant either to a direct order of the arbitral tribunal or to a request of another party. Moreover, the decision affirms that as long as the parties are given an opportunity to comment on the non-production of evidence, due process is sufficiently upheld.³²⁸ Despite this very straightforward and generally welcome decision, arbitral tribunals would be well advised to give the party a final opportunity to restate its reasons for non-production of evidence³²⁹—if only because often the mere threat of adverse inference can be enough to persuade a party to comply with evidentiary orders.³³⁰

C. Anticipated Assessment of Evidence

As stated above (*see* p. 60 et seqq. *supra*), the conditions under which an adverse inference can be drawn should not be understood as mandatory.³³¹ This is rather a question of how the arbitral tribunal freely assesses the evidence (both presented and missing) and acts according to its ‘inner conviction’.³³² Consequently, a party that requests the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference has no right to the grant of its request.³³³ In Switzerland, the SFT has emphasised several times that an arbitral tribunal’s refusal to draw an adverse inference does not violate the right to be heard, but rather falls within the scope of its free assessment of evidence.³³⁴ In this respect, the SFT also refers to the ‘anticipated assessment of evidence’, which will be subject to closer scrutiny (*see* p. 272 et seqq. *infra*).³³⁵ Simply put, this concept allows the arbitral tribunal, for example, to refuse to examine further

³²⁷ DE WESTGAVER/ZINATULLINA, Will Adverse Inferences Help Make Document Production in International Arbitration More Efficient?

³²⁸ *Ibid.*

³²⁹ SHARPE, 570; VAN HOUTTE, 209; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 777.

³³⁰ SHARPE, 550.

³³¹ GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 188.

³³² O’MALLEY, 7.39; VAN HOUTTE, 198.

³³³ SACHS/NIEDERMAIER, n. 66.

³³⁴ DFT 4A_450/2007 of 9 Jan. 2008, cons. 4.2.2; DFT 4A_2/2007 of 28 Mar. 2007, cons. 4; DFT 4P.22/1996 of 25 Jul. 1997, cons. 3c, in: ASA Bull. 2000, 103.

³³⁵ Art. 157 CCP CH; FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7312.

evidence as it considers the fact already proven.³³⁶ Accordingly, this assessment of evidence can be examined only under the very limited scope of a violation of public policy.³³⁷

As a consequence, the arbitral tribunal can—but need not—draw an adverse inference if a party refuses to produce evidence.³³⁸ The same applies in civil state court proceedings: pursuant to Art. 164 CCP CH, if a party refuses to cooperate without valid reasons, the court shall take this into account when appraising the evidence. The SFT has held that this provision does not instruct the court to automatically draw an adverse inference, but rather leaves the respective consequences to the court's free assessment of evidence.³³⁹ It has further stated that although this fact must be assessed to the detriment of the non-compliant party, a *de facto* reversal of the burden of proof would go too far.³⁴⁰

D. Drawing of an Adverse Inference in Practice

In practice, however, arbitral tribunals are often hesitant to draw an adverse inference because of a potential violation of due process.³⁴¹ Although the arbitral tribunal's exercise of its discretion must always be balanced with the principle of due process, the fear of annulment or non-enforcement of the arbitral award is often unfounded.³⁴² As previously pointed out (*see* p. 59, 63 *supra*), state courts are less likely to set aside an arbitral award if the parties had sufficient opportunity to argue on the point of whether an adverse inference is appropriate. This is true even where it turns out that the adverse inference was in fact unjustified.³⁴³ Moreover, one should bear in

³³⁶ See e.g. DFT 4A_427/2017 of 22 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.1.1; DFT 4A_277/2017 of 28 Aug. 2017, cons. 3.1.

³³⁷ Art. 190 (2) (e) PILA CH; DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1.

³³⁸ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 21; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1358. In this respect, arbitrators should bear in mind that if they allow an adverse inference only under very severe conditions, parties have no more incentives to comply with evidentiary orders (MARGHITOLA, 177).

³³⁹ DFT 140 III 264, cons. 2.3.

³⁴⁰ *Ibid.*; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 7; BSK-SCHMID, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 2; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 6.

³⁴¹ Queen Mary Survey (2012), 21; GREENBERG/LAUTENSCHLAGER, 180, 202; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2393; LUTTRELL, 293 et seqq.; SOURGENS et al., n. 8.46.

³⁴² VAN HOUTTE, 214.

³⁴³ MARGHITOLA, 214 et seq. He argues that an unjustified adverse inference is not a violation of equal treatment of the parties, and that this principle should not be misused to examine whether the arbitral tribunal's discretion has been proportionate in regard to evidentiary measures.

mind the (even worse) alternative: allowing a party to deliberately disregard an evidentiary order of the arbitral tribunal. Both common sense and a basic understanding of justice require that a non-compliant party be sanctioned in such a case ('*venire contra factum proprium*'—that is, 'no one may set himself in contradiction to his own previous conduct').³⁴⁴ Faced with a hesitant tribunal, a party would be well advised to substantiate the consequences of *not* drawing an adverse inference and its possible influence on the arbitral award.³⁴⁵ In addition, since common law is more familiar with the concept of adverse inference, the legal background of an arbitrator should be considered.³⁴⁶ All in all, where a party fails to produce evidence without substantial reasons, the arbitral tribunal should not be too reluctant to use this powerful tool.³⁴⁷

E. Summary

As stated previously, adverse inference is the sanction most commonly imposed where a party fails to produce evidence without satisfactory reason in international arbitration (*see* p. 56 et seqq. *supra*). Although it is mentioned in very few institutional arbitration rules, it is common sense that the right to draw an adverse inference derives from the arbitral tribunal's duty and right to freely assess the evidence. In contrast, although they say very little about the 'how' and 'when', the IBA Rules empower the arbitral tribunal to draw an adverse inference under certain conditions. Therefore, the conditions carved out by SHARPE provide arbitrators with helpful guidance on the circumstances under which this sanction should be imposed. These requirements are not engraved in stone, but should rather be applied on a case-by-case basis. In doing so, the arbitral tribunal must pay particular attention to ensure that the threshold of *prima facie* evidence is not too high for the requesting party. In addition, it has been shown that the decision on whether to draw an adverse inference always involves a balancing act between freely assessing the evidence and observing due process. In this regard it seems fair—albeit perhaps not strictly necessary—to grant the reluctant party a final chance to comply with the evidentiary order. Furthermore, the mere threat of drawing an adverse inference can often induce parties to produce the evidence in question.

³⁴⁴ BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2393.

³⁴⁵ LUTTRELL, 294 et seq.

³⁴⁶ *Ibid.*, 295.

³⁴⁷ HOSANG, *Adverse Inferences*, 804.

Despite the broad acceptance of this measure, arbitral tribunals seem to be rather reluctant to draw adverse inferences in practice. Concerns regarding the possible annulment or non-enforcement of an arbitral award because of an (even unjustified) adverse inference have been disproved. It is thus hoped that arbitral tribunals and state courts will take brave steps forward by applying this concept more often. This is especially true given that adverse inference is by far the most effective tool to sanction a party that refuses to produce evidence. However, whether other state courts will commit to adverse inference based on the far-reaching model of the Paris Court of Appeal remains to be seen.

§ 3 Cost Sanctions

A. Introduction

In addition to drawing an adverse inference, the arbitral tribunal can sanction non-compliant parties through the allocation of costs. The most important monetary sanctions with regard to evidence are addressed below. The question to be answered here is whether these cost sanctions are worthy alternatives to an adverse inference.

B. Allocating the Costs

The most common way to sanction a non-compliant party is through the allocation of costs in the arbitral award. This principle is widely accepted in international arbitration.³⁴⁸ In this case, the arbitral tribunal deviates from the common principle that costs ‘follow the event’—that is, the costs reflect the parties’ relative success and failure.³⁴⁹ Consequently, a prevailing party may nonetheless be sanctioned to bear the costs of arbitration (partially or in full) due to non-compliance.³⁵⁰ Therefore, in the absence of agreement between the parties, several *leges arbitri* and institutional arbitration rules allow the arbitral tribunal, in allocating costs, to consider the respective circumstances of the case, such as the conduct of a party during the proceedings.³⁵¹ Art. 28.4 LCIA Rules, as one of the most explicit provisions in this regard, states:

348 O’MALLEY, n. 7.43; BLACKABY et al., n. 9.96; ROSELL, 117 et seq.

349 S. 61(2) EAA 1996; Art 28.4 1st sentence LCIA Rules; ROSELL, 116.

350 HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 213.

351 Arbitration Rules: see e.g. Art. 42(1) UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 37(5) ICC Rules; Art. 34 ICDR Rules; Art. 33.3 DIS Rules; *Leges arbitri*: see e.g. §1057(1) CCP DE; Art. 1467 CCP FR; S. 61(2) EAA 1996.

“The Arbitral Tribunal may also take into account the parties’ conduct in the arbitration, including any co-operation in facilitating the proceedings as to time and cost and any non-co-operation resulting in undue delay and unnecessary expense. Any decision on costs by the Arbitral Tribunal shall be made with reasons in the award containing such decision.”

Similarly, Art. 33.3 DIS Rules reads as follows:

“The arbitral tribunal shall make decisions concerning the costs of the arbitration in its discretion. In so doing, it shall take into account all circumstances that it considers to be relevant. Such circumstances may include the outcome of the arbitration and the extent to which the parties have conducted the arbitration efficiently.”³⁵²

As it is the case with adverse inference, a party on whom a monetary sanction might be imposed should be warned first in order to observe due process.³⁵³

Focusing specifically on the process of taking evidence, Art. 9 (7) IBA Rules reads as follows:

“If the Arbitral Tribunal determines that a Party has failed to conduct itself in good faith in the taking of evidence, the Arbitral Tribunal may, in addition to any other measures available under these Rules, take such failure into account in its assignment of the costs of the arbitration, including costs arising out of or in connection with the taking of evidence.”

Unsurprisingly, the concept of ‘good faith’ is understood very differently among various legal cultures. As previously discussed, in one legal system, interaction between lawyers and potential witnesses prior to the hearing is considered standard procedure; while in another, it is considered unethical (*see p. 43 et seqq. supra*). That is why the concept of ‘good faith’ should not be culturally motivated, but should rather represent an objective standard.³⁵⁴ Therefore, to act in good faith means first and foremost to cooperate in the taking of evidence by presenting the requested evidence in accordance with the procedural timetable.³⁵⁵ Furthermore, it includes refraining from actions that would threaten or hinder another party’s access to evidence.³⁵⁶

352 *See also* SCHARDT, 35.

353 REED, 100 et seq; ROSELL, 118.

354 O’MALLEY, n. 7.44.

355 *Ibid.*, n. 7.46 et seqq.

356 *Ibid.*, n. 7.52.

Although the possibility to sanction an obstructionist party in allocating the costs in the arbitral award is widely accepted, this rarely happens in practice.³⁵⁷ This is all the more astonishing given that practitioners seem to embrace the fact that improper conduct by a party will be reflected in the allocation of costs.³⁵⁸ One explanation for the reluctance of arbitral tribunals to allocate costs other than by following the event is that the actual costs caused by the party's non-compliance must be shown, which can be hard to prove at times.³⁵⁹ Still, in a number of ICC cases, the arbitral tribunal allocated the costs at the expense of parties that manipulated and unnecessarily delayed the arbitral proceeding.³⁶⁰

C. Sanctions Against Party Representatives

1. Introduction

In addition to the possibility to sanction non-compliant parties through the allocation of costs, recent discussions have highlighted the consequences of misconduct by party representatives and the issue of counsel ethics in general.³⁶¹ As 'guerrilla tactics', party representatives might make deliberately false statements, suppress and conceal documents or influence parties and/or witnesses to do so. In such cases, it is unclear whether the arbitral tribunal is authorised to sanction the party representative directly. To curb such misbehaviour and level the playing field between conflicting professional ethical rules, at least two institutions have produced ethical guidelines and rules thus far.³⁶² A general examination of the usefulness of guidelines and rules regarding the conduct of party representatives is beyond the scope of this book, which rather explores whether these could be helpful as sanctions in the taking of evidence.³⁶³

³⁵⁷ REED, 100.

³⁵⁸ Queen Mary Survey (2012), 41.

³⁵⁹ HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 213.

³⁶⁰ *Manufacturer v. Buyer*, ICC Case No. 8486 (1996), n. 26, in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 172 et seq.; *Agent v. Principal and Managing director of principal*, ICC Case No. 7453 (1994), n. 44, in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1997, 124; *Buyer Yv. Seller A and others*, ICC Case No. 7661 (1996), n. 52 et seq., in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1997, 163.

³⁶¹ See e.g. PARK, 409 et seqq.; SUSSMAN, 239 et seqq.; GEISINGER, 17 et seqq.; HWANG/HON, 658 et seqq.; LAU, 559 et seqq.; HODGES, 599 et seqq.; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 634 et seqq.

³⁶² GEISINGER et al., 5. HODGES, 616; SUSSMAN, 251; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 641 et seq. DASSER argues that in terms of equality of arms, 'leveling the playing field' should take place in each individual arbitral proceeding, rather than according to an international guideline ('We do not need to level the world if we can level the hearing room.', 641).

³⁶³ For an introduction to guidelines, rules and other para-regulatory texts in international arbitration, see ASA Special Series no. 37.

2. IBA Guidelines

The relatively new IBA Guidelines on Party Representation in International Arbitration (henceforth ‘IBA Guidelines’) from 2013 may serve as a first example. These detailed guidelines address various issues, such as counsel misconduct with regard to submissions to the tribunal, document disclosure and the handling of witnesses and experts.³⁶⁴ According to the IBA Guidelines, ‘misconduct’ is defined very broadly as ‘a breach of the present Guidelines or any other conduct that the Arbitral Tribunal determines to be contrary to the duties of a Party Representative’.³⁶⁵ The main feature of the IBA Guidelines is found in Guideline 26, which states that the arbitral tribunal is empowered to impose sanctions in case of misconduct by a party representative. Accordingly, it can thus (a) admonish the party representative, (b) draw an adverse inference, (c) apportion costs appropriately, and (d) take any other appropriate measures in order to preserve the fairness and integrity of the proceedings.

In stark contrast to the IBA Rules, the IBA Guidelines have been subject to harsh criticism since their introduction.³⁶⁶ The main concern relates to the ability of the arbitrators, as the competent body, to decide the matter in dispute and to sanction a party representative at the same time. As a result, the arbitral tribunal might easily be tempted to show bias against parties and their representatives.³⁶⁷ This potentially endangers not only the arbitral tribunal’s impartiality, but also the relationship between parties and their representatives.³⁶⁸ In other words, this double role not only distracts the arbitral tribunal from its main purpose of deciding on the merits of the case, but also creates an unhealthy tension between the tribunal and the party representatives, who will be much more likely to challenge the members of the arbitral tribunal because of possible bias against them.³⁶⁹

364 For an extended overview of the IBA Guidelines, see WAINCYMER, *Regulatory Developments*, 534 et seqq.; SUSSMAN, 252 et seqq.; ROGERS, n. 3.89 et seqq.

365 IBA Guidelines, 3; WAINCYMER, *Regulatory Developments*, 544.

366 SCHNEIDER, *IBA Guidelines*, 497 et seq.; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 637 et seq.; HODGES, 613 et seq.; LAU, 577 et seq.; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2854 et seq.; HWANG/HON, 658 et seq.; for the official ASA position, see GEISINGER et al., 1 et seq.; for a mediating position see WAINCYMER, *Regulatory Developments*, 550 et seq.

367 ASHFORD, Art. 26-27-18.

368 GEISINGER et al., 2; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 655, 660. He points out that parties would be unwilling to be interrupted by an investigation of counsel conduct which (in most countries) would fall under the competence of professional bodies such as the bar council or other supervisory authorities; for a different view, see LAU, 582 et seq.

369 HWANG/HON, 659; HODGES, 616; ASHFORD, 27-27-12 et seqq. After all, although not mentioned expressly in the IBA Guidelines, the official commentary states that before imposing any sanctions, the arbitral tribunal ought to hear the parties and the im-pugned representative (IBA Guidelines, 17).

As regards the effectiveness of the sanctions mentioned in the IBA Guidelines, several concerns are noteworthy. Of the four sanctions stated in Guideline 26, only sanction (a), which provides for the admonishment of a party representative, is a real sanction against counsel.³⁷⁰ Sanctions (b) and (c), which involve drawing an adverse inference or apportioning the costs, already lie within the remit of the arbitral tribunal.³⁷¹ Finally, sanction (d) allows the arbitral tribunal to take appropriate measures to ensure the fairness and integrity of the proceedings. This provision has been drafted extremely broadly and is thus highly dubious, if not dangerous, in terms of the principle of legality.³⁷² Thus, the IBA Guidelines largely provide ‘sanctions’ which are already available to the arbitral tribunal. In addition, because sanctions (a) and (d) are drafted so broadly, there is always the danger of a party abusing the guidelines by making false and unfounded accusations of unethical behaviour of the adverse party’s representative.³⁷³

Because of the numerous shortcomings of the IBA Guidelines, their adoption by parties, counsel and arbitral tribunals remains lacklustre.³⁷⁴ The Queen Mary survey (2015) showed that the IBA Guidelines lack support among international arbitration practitioners; fewer than half of the survey respondents agreed that the conduct of party representatives should not be further regulated, but that tribunals should instead use the currently available sanctions.³⁷⁵ Notwithstanding the various issues relating to the IBA Guidelines, they seem to be at least partially used as guidelines (but not as binding rules).³⁷⁶

370 DASSER, *Guidelines*, 649.

371 *Ibid.*, 649 et seq.; see also WAINCYMER, *Regulatory Developments*, 520, 545. He states that sanctioning an innocent party with costs for the behaviour of its representative is problematic, since the representative is not part of the arbitration agreement and is therefore acting as a third party. Thus, the IBA Guidelines 26 (c) do not constitute a basis to burden a party representative personally with such costs; for a different view, see ASHFORD, n. 1-3-24 et seqq., 26-27-9 et seqq. He argues for direct jurisdiction over party representatives and therefore the possibility to sanction them in cases of misconduct even if those representatives are not part of the arbitration agreement.

372 WAINCYMER, *Regulatory Developments*, 544 et seq.; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 651; ASHFORD, n. 26-27-36.

373 HWANG/HON, 659; SCHNEIDER, *IBA Guidelines*, 500; GEISINGER et al., 2; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 651 et seq.; ASHFORD, 26-27-15.

374 For a different view, see ROGERS, n. 3.100 et seq. In her opinion, international arbitration is in desperate need of clarity on the proper conduct of party representatives: ‘Attorneys need more guidance about what constitutes proper conduct. Parties need to understand better how to plan their legal representation and related case strategy. Arbitrators need more clear guidance and support in making rulings on ethical issues. And ... national bar associations ... need assurance that there is a reliable regime in place to protect client and societal interests implicated in attorney conducts’ (n. 3.98).

375 Queen Mary Survey (2015), 41. This view is confirmed in the more recent study by LAU, 571.

376 *Ibid.*, 565; IBA Report (2016), 74 et seqq.

3. LCIA Guidelines

The second example is the LCIA Rules, which are thus far the first and only rules to include provisions regulating the conduct of party representatives to ‘promote the good and equal conduct of the parties’ legal representative’.³⁷⁷ To some degree inspired by the IBA Guidelines, the LCIA Rules, which were revised in 2014, now contain an annex with general guidelines concerning party representatives (henceforth the ‘LCIA Guidelines’).³⁷⁸ Since according to the LCIA Rules, party representatives can act as such only after agreeing on the provisions set forth in the annex, the LCIA Guidelines apply automatically and there is no opt-out clause.³⁷⁹

Unlike the IBA Guidelines, the LCIA Rules do not define the term ‘misconduct’, but refer more generally to violation of the LCIA Guidelines.³⁸⁰ The annex itself lists the possible types of misconduct of party representatives, such as making false statements, procuring or assisting in the preparation of false evidence and knowingly concealing documents. According to Art. 18.6 LCIA Rules, the arbitral tribunal, after consulting the parties and letting the parties’ representatives explain themselves, may impose cascading sanctions as follows: (i) a written reprimand, (ii) a written caution as to future conduct in the arbitration, and (iii) finally, any other measure necessary to fulfil the general duties set forth in Art. 14.4 LCIA Rules. While the first two sanctions might already be sufficient to induce a party representative to comply with the LCIA Guidelines, the third requires a higher standard.³⁸¹ ‘Any other measure necessary’ can be imposed if this meets the requirements of due process under Art. 14.4 LCIA Rules. This could mean to report the misconduct to a local professional authority or even exclude the party representative from the arbitration.³⁸²

Needless to say, such severe sanctions should be imposed only in extreme situations and after due consideration. Unlike under the IBA Guidelines, and because the sanctions in Art. 18.6 LCIA Rules are meant to be

377 LCIA Guidelines n. 1; Mistelis-NESBITT/DAROWSKI, Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 5.

378 Because the Annex applies to every arbitration under the revised LCIA Rules, the name of the guidelines, as compared to ‘rules’ or ‘codes’, is misleading. Nonetheless, the Annex is not intended to derogate from mandatory laws or professional codes of conduct which apply to party representatives in the arbitration (LCIA Guidelines, n. 1; SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 21).

379 Art. 18.5 LCIA Rules; SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 22.

380 Art 18.6 LCIA Rules.

381 SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 63.

382 SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 63 et seqq.

imposed directly against a party representative and not against the party itself, adverse inference and allocation of costs are not sanctions available under the LCIA Rules.³⁸³

There are plausible reasons to believe that the revised LCIA Rules will be of much greater significance and relevance than the IBA Guidelines. First, they enjoy greater legitimacy, since the parties agree indirectly to apply them by choosing the LCIA Rules in their arbitration agreement as the applicable procedural rules.³⁸⁴ Because the party representatives must agree to comply with these rules, the arbitral tribunal is authorised to impose sanctions on them directly.³⁸⁵ Second, compared to the IBA Guidelines, the LCIA Guidelines provide rather weak sanctions, but include strict requirements. As previously mentioned, the IBA Guidelines contain some sanctions which are already within the arbitral tribunal's remit to impose (*see* p. 70 *supra*). The LCIA Guidelines, on the other hand, contain more effective measures to control the behaviour of party representatives. In addition, the sanction of taking 'other measures' is narrowly drafted and requires that high standards be met. Third, according to recent data, practitioners suggest that if there is to be tighter regulation of party representatives, this should be done through institutional arbitration rules such as the LCIA Guidelines, rather than through the IBA Guidelines.³⁸⁶ However, the extent to which the LCIA Guidelines help to control the conduct of party representatives remains to be seen.

4. Result

The previous remarks have sketched out the current debate on the regulation of party representatives' conduct in international arbitration. While some of these sanctions may be helpful in the taking of evidence, the arbitral tribunal should not be the competent body to impose them. While it is crucial that counsel misconduct is addressed and sanctioned, the arbitral tribunal should not have to play a double role of deciding on the merits of the case and sanctioning non-compliant party representatives. As explained, this role creates a risk of an impartial arbitral tribunal, making the arbitral award more vulnerable to challenge on the grounds of violation of due process or arbitrator

³⁸³ *Ibid.*, Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 65; ASHFORD, Art. 26-27-32; for a different view, *see* Mistelis-NESBITT/DAROWSKI, Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 7. They argue that the behaviour of party representatives should be considered when allocating the costs (Art. 28.4 LCIA Rules).

³⁸⁴ PARK, 419; SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 22 et seqq.

³⁸⁵ Art. 18.5 LCIA Rules; SCHERER et al., Art. 18 LCIA Rules n. 51 et seqq.; DASSER, *Guidelines*, 659.

³⁸⁶ Queen Mary Survey (2015), 41.

bias against party representatives. Only time will tell whether the competence to sanction non-compliant and/or obstructionist party representatives will be left to national bar councils or even, as suggested by the ASA, a global arbitration ethics council.³⁸⁷

D. Monetary Penalties

1. Introduction

Instead of assessing the costs to the detriment of the non-compliant party, in some jurisdictions arbitral tribunals are authorised to impose monetary penalties. Even the mere threat of such penalties often induces a party to comply with evidentiary orders.³⁸⁸ The penalties are imposed either as a single lump sum or as a certain amount of money multiplied by the period of time for which the party is non-compliant.³⁸⁹ In most jurisdictions, these penalties are of a private nature and the amount, which is fixed by the arbitral tribunal, must be paid to the opposing party, rather than to the arbitral tribunal or a state court.³⁹⁰ The main purpose is therefore not to compensate a loss, but to punish a party for its misbehaviour.³⁹¹

2. Legal Basis

France, among other jurisdictions, is familiar with the concept of monetary penalties (so-called '*astreintes*').³⁹² Art. 1467 (3) CCP FR reads as follows:³⁹³

“If a party is in possession of an item of evidence, the arbitral tribunal may order that party to submit such evidence according to the terms and conditions the tribunal decides and, as need be, under penalty.”

The Dutch and Belgian *leges arbitri* include similar provisions; but *astreintes* are not permissible under Swedish law.³⁹⁴ In other countries, however, no

387 GEISINGER, 26 et seqq.; the work of the ASA-Working group in building a global arbitration ethics council is on hold, at least for the moment.

388 LANDROVE/GREUTER, 527 et seq.

389 MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 355; HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 220; Vogenauer-SCHELHAAS, Art. 7.2.4 PICC n. 5.

390 LEVY, 26; LANDROVE/GREUTER, 529.

391 MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 356.

392 For a brief historical overview of *astreintes* in France, see LANDROVE/GREUTER, 526 et seq.

393 According to Art. 1506 (3) CCP FR, Art. 1467 CCP FR applies not only to domestic arbitration, but also to international arbitration, unless the parties agree otherwise; see also Art. 1468 CCP FR in regard to *astreintes* concerning interim measures.

394 Art. 1056 CCP NL; Art. 1700 (4) JC BE; S. 25(3) SAA SE.

such provisions can be found.³⁹⁵ Moreover, the examined institutional arbitration rules do not allow for the possibility to impose *astreintes*—at least, not expressly.³⁹⁶ Regarding the *lex mercatoria*, only Art. 7.2.4 of the UNIDROIT Principles of International Commercial Contracts (PICC) clearly empowers the arbitral tribunal to order *astreintes*. Still, as SCHELHAAS points out, this provision is largely inspired by French law and thus does not reflect a general principle of law.³⁹⁷ Finally, in the absence of any agreement between the parties, arbitral tribunals seem reluctant to impose monetary penalties. Even in France, the homeland of *astreintes*, they are imposed only rarely.³⁹⁸

Hence, in the absence of any tangible legal basis, the question arises as to whether the arbitral tribunal can nonetheless order an *astreinte*. Since this question must be answered individually for each country, the focus below is on the situation in Switzerland. This issue must be separated from the problem of enforcing an *astreinte*, which is not within the scope of this book.

3. Astreintes in Switzerland

The Swiss *lex arbitri* is silent with regard to *astreintes*: it neither recognises nor denies them, but leaves this to the parties to agree in the arbitral proceedings.³⁹⁹ While several authors recommend their application in both Swiss domestic and international arbitration, there is no consensus as to the conditions under which this should actually be possible. The ‘inherent power theory’ could serve as inspiration here. Accordingly, the arbitral tribunal, in fulfilling its jurisdictional power, has certain (inherent) powers and can consequently order *astreintes*.⁴⁰⁰ Prior to the introduction of *astreintes* into French law, the Paris Court of Appeal reasoned that the power of the arbitral tribunal to impose monetary penalties is a necessary extension of its power.⁴⁰¹

³⁹⁵ For a brief overview, see MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 361.

³⁹⁶ HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 222 et seq.; MOSIMANN, 136.

³⁹⁷ Vogenauer-SCHELHAAS, Art. 7.2.4 PICC n.1 et seq.; LANDROVE/GREUTER, 544.

³⁹⁸ HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 227 et seq.; see e.g. ICC Case No. 13490 (2007), where the respondent failed to produce certain documents. In the award, the arbitral tribunal repeated its order of document production paired with a daily fine (*astreinte*) of EUR 3,000, beginning one month after notification of the award until the respondent complied with the document production order.

³⁹⁹ Art. 182 (1) PILA CH.

⁴⁰⁰ LANDROVE/GREUTER, 544 et seq.; MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 362 et seq.; MOSIMANN, 137; HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 225 et seq.

⁴⁰¹ *Société Otor Participations et autres v. Carlyle Holdings 1 et autre*, Paris Court of Appeal, 7 Oct. 2004, in: Rev. Arb. 2005, 740. It is noteworthy that this decision was made prior to the implementation of *astreintes* as a mean of monetary penalty in the French *lex arbitri*.

This book does not support this view. First, besides the fact that Swiss law contains no explicit legal basis to impose *astreintes* in arbitration, the inherent power theory is a very vague foundation. This is one reason why *astreintes* were subsequently expressly included in the French *lex arbitri*. Second, this theory obviously lacks foreseeability—in particular for foreign parties, which could not anticipate the application of such a construct if it is stated in neither the *lex arbitri* nor the parties' agreement.⁴⁰²

Other authors propose—quite similar to the aforementioned theory of inherent powers—that the arbitration agreement be interpreted to determine whether the parties have (even tacitly) empowered the arbitral tribunal to impose monetary penalties ('implicit consent theory').⁴⁰³ But here again, this book does not support this view. Since this reasoning served to support the arbitral tribunal's power to order interim measures *before* it was enshrined in almost all *leges arbitri* and institutional arbitration rules, it would go too far to use this theory to support such a drastic sanction as monetary penalties.⁴⁰⁴ In addition, as is the case for evidentiary matters more broadly, at the time of agreeing to arbitrate, the parties will not usually consider the question of whether monetary penalties should be imposed in case of non-compliance.⁴⁰⁵ To conclude, therefore, that the parties have nonetheless agreed upon the application of *astreintes* would appear to be mere speculation.⁴⁰⁶ Based on the previous remarks, this book supports the prevailing view in Switzerland that no *astreintes* can be ordered in the absence of explicit agreement between the parties, unless the respective *lex arbitri* contains an explicit provision in this regard.⁴⁰⁷ Still, although rarely seen in practice, the parties can empower the arbitral tribunal to order *astreintes* or choose a *lex arbitri* which is familiar with this concept.⁴⁰⁸

402 HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 225 et seqq.; MARGHITOLA, 180.

403 Art. 182 (2) PILA CH; GAILLARD/SAVAGE, n. 1274; LEVY, 29; MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 362 et seq.; concerning interim measures, see BOOG, n. 156 et seq.; GIRSBERGER/VOSER point out that the arbitral tribunal's power to order an *astreinte* is justified only if it is enforceable. Therefore, they suggest that the arbitral tribunal can impose it and then confirm it in a partial award (n. 1110).

404 HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 226.

405 MOURRE, *Judicial Penalties*, 364; HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 226.

406 MOSIMANN, 138. In regard to *astreintes* in connection with interim measures, BOOG argues that as long as the parties do not expressly agree otherwise, they have implicitly empowered the arbitral tribunal to order *astreintes* to ensure a maximum of legal protection (n. 156 et seq.).

407 BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1263; MOSIMANN, 138; HOSANG, *Obstructionist Behaviour*, 227; MARHGITALA, 180; GÖKSU, n. 302.

408 MARGHITOLA, 180.

4. Result

Astreintes as monetary penalties in international arbitration are used to punish a party for non-compliance. They can thus be a very powerful tool, forcing the reluctant party to comply with procedural orders and reinforcing the position of the arbitral tribunal.⁴⁰⁹ Still, very few jurisdictions acknowledge this legal concept. In Switzerland, for instance, there is no legal basis for issuing *astreintes*, even though several authors have suggested their application. Although this is seldom done in practice, parties could voluntarily empower the arbitral tribunal to impose monetary penalties in case of non-compliance. Even where the parties or the respective *lex arbitri* allows the arbitral tribunal to apply such sanctions, this should be done only after due consideration, given that *astreintes* are drastic sanctions. To sum up, this book considers that an arbitral tribunal should order *astreintes* only if the parties have explicitly agreed on this or if this is enshrined in the respective *lex arbitri*.

E. Summary

The goal of this chapter was to examine whether cost sanctions are a worthy alternative to the drawing of an adverse inference. This question must be answered separately for each type of cost sanction. As discussed, the allocation of costs in the arbitral award is the most common way to sanction parties through costs, even though this is seldom done in practice. The fact that many institutional arbitration rules allow the arbitrators to take the parties' behaviour into account in allocating the costs should encourage arbitral tribunals to make use of this right. This applies all the more since the mere threat of allocating costs to the disadvantage of a non-compliant party can induce it to play by the rules. Thus, compared to the drawing of an adverse inference, allocating the costs accordingly is a viable—albeit less important—alternative.

With regard to the sanctioning of party representatives, the relatively new guidelines and rules reveal many shortcomings and discrepancies. Together with the prevailing view in doctrine, this book supports the opinion that competence to sanction a party representative in international arbitration should not fall within the remit of the arbitral tribunal, but should rather be left to national bar councils or even a global arbitration ethics council. Hence, to sanction a party representative is no alternative to drawing an adverse inference.

⁴⁰⁹ LANDROVE/GREUTER, 537.

Finally, although *astreintes* are available in some jurisdictions, there is no consensus in international arbitration about this legal concept. The only way to apply them, if not provided for in the respective *lex arbitri*, is by means of the parties' agreement, which seems to happen very rarely. To sum up, *astreintes* are considered as an alternative to adverse inference only if the parties have empowered the arbitral tribunal to impose such penalties in case of non-compliance.

§ 4 Conclusion

This chapter has set out the various sanctions that an arbitral tribunal can impose if parties do not voluntarily present evidence. In order to observe due process at all times and give a reluctant party a final chance to comply, an arbitral tribunal would be well advised to inform the parties of its intention before actually imposing a sanction.

From the point of view of the arbitral tribunal, sanctions are rather weak measures, since they cannot retrospectively undo the damage done to the proceedings as a result of non-compliance.⁴¹⁰ Nonetheless, some of the abovementioned measures can prove very helpful. Adverse inference is an important tool if a party refuses to reveal a piece of evidence. The legal framework as stated in institutional arbitration rules and the IBA Rules alike, as well as recent support from national courts, should therefore encourage arbitral tribunals not to be too hesitant and to use adverse inference by assessing the evidence.⁴¹¹

Regarding cost sanctions, it has been demonstrated that an arbitral tribunal can to some degree sanction a non-compliant party by allocating costs against it in the arbitral award. However, difficulties can arise in this regard in calculating the actual damages caused by the party's non-compliance.⁴¹² Nonetheless, arbitral tribunals should deviate from the principle that costs follow the event where parties have hindered the taking of evidence. As regards sanctions against party representatives in international arbitration, this book has strongly argued against the sanction system as set forth in the IBA Guidelines. Although a general discussion of counsel ethics is welcome, and the initial initiatives of the IBA and the LCIA Guidelines are well intended, the arbitral tribunal should not be tasked with deciding on these matters. Rather,

⁴¹⁰ REED, 100.

⁴¹¹ HOSANG, *Adverse Inferences*, 804 et seq.

⁴¹² REED, 100.

this should be left to either national bar councils or perhaps a global arbitration ethics council. Finally, monetary penalties such as *astreintes* should be imposed only if the respective *lex arbitri* contains such a sanction or if the parties have expressly agreed on their application.

This chapter has revealed that the arbitral tribunal is anything but powerless when faced with a party that is reluctant to produce evidence. Nevertheless, as the next chapter will demonstrate, there are situations in every arbitration where the arbitral tribunal's power is limited in many ways.

Chapter 5: Limits to the Taking of Evidence

§ 1 Introduction

Parties who are willing to settle their disputes through arbitration choose this private system of justice with all its numerous advantages, such as procedural flexibility and speed, as well as the confidentiality of the proceedings and the finality of the arbitral award.⁴¹³ In addition, state courts usually do not get involved in the arbitral proceedings; the arbitrators therefore enjoy wide discretion in conducting the taking of evidence without interference.⁴¹⁴ In reflecting on these advantages, however, one might be tempted to forget that this great freedom has its flipside and always comes at a price. Regarding the taking of evidence, several important distinctions between state courts and arbitral tribunals are worth mentioning.⁴¹⁵ This chapter identifies the three main limitations of the arbitral tribunal regarding the power to gather evidence, which should pave the way towards a better understanding of why and when arbitral tribunals can and should resort to state courts for assistance.

§ 2 Temporary Lack of Jurisdiction

The first limitation concerns the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal. While state courts are, so to speak, always on duty, arbitral tribunals must be constituted before they can act as private juridical bodies.⁴¹⁶ Because the arbitral tribunal normally consists of either one or three arbitrators, its constitution can take quite some time.⁴¹⁷ If the parties do not agree on the arbitrators or even challenge them, this process can easily take several months. With regard to evidence, if parties wish to seek interim measures (e.g., securing the existence of evidence), state courts usually fill this jurisdictional vacuum.

⁴¹³ BLACKABY et al., n. 7.02.

⁴¹⁴ DUPEYRON, 463 et seqq.

⁴¹⁵ BLACKABY et al., n. 7.16 et seqq.

⁴¹⁶ BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 2450 et seq.; SCHAEFER, 524 et seq.

⁴¹⁷ See e.g. COLOMBINI, n. 4; Art. 6 Swiss Rules; Art. 12 ICC Rules; Art. 5.2 LCIA Rules.

While for a long time the temporary lack of jurisdiction forced parties to apply to state courts for interim relief, international arbitration has developed alternative mechanisms.⁴¹⁸ They have done so primarily because turning to state courts often contradicts the parties' core intention of resolving their disputes through arbitration and therefore excluding state court jurisdiction as far as possible.⁴¹⁹ The fear that the dispute might become public and state courts' inexperience with international arbitration disputes are further reasons why parties prefer to seek interim relief directly from arbitration institutions.⁴²⁰

Hence, in recent years, almost every arbitration institution began to include standard provisions in its rules regarding emergency arbitrators.⁴²¹ Compared to state courts, these specialised arbitrators provide for a fast, confidential and efficient interim award.⁴²² Under the Swiss and ICC Rules, for example, an emergency arbitrator will render an arbitral award within 15 days of the date on which the secretariat transmits the file to him or her.⁴²³ Moreover, the possible measures that emergency arbitrators can offer are not limited to those available in state courts, which are often bound to the respective *lex fori*.⁴²⁴ Under most rules, unless the parties have agreed otherwise, provisions on emergency arbitrators apply automatically by choosing the respective institutional arbitration rules.⁴²⁵ Nonetheless, the parties can still specify whether they would prefer to resort to state courts or seek relief from an emergency arbitrator.⁴²⁶ Therefore, emergency arbitrators are considered a helpful supplement to interim relief from state courts.⁴²⁷ Once the

418 See e.g. Art. 1449 CCP FR.

419 SANTACROCE, 284; Lew, 491.

420 SANTACROCE, 284; EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 89.

421 See e.g. Art. 29 ICC Rules; Art. 9B LCIA Rules; Art. 6 ICDR Rules; Rule 30 SIAC Rules; Art. 43 Swiss Rules; WALZ, n. 13 et seqq. For a historic overview of emergency arbitrators, see COLOMBINI, n. 7 et seqq. and EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 87 et seqq.

422 HOFMANN/FUCHS, 127; WALZ, n. 24 et seqq. On whether interim awards rendered by emergency arbitrators are considered enforceable under the NYC, see EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 99.

423 Art. 43(7) Swiss Rules; Art. 6(4) Appendix V ICC Rules; WALZ, n. 24 et seqq.

424 See e.g. Art. 183(2) PILA CH; EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 90, 97; WALZ, n. 22 et seq.

425 Regarding emergency arbitrators, most institutional arbitration rules provide for an opt-out-clause; see e.g. Art. 29(6) (b) ICC Rules; Art. 9B.14 (ii) LCIA Rules; Art. 43(1) Swiss Rules.

426 See e.g. Art. 29(7) ICC Rules; Art. 9B.12 LCIA Rules; Art. 6(7) ICDR Rules; Art. 30(3) SIAC Rules; for ICC and Swiss Rules in particular, see COLOMBINI, n. 114 et seqq.; HOFMAN/FUCHS, 118 et seq.; for strategic remarks regarding whether to opt for an emergency arbitrator or a state court, see LEVY D., 197 et seqq.

427 HOFMANN/FUCHS, 129.

arbitral tribunal has been constituted, however, the emergency arbitrator's power ends and his or her interim award can be examined and revised freely by the arbitral tribunal.⁴²⁸

In sum, the lack of jurisdiction prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal has become a minor issue, as parties can now often choose between state courts and emergency arbitrators. Usually, parties will opt for emergency arbitrators, due to their effectiveness and experience with arbitration disputes. Nonetheless, in some cases prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, even an emergency arbitrator cannot provide enough help. For example, where a party requests that certain evidence be preserved because of the risk of potential destruction, emergency arbitrators lack coercive power to take the necessary legal steps to protect such evidence; which leads to the next limitation of the arbitral tribunal's power.

§ 3 Lack of Coercive Power

The second limitation is the lack of coercive power. Quite obviously, in contrast to state courts, arbitral tribunals cannot directly enforce their orders and awards. While state courts can use coercive power given to them by the respective state, arbitral tribunals can act solely within the powers conferred upon them by the parties.⁴²⁹ As regards evidence, the arbitral tribunal is not completely helpless, as it can impose various sanctions on non-compliant parties. However, although adverse inference and cost sanctions are effective in many ways, they can be of limited use in certain situations—for example, where a party cannot be held responsible for the fact that a certain piece of evidence is unavailable.⁴³⁰ In addition, if a party still refuses to produce evidence or even threatens to destroy relevant evidence, only state courts can solve the problem.⁴³¹ The same applies to circumstances where a party intends to make an *ex parte* application (i.e. without hearing the adverse party)—for example, to freeze bank accounts of the adverse party.⁴³² This

428 See e.g. Art. 6(5) ICDR Rules; Art. 43(8) Swiss Rules; SANTACROCE, 284; EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 95.

429 BLACKABY et al., n. 5.11. However, from a philosophical point of view, one must acknowledge that arbitrators still have some sort of coercive power: parties will not wish to upset the arbitral tribunal equipped with the powers they have conferred upon it (*ibid.*, n. 7.29); WOLFF, 233.

430 KREINDLER, 103; WOLFF, 286.

431 DUPEYRON, 464; STEINBRÜCK, 20 et seq.

432 BLACKABY et al., n. 7.21; HOFMANN/FUCHS, 127 et seq.

competence is almost entirely reserved to state courts.⁴³³ To take account of these shortcomings, various *leges arbitri* supplement the arbitral tribunal's powers by allowing national courts to step in and support the arbitral proceedings.⁴³⁴

§ 4 Third Parties

The third limitation is that the arbitral tribunal's powers are virtually always limited to the parties to the arbitration. Because of the consensual nature of arbitration, only the parties to the arbitration agreement can participate in the ensuing proceedings.⁴³⁵ As a result, the arbitral tribunal has no jurisdiction over third parties—a reality which was cited as one of the three worst characteristics of international arbitration in a recent study.⁴³⁶ This is in stark contrast to state court litigation, where parties' standing is determined not necessarily on a contractual basis, but more based on individual personal interests.⁴³⁷ In order to protect these interests, any natural person or legal entity is free to commence court proceedings against any other.⁴³⁸

In complex international arbitral proceedings, relevant evidence is often found in the hands of third parties.⁴³⁹ One option in this case is to approach the third party directly in a bid to obtain the respective evidence (e.g. in the form of a document or witness testimony).⁴⁴⁰ However, this soon becomes problematic if the third party refuses to comply with the request. Unlike state courts, which can force third parties to appear before them to testify or reveal certain documents, arbitrators have no such powers.⁴⁴¹ The problem becomes even more complex if the third party resides outside the

⁴³³ For an exception, see Art. 26 (3) Swiss Rules, which expressly allows the arbitral tribunal to issue *ex parte* interim measures. This provision, inspired by Art. 265 (2) CCP CH, applies only in urgent cases, especially where communication of the request for an *ex parte* measure to the other party would prejudice the effectiveness of that measure (Zuberbühler et al.-OETIKER, Art. 26 Swiss Rules n. 14).

⁴³⁴ See e.g. Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; § 1050 CCP DE; S. 13 (2) IAA SG; BLACKABY et al., n. 5.11 et seq.; DUPEYRON, 465 et seq.

⁴³⁵ BREKOULAKIS, 1166; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.01 n. 4 et seqq.; WAINCYMER, *Evidence*, 53 et seq.

⁴³⁶ DUPEYRON, 464; SCHAEFER, 529 et seq.; Queen Mary Survey (2018), 7 et seq.

⁴³⁷ BREKOULAKIS, 1166.

⁴³⁸ *Ibid.*

⁴³⁹ O'MALLEY, n. 3.93; HOFMANN/FUCHS, 127.

⁴⁴⁰ VARGA, 242.

⁴⁴¹ KRSUL, 183.

territorial jurisdiction of the seat of arbitration.⁴⁴² If the third party is in any way closely connected to any of the arbitration parties (i.e. in their sphere of influence), the arbitral tribunal can put pressure on that party to persuade the third party to produce the evidence as requested. However, if the third party still refuses to cooperate voluntarily, the evidence needed can in most cases be gathered only by resorting to state courts.⁴⁴³

§ 5 Conclusion

This short overview has revealed that, despite the inherent procedural flexibility of international arbitration, there are certain points at which only state courts can provide effective support. Even if an emergency arbitrator can fill the jurisdictional vacuum prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, this help is not enough if coercive power is needed—for example, if a party requests that evidence be preserved by means of a freezing order over certain assets of the adverse party. Last but not least, if evidence is in the control of third parties that are not willing to support the arbitral proceedings and refuse to produce the evidence voluntarily, the state courts serve as a last resort.

Although arbitrators and parties usually do not like the idea of involving state courts in ongoing arbitral proceedings, their assistance is often crucial to ensure the ultimate effectiveness of the arbitration.⁴⁴⁴ Thus, the next chapter discusses the ways in which state courts can assist arbitral tribunals in taking evidence, and considers whether they in fact have a legal obligation to support arbitral tribunals in general and in the taking of evidence in particular.

442 *Ibid.*

443 *Ibid.*

444 SCHAEFER, 533; LEW, 492 et seq.

Chapter 6: Court Assistance in International Arbitration

§ 1 Introduction

As the previous chapter has demonstrated, court assistance in the taking of evidence is sometimes the only option. This chapter takes a closer look how this works in general, before moving to a comparative analysis of various *leges arbitri*. The issue is approached from three different angles. The first concentrates on when court assistance in the taking of evidence is needed and how this works in practice. Thus, in a short outline, various types of court assistance in taking evidence will be analysed in part two. However, the mere fact that court assistance is possible from a practical standpoint does not necessarily mean that it can or should be granted. Its legitimacy in general, and in the taking of evidence in particular, will therefore be examined in part three. This will show that both *leges arbitri* and (ad hoc and institutional) arbitration rules contain an option to resort to state courts in order to gather evidence. In addition, a closer look at the intention of the parties is necessary in order to confirm and strengthen the legitimacy of court assistance in the taking of evidence. However, such legitimacy does not, in itself, necessarily imply an obligation to grant assistance; thus, the final part of this chapter explores whether state courts are obliged to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence based on federal, constitutional and international public law.

§ 2 Measures of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

A. Introduction

Throughout the arbitral proceedings, court assistance might become necessary in numerous situations. Prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, the validity of the arbitration agreement may be questioned or interim

measures sought.⁴⁴⁵ While the arbitral tribunal is being established, state courts can assist in relation to the appointment and challenge of arbitrators.⁴⁴⁶ During the arbitral proceedings, court assistance may be granted in relation to interim measures and the taking of evidence.⁴⁴⁷ Once the arbitral award has been rendered, it may be challenged before state courts on various grounds, such as violation of the right to be heard or even breach of the *ordre public* (i.e. public policy).⁴⁴⁸ Finally, at the enforcement stage, court assistance may be needed if a party refuses to comply with the arbitral award.⁴⁴⁹

This short outline provides only a glimpse of the situations in which court assistance may be necessary. As this thesis focuses on the taking of evidence, only measures concerning evidence will be examined.⁴⁵⁰ In this regard, one should be aware that numerous *leges arbitri* contain only short provisions in this regard, stating merely that assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence may be sought. Consequently, there is no precise catalogue of the possible measures available in international arbitration; the ways in which and the extent to which courts can assist arbitral tribunals will therefore vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction.⁴⁵¹ However, most types of assistance in relation to evidence can be classified as either interim measures or simple acts of court assistance in the taking of evidence. By means of various examples from *leges arbitri*, these types of assistance will be addressed next.

B. Interim Measures

Although interim measures will not be explored extensively in this book, a few remarks are nonetheless necessary because of their close connection to the taking of evidence. While numerous *leges arbitri* mention interim measures, these go by different names and their extent is rarely further specified.⁴⁵² An exception to this is the UNCITRAL ML, which provides a definition in Art. 17(2):

⁴⁴⁵ LEW, 496 et seq.; BLACKABY et al., n. 7.09 et seqq.

⁴⁴⁶ Regarding the Swiss *lex arbitri* see Arts. 179(2) and 180(3) PILA CH.

⁴⁴⁷ LEW, 497 et seq.; BLACKABY et al., n. 7.13 et seqq.

⁴⁴⁸ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 16.03 n. 21 et seqq.

⁴⁴⁹ BLACKABY et al., n. 11.01 et seqq.

⁴⁵⁰ For an extensive outline of the role of state courts in arbitration, see SUTTON et al., n. 7-001 et seqq.

⁴⁵¹ Regarding measures taken by emergency arbitrators, see EHLE, *Emergency Arbitration*, 102 et seqq.

⁴⁵² BLACKABY et al., n. 7.14; BOOG, n. 21 et seqq.

“An interim measure is any temporary measure, whether in the form of an award or in another form, by which, at any time prior to the issuance of the award by which the dispute is finally decided, the arbitral tribunal orders a party to:

- (a) Maintain or restore the status quo pending determination of the dispute;
- (b) Take action that would prevent, or refrain from taking action that is likely to cause, current or imminent harm or prejudice to the arbitral process itself;
- (c) Provide a means of preserving assets out of which a subsequent award may be satisfied; or
- (d) Preserve evidence that may be relevant and material to the resolution of the dispute.”

As Singapore has adopted the UNCITRAL ML to a significant extent, the IAA SG also refers to ‘interim measures’.⁴⁵³ By contrast, the Swiss, German and French *leges arbitri* speak of ‘provisional and conservatory measures’;⁴⁵⁴ while English law⁴⁵⁵ refers to ‘court powers exercisable in support of arbitral proceedings’. Institutional arbitration rules take a similar approach, variously referring to ‘interim measures’ (ICDR Rules),⁴⁵⁶ ‘conservatory and interim measures’ (ICC, LCIA and DIS Rules),⁴⁵⁷ ‘interim measures of protection’ (Swiss Rules)⁴⁵⁸ or ‘interim relief’ (SIAC Rules).⁴⁵⁹ Whatever the specific term may be, the goal of such interim measures remains the same: to grant temporary protection that safeguards the parties’ rights from possible damage during the course of arbitration.⁴⁶⁰ In the interest of simplification, the term ‘interim measures’ shall be used hereinafter, according to the definition set out in Art. 17 (2) UNCITRAL ML.

Under most of the examined *leges arbitri*, unless the parties have agreed otherwise, state courts and arbitral tribunals have concurrent jurisdiction to order interim measures.⁴⁶¹ Consequently, all examined institution arbitration

453 S. 3 and 12A IAA SG.

454 Art. 183 PILA CH; § 1041(1) CCP DE; Art. 1449 CCP FR.

455 S. 44(2) EAA 1996.

456 Art. 24 ICDR Rules.

457 Art. 28 ICC Rules; Art. 25.1 LCIA Rules; Art. 25 DIS Rules.

458 Art. 26 Swiss Rules.

459 Rule 30 SIAC Rules.

460 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 11 n. 1; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1236.

461 EHLE, *Concurrent Jurisdiction*, 158; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 11.03 n. 25; see e.g. Art. 9 UNCITRAL ML, Art. 183 PILA CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 4; BSK-MABILLARD,

rules state that resorting to a state court to seek interim measures is not considered incompatible with the arbitration agreement or seen as a waiver thereof.⁴⁶² With regard to evidence, interim measures in relation to the preservation of evidence have significant relevance. Within the legal doctrine, such measures are considered almost unanimously as interim measures, even though the exact boundary between interim measures and ordinary measures for the taking of evidence is anything but clear-cut.⁴⁶³ Especially at the outset of arbitration, before the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, parties may have a keen interest in ensuring that evidence is secured and preserved.⁴⁶⁴ Examples include situations where a record of a building's construction must be made at a certain time (e.g. before completion of the construction),⁴⁶⁵ or where a key witness must be examined because he or she is terminally ill.⁴⁶⁶

While all examined *leges arbitri* content themselves with rather short general statements that state courts can order interim measures, S. 44 (2) EAA 1996 is very specific and lists the matters in which they are competent to do so:

“Those matters are:

- (b) the preservation of evidence;
- (c) making orders relating to property which is the subject of the proceedings or as to which any question arises in the proceedings:
 - (i) for the inspection, photographing, preservation, custody or detention of the property, or

Art. 183 PILA CH n. 5; WALZ, n. 9 et seqq. In contrast, S. 44 (5) EAA 1996 is more restrictive, allowing state courts only to order interim measures if the arbitral tribunal has ‘no power or is unable for the time being to act effectively’ (MERKIN/FLANNERY, 177 et seq.). Under French law, the situation is comparable because once the arbitral tribunal is constituted, state courts are theoretically no longer competent to order interim measures (Art. 1449 CCP FR). However, as shown below, this view is supported by neither French legal doctrine nor case law (*see* p. 152 et seq. *infra*).

⁴⁶² EHLE, *Concurrent Jurisdiction*, 159; BLACKABY et al., n. 7.24; *see e.g.* Art. 26(9) UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 25.1 DIS Rules; Art. 28(2) ICC Rules; Art. 26(5) Swiss Rules; Rule 30 (3) SIAC Rules; Art. 25.3 LCIA Rules.

⁴⁶³ BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1247; BLACKABY et al., n. 737 et seq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 11.01 n. 18; GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 1102; GÖKSU, n. 1905; VON SEGESSE, *Interim Measures*, 479; for a different view *see* WALTER et al., 135 et seq. These authors suggest that the arbitral tribunal can shift the burden of proof in cases where a party refuses to produce evidence or even interfere in the preservation of evidence. This opinion ignores the fact that evidence is often found in the hands of third parties where a simple shift of the burden of proof is not accurate. In contrast, BOOG argues that interim measures protect first and foremost the subjective rights of a party, while measures regarding the preservation of evidence concern only a matter of fact (n. 30). As a result, he considers such measures as interim measures only in the broadest sense.

⁴⁶⁴ BLACKABY et al., n. 7.37.

⁴⁶⁵ VON SEGESSE, *Interim Measures*, 479.

⁴⁶⁶ LEW et al., 595 et seq.

(ii) ordering that samples be taken from, or any observation be made of or experiment conducted upon, the property;
 and for that purpose authorising any person to enter any premises in the possession or control of a party to the arbitration;
 (d) the sale of any goods the subject of the proceedings.”

This provision lists all types of interim measures available. Lit. (b) applies to cases where evidence is in the control of a third party, which the arbitral tribunals cannot obtain if that third party does not comply voluntarily.⁴⁶⁷ The goal here is to preserve evidence (e.g. in the form of documents) which may cease to exist or may be impossible to find in the near future.⁴⁶⁸ Moreover, lit. (c) mentions orders relating to the property of third parties.⁴⁶⁹ Obviously, such measures exceed the powers of an arbitral tribunal. In construction disputes in particular, state courts may order that samples of a building be taken in order to prevent the property from being altered, destroyed or sold before the evidence is secured for use in arbitration.⁴⁷⁰ Finally, according to lit. (d), state courts can also order the sale of perishable goods in order to preserve evidence or assets.⁴⁷¹ S. 44 (2) EAA 1996 thus sets out a few examples of how state courts in England can effectively support the arbitral proceedings by preserving evidence through interim measures.

C. Measures of Taking Evidence

In addition to interim measures, state courts can assist in the taking of evidence through a wide spectrum of possible measures, depending on the respective *leges arbitri*. In practice, however, in most cases either the attendance of witnesses or the production of documents is sought. As compared to interim measures, which aim to grant provisional relief (i.e. for a certain period of time only), ordinary measures for the taking of evidence aim to establish the relevant facts of the case. As for interim measures, the examined

⁴⁶⁷ See, e.g. *Assimina Maritime Ltd. v. Pakistan Shipping Corporation & Anor* [2004] EWHC 3005 (Comm.); for the corresponding provision regarding evidence in possession of a party, see S. 38(6) EAA 1996.

⁴⁶⁸ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 140 et seq. Consequently, lit. (b) is not meant to order ordinary disclosure by a third party (HARRIS et al., S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 44D).

⁴⁶⁹ The corresponding provision as regards evidence in possession of a party is stated in S. 38(4) EAA 1996.

⁴⁷⁰ S. 44(2)(c) (ii) EAA 1996; SUTTON et al., n. 7-193.

⁴⁷¹ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 183; see e.g. the example given by Lord Justice Clarke in *Cetelem S.A. v. Roust Holdings Ltd.*, [2005], EWCA 618 (Civ.), n. 65.

leges arbitri contain either general rules or detailed provisions stating that state courts will provide assistance to arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence.

Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML contents itself with a general provision:

“The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court of this State assistance in taking evidence. The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.”

The German and Swiss *leges arbitri* also contain similar short provisions.⁴⁷² In other countries, the respective provisions are more detailed. As previously shown, the arbitral tribunal’s powers in relation to the taking of evidence are limited to the parties (*see p. 82 et seq. supra*). Thus, different *leges arbitri* recognise this issue by granting assistance as regards evidence in the control of third parties. For instance, Art. 1469 CCP FR is quite clear in this regard:

“In case a party to the arbitral proceedings intends to rely upon a ... piece of evidence held by a third party, it may, upon the arbitral tribunal’s invitation, file a claim against that third party before the President of the First Instance Court in order to obtain a copy thereof, or the submission of the document or piece of evidence.”

“If the President considers that the request is justified, he or she shall order the delivery or submission of an original, copy or abstracts, as the case may be, of the document or evidence, under the conditions and guarantees that he or she shall determine, and as need be, under penalty.”

The main advantages of resorting to state courts in the taking of evidence—that is, their coercive powers (“under penalty”) and jurisdiction over third parties—are perfectly reflected in this provision (*see in detail p. 153 et seq. infra*).

While the CCP FR speaks only of documents, S. 13 (2) IAA SG expressly mentions documents and witnesses:⁴⁷³

“The High Court or a Judge thereof may order that a subpoena to testify or a subpoena to produce documents shall be issued to compel the attendance before an arbitral tribunal of a witness wherever he may be within Singapore.”

In addition to the possibility to force third parties to produce documents or appear before a state court or an arbitral tribunal, one might also consider

⁴⁷² Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; §1050 (1) CCP DE.

⁴⁷³ *See also* S. 43 (1) EAA 1996.

expert evidence. The Dutch Arbitration Act is quite exceptional in this regard, as it empowers the arbitral tribunal to request expertise on foreign law through the assistance of state courts.⁴⁷⁴

D. Summary

In summary, state courts can assist by ordering either interim measures or ordinary measures for the taking of evidence—for example, forcing third parties to appear before a state court or directly before an arbitral tribunal to produce documents. Although there are many significant differences among jurisdictions, which will be discussed later in this book (*see ch. 7 infra*), it shall suffice here to conclude that most jurisdictions take a very arbitration-friendly stance by assisting arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence.

§ 3 Court Assistance versus Court Intervention

A. Introduction

As previously shown (*see p. 85 et seqq. supra*), the assistance of state courts—in the form of either interim measures or ordinary measures for the taking of evidence—is a key factor in ensuring the ultimate effectiveness of arbitration in this regard. Before taking a closer look at the legitimacy of court assistance in the taking of evidence, a few general remarks about the relationship between state courts and arbitral tribunals are worth mentioning. While this relationship has been described as a mix of ‘forced cohabitation and true partnership’,⁴⁷⁵ as well as ‘judicial-arbitral cooperation’,⁴⁷⁶ PAULSSON describes the issue and the tension inherent therein as follows:⁴⁷⁷

“The great paradox of arbitration is that it seeks the cooperation of the very public authorities from which it wants to free itself.”

Indeed, parties choose arbitration precisely because they do not want to settle their dispute in state court proceedings. Nonetheless, the help of state courts is often crucial. Many jurisdictions recognise the importance of international arbitration as an alternative dispute settlement mechanism and

⁴⁷⁴ S. 1044 CCP NL. The Dutch legislator decided that arbitral tribunals should also benefit from the European Convention on Information on Foreign Law (1968), which entered into force in the Netherlands in 1977.

⁴⁷⁵ BLACKABY et al., n. 7.01.

⁴⁷⁶ DUPEYRON, 467.

⁴⁷⁷ PAULSSON, 2.

commit themselves to support and assist arbitral tribunals—for example, by being Member States of international conventions such as the [NYC](#) or by modelling their *leges arbitri* on the [UNCITRAL ML](#). In return, jurisdictions expect to have a certain degree of control during and after the arbitral process by implementing minimum standards (e.g. the right to be heard), and by recognising and enforcing international arbitral awards subject to certain requirements.⁴⁷⁸ Depending on the side from which one looks at it, the involvement of state courts in arbitral proceedings can be seen as either helpful assistance or disturbing interference.⁴⁷⁹ Because this issue opens up a broad field of technical and legal philosophical matters which would exceed the scope of this book, the following remarks focus on concerns regarding evidence.

While acknowledging that the issue must be examined separately per jurisdiction, several general conclusions can nonetheless be drawn. This will be done by considering the topic from the point of view of the [UNCITRAL ML](#), on which many *leges arbitri* are modelled and which defines the way in which and the extent to which state courts can intervene in arbitral proceedings.⁴⁸⁰ In addition, the [IBA Rules](#)—as the source regarding evidentiary matters in international arbitration—contain helpful guidance on how to approach state courts with regard to the taking of evidence. Because they apply even stricter standards than the [IBA Rules](#) as to how to seek assistance from state courts, the [LCIA Rules](#) are worth mentioning too. Finally, the question arises, from the parties' perspective, as to whether the possibility to seek assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence is actually covered by their intention.

B. UNCITRAL ML

1. Court Assistance in General

Art. 5 [UNCITRAL ML](#) establishes the overarching principle of limited court intervention—that is, a ‘hands-off’ approach:

“In matters governed by this Law, no court shall intervene except where so provided in this Law.”

The drafters of the [UNCITRAL ML](#) emphasised that although the wording of this provision could suggest that court intervention is negative, the intention was to clarify the expectations of parties and arbitrators alike with regard to

⁴⁷⁸ BLACKABY et al., n. 1.202 et seqq.

⁴⁷⁹ KREINDLER, 103; STEINBRÜCK, 44; see also Queen Mary Survey (2015), 7. Accordingly, national court intervention seems to be at least for 25% of the respondents a disadvantage of international arbitration.

⁴⁸⁰ For a closer analysis of various countries and their approach in this matter see ch. 7 *infra*.

the points in the arbitral proceedings at which state courts may get involved.⁴⁸¹ The term ‘intervention’ may thus also be read as ‘assistance’.⁴⁸² Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML further clarifies that state courts have no inherent powers to interfere in arbitral proceedings to the surprise of the parties and the arbitral tribunal, except as set out in the UNCITRAL ML.⁴⁸³ This involvement can be divided into two categories. The first category concerns issues regarding the appointment, challenge and termination of the mandate of arbitrators (Arts. 11, 13 and 14), the jurisdiction of the arbitral tribunal (Art. 16) and the setting aside of the arbitral award (Art. 34).⁴⁸⁴ The second category comprises issues regarding the taking of evidence (Art. 27), recognition of the arbitration agreement (Art. 8) and interim measures (Arts. 9 and 17J), as well as recognition and enforcement of interim measures (Arts. 17H and I) and arbitral awards (Arts. 35 and 36).

2. Court Assistance in the Taking of Evidence

With regard to court assistance in the taking of evidence, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML specifies as follows:

“The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a competent court of this State assistance in taking evidence. The court may execute the request within its competence and according to its rules on taking evidence.”

Apparently, it was a major undertaking to reach an international consensus on how courts should assist in the taking of evidence. The question, therefore, was not *whether* but *how* such assistance may be granted.⁴⁸⁵ The drafters began with a rather long and extensive article, and ended up with a limited provision which ultimately gained enough acceptance to be adopted.⁴⁸⁶ This very fact indicates the complexity of the subject and the inconsistencies among the Member States of the UNCITRAL ML. In this regard, three issues were of major concern.

481 UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/264 (1985), 18, n. 3; UNCITRAL, Case Law (2012), Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, n. 1-3. Because Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML refers only to ‘matters governed by this Law’, other concerns—such as the contractual relationship between arbitrators and parties or fixing the costs and fees of arbitration—are not included.

482 UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the 309th meeting (1985), n. 22, 25 and 40.

483 SCHAEFER, 533 et seq.; Mistelis-BREKOULAKIS et al., Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, 847 et seq.

484 Art. 6 UNCITRAL ML.

485 HOLTZMANN/NEUHAUS, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, 734.

486 *Ibid.*, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, 735; UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/264 (1985), 58.

First, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML refers only to ‘court assistance in taking evidence’, without further specifying the types of evidence.⁴⁸⁷ According to the commission report, the scope of application was meant to be limited territorially.⁴⁸⁸ Member States are thus at liberty to decide how to treat a request for the taking of evidence—that is, whether the court itself will take the evidence or whether that evidence will be provided directly to the arbitral tribunal.⁴⁸⁹

Second, concerns were voiced during the drafting process about the potential abuse of requests for court assistance.⁴⁹⁰ While it was initially suggested that only the arbitral tribunal should be permitted to make requests for court assistance, the final draft also allows parties to do so, subject to the approval of the arbitral tribunal.⁴⁹¹ This puts the arbitral tribunal at the centre of the arbitral proceedings and avoids possible dilatory tactics, as well as conflicts with national rules on civil procedure.⁴⁹² Moreover, the arbitral tribunal itself can resort to state courts for assistance in the taking of evidence. Here again, because it takes evidence itself and decides how to assess that evidence itself, the arbitral tribunal should also be able to seek court assistance in this regard itself, unless the parties have expressly agreed otherwise.

Third, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML applies only if the seat of arbitration is in the territory of a Member State.⁴⁹³ Hence, court assistance in the taking of evidence is not available for a foreign arbitral tribunal or if the seat of arbitration is undetermined.⁴⁹⁴ Although some drafters would have preferred that foreign tribunals also be able to seek court assistance in the taking of evi-

487 Mistelis-BREKOULAKIS et al., Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, 889.

488 UNCITRAL, A/40/17 (1985), n. 223.

489 HOLTZMANN/NEUHAUS, Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, 735.

490 *Ibid.*

491 See also UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/245 (1983), n. 40. During the drafting process it has been suggested by some representatives that because of the adversary principle, only parties should be allowed to make requests for court assistance.

492 UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/246 (1984), n. 94. See e.g. *Delphi Petroleum Inc. v. Derin Shipping and Training Ltd.*, Federal Court of Canada, 3 Dec. 1993, summarized in: UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/SER.C/ABSTRACTS/4, 11. In this decision, the Federal Court of Canada denied court assistance on the grounds of dilatory tactics of the requesting party; see furthermore *Vibroflotation A.G. v. Express Builders Co. Ltd.*, High Court of Hong Kong, 15 Aug. 1994, in: UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/SER.C/ABSTRACTS/5, 3. Here, a request for document production against a third party was denied because, according to the High Court of Hong Kong, such a request was not timely and ‘months if not years away from the main evidential hearing in this arbitration’.

493 Art. 1(2) UNCITRAL ML.

494 See e.g. *B.F. Jones Logistics Inc. et al. v. Rolko et al.*, Ontario Superior Court of Justice, Canada, 24 Aug. 2004, CanLII 21276. In contrast, see § 1050 CCP DE, which expressly allows foreign arbitral tribunals to obtain court assistance in the taking of evidence.

dence,⁴⁹⁵ this idea was abandoned on the grounds that the UNCITRAL ML should not determine such a complex matter. Rather, solutions should be achieved by means of international conventions and bilateral treaties.⁴⁹⁶ By contrast, the following comparative analysis will show that several jurisdictions have clearly adopted a more liberal approach in this respect.⁴⁹⁷

The evidence which can be taken depends on the rules of the respective Member State on the taking of evidence. As the comparative analysis conducted in this book will show, the reality is that many *leges arbitri* choose to offer assistance to foreign arbitral tribunals directly. However, the UNCITRAL ML takes a rather conservative approach by limiting the scope of the available assistance to the respective measures in the jurisdiction where such assistance is sought.

The territorial limitation of Art. 1(2) UNCITRAL ML does not apply to interim measures for the preservation of evidence.⁴⁹⁸ This exception takes account of the fact that interim measures might be needed at the outset of arbitration, when the seat is not yet determined, or if certain evidence is located in another jurisdiction than the seat of arbitration.⁴⁹⁹ Unfortunately, this does not apply to the taking of evidence (Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML).

3. Result

The UNCITRAL ML introduces the basic principle that in order to support arbitration, state courts can step in during the proceedings where this possibility is provided for by the UNCITRAL ML itself. It has been shown that there are many situations in which state courts can support the arbitral proceedings. With regard to evidence, state courts can assist arbitral tribunals as long as the seat of arbitration is in the territory of the respective Member State. An exception in this respect concerns interim measures—for example, in relation to the preservation of evidence. Moreover, in order to avoid abuse in form of dilatory tactics, requests for court assistance always require the approval of the arbitral tribunal. Finally, the scope of possible assistance will be determined by the respective national rules of civil procedure. In conclusion, it may be said that—at least from a legislative point of view—there is an international consensus that state courts should assist

495 UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/WG.II/WP.44 (1983), 183, Art. E.

496 UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/245 (1983), n. 42 et seq; UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/246 (1984), n. 95 et seqq.; UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/264 (1985), 59 et seq.

497 See ch. 7 *infra*.

498 Art. 17(2)(d) UNCITRAL ML. As regards measures of preservation of evidence as interim measures, see p. 87 et seqq. *supra*.

499 UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/WG.II/WP.108 (2000), n. 74 et seqq.

arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence if the respective requirements are met. Whether this view is reflected in (institutional and ad hoc) arbitration rules will be explored next.

C. Arbitration Rules

1. IBA Rules

The IBA Rules, which were revised in 2010, now impose strict requirements as regards whether and when state courts can assist in the taking of evidence. They provide that court assistance may be sought only if the evidence—whether documentary evidence or witness evidence—is in the control of third parties.⁵⁰⁰ As regards the parties themselves, the arbitral tribunal is empowered to sanction a recalcitrant party for its failure to provide evidence by drawing an adverse inference (*see* p. 56 et seqq. *supra*). According to the IBA Rules, the arbitral tribunal has the widest discretion to grant or deny a request to seek state court assistance. Consequently, its decision is generally not open to challenge.⁵⁰¹ However, the comparative section of this book will show how this works in different *leges arbitri*.⁵⁰²

a. Documentary Evidence

The IBA Rules acknowledge that in some situations, documents must be obtained from third parties. However, strict requirements must be met in this regard. Art. 3(9) IBA Rules reads as follows:

“If a Party wishes to obtain the production of Documents from a person or organisation who is not a Party to the arbitration and from whom the Party cannot obtain the Documents on its own, the Party may, within the time ordered by the Arbitral Tribunal, ask it to take whatever steps are legally available to obtain the requested Documents, or seek leave from the Arbitral Tribunal to take such steps itself.”

“The Party shall submit such request to the Arbitral Tribunal and to the other Parties in writing, and the request shall contain the particulars set forth in Article 3.3, as applicable.”

“The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide on this request and shall take, authorize the requesting Party to take, or order any other Party to take, such

⁵⁰⁰ There are no similar provisions in regard to expert witnesses or inspections.

⁵⁰¹ O’MALLEY, n. 4.71. A party would have to show that denying an evidence request would have a direct impact on the arbitral award—for example, by proving a violation of the right to be heard; *see also* the appellate remedies in Switzerland, p. 256 et seqq. *infra*.

⁵⁰² *See* ch. 7 *infra*.

steps as the Arbitral Tribunal considers appropriate if, in its discretion, it determines that

- (i) the Documents would be relevant to the case and material to its outcome,
- (ii) the requirements of Article 3.3, as applicable, have been satisfied and
- (iii) none of the reasons for objection set forth in Article 9.2 applies.”

While Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML emphasises the role of the arbitral tribunal, the IBA Rules are even more specific in this respect.⁵⁰³ Parties can thus make requests for court assistance only if they are unable to obtain the document themselves. In addition, the request itself must meet the requirements of Art. 3(3) IBA Rules, as well as the absence of any reason listed in Art. 9(2) IBA Rules. Instead of ‘court assistance’, the IBA Rules use the wording ‘take whatever steps are legally available to obtain the requested Documents’, without making further explanations. In legal doctrine, this wording is seen as allowing the possibility to seek assistance from state courts, among other things.⁵⁰⁴ As an alternative, an arbitral tribunal can order a party that presumably knows where documents of a third party are located to assist in finding them.⁵⁰⁵ If this is not possible, the arbitral tribunal must decide on the request by considering whether the strict conditions set out in (i) to (iii) have in fact been met.

Alternatively, the arbitral tribunal is at liberty to seek court assistance itself, quite similar to the possibility foreseen in Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML. Art. 3(10) IBA Rules provides:

“At any time before the arbitration is concluded, the Arbitral Tribunal may (i) request any Party to produce Documents, (ii) request any Party to use its best efforts to take or (iii) itself take, any step that it considers appropriate to obtain Documents from any person or organisation.”

Because of the danger of a violation of equal treatment, the IBA Rules provide for cascading measures with regard to court assistance: the tribunal must first grant the parties the right to be heard and only afterwards decide whether court assistance in the taking of evidence is necessary.⁵⁰⁶

503 O’MALLEY, n. 3.93.

504 *Ibid.*, n. 3.100; ZUBERBÜHLER et al., Art. 3 IBA Rules n. 210; IBA Review Subcommittee (2010), 11.

505 See e.g. *Waste Management, Inc. v. United Mexican States*, ICSID, ARB(AF)/00/3, 30 Apr. 2004, n. 30. In this ICSID case, the arbitral tribunal ordered the claimant to disclose all relevant documents in possession of a third party to the respondent.

506 O’MALLEY, n. 3.125. This course of action can be compared to the conditions to consider before drawing an adverse inference (*see* p. 56 et seqq. *supra*).

b. Witnesses

The wording of Art. 4 (9) IBA Rules is very similar to the provision on documentary evidence:

“If a Party wishes to present evidence from a person who will not appear voluntarily at its request, the Party may, within the time ordered by the Arbitral Tribunal, ask it to take whatever steps are legally available to obtain the testimony of that person, or seek leave from the Arbitral Tribunal to take such steps itself.”

“In the case of a request to the Arbitral Tribunal, the Party shall identify the intended witness, shall describe the subjects on which the witness’s testimony is sought and shall state why such subjects are relevant to the case and material to its outcome.”

“The Arbitral Tribunal shall decide on this request and shall take, authorize the requesting Party to take or order any other Party to take, such steps as the Arbitral Tribunal considers appropriate if, in its discretion, it determines that the testimony of that witness would be relevant to the case and material to its outcome.”

By and large, reference may be made to the previous remarks on court assistance for documentary evidence according to Art. 3(9) IBA Rules. Because Art. 4 (9) IBA Rules does not mention Art. 9 (2) IBA Rules, O’MALLEY rightly points out that, in addition to the conditions mentioned in Art. 4 (9) IBA Rules, the requesting party should demonstrate that none of the reasons for objection according to Art. 9 (2) IBA Rules applies.⁵⁰⁷

Regarding witnesses, the IBA Rules do not provide for the arbitral tribunal to resort to state courts on its own initiative. Art. 4 (10) IBA Rules states only that the arbitral tribunal is competent to order the examination of witnesses whose testimony has not yet been given in the arbitral proceedings. There is no indication that the drafters of the IBA Rules did not want to allow the arbitral tribunal to take ‘any step that it considers appropriate’⁵⁰⁸ in order to secure the attendance of witnesses. Therefore, Art. 4 (10) IBA Rules should be interpreted broadly by allowing the arbitral tribunal to seek court assistance with the examination of witnesses on its own initiative.

507 O’MALLEY, n. 4.70.

508 Art. 3 (10) IBA Rules.

2. Institutional Arbitration Rules

Almost all examined institutional arbitration rules are silent on the relationship between state courts and the arbitral tribunal.⁵⁰⁹ In this regard, the LCIA Rules are an exception—Art. 22.2 states:

“By agreeing to arbitration under the Arbitration Agreement, the parties shall be treated as having agreed not to apply to any state court or other legal authority for any order available from the Arbitral Tribunal (if formed) under Article 22.1, except with the agreement in writing of all parties.”

The goal here is to strengthen the arbitration agreement by making it clear that where the parties agree to arbitrate under the LCIA Rules, they renounce the possibility to seek relief from state courts for anything that falls under the powers conferred on the arbitral tribunal according to Art. 22.1 LCIA Rules.⁵¹⁰ Consequently, this also relates to the arbitral tribunal’s power to order document production, among other things.⁵¹¹ While Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules refers only to matters set out in Art. 22.1 LCIA Rules, there are other situations in which resorting to state courts is within the scope of the LCIA Rules.⁵¹² In comparison to the IBA Rules, Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules requires the consent of the other party to the arbitration to seek relief from state courts, rather than the approval of the arbitral tribunal. Neither the UNCITRAL ML nor the IBA Rules require such approval, so the LCIA Rules are thus even stricter in this regard. It is therefore conceivable that a party, even with the approval of the arbitral tribunal, may be unable to seek court assistance because the adverse party will not agree to it.

3. Result

Although they differ in their degree of detail, the IBA Rules and the LCIA Rules both provide for the possibility to seek assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence. Nonetheless, they impose very strict standards under which this is possible. The IBA Rules are very detailed in this respect, while the LCIA Rules content themselves with the general remark that court assistance can be sought only with the agreement of all parties. Both approaches

⁵⁰⁹ The only exception are provisions about concurrent jurisdiction in regard to interim measures (*see p. 87 et seq. supra*).

⁵¹⁰ *See e.g.* Art. 22.1 LCIA Rules (“additional powers”); SCHERER et al., Art. 22 LCIA Rules n 38.

⁵¹¹ Arts. 22.1(iv) and (v) LCIA Rules.

⁵¹² *See e.g.* Art. 23.5 LCIA Rules regarding the arbitral tribunal’s jurisdiction and Art. 25.3 LCIA Rules concerning interim measures.

strive to prevent parties from reaching out to state courts without the approval of the arbitral tribunal or the other parties. Only this ensures that court assistance is actually in the interests of the respective arbitration.

Hitherto, the question of whether parties can seek assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence has been answered only from the point of view of the UNCITRAL ML and arbitration rules. Hence, the focus now shifts to the intention of the parties.

D. Intention of the Parties

Quite understandably, a party whose adversary is requesting court assistance in the taking of evidence might argue against such a course of action, for various understandable reasons. Most importantly, the parties will have chosen to arbitrate precisely because they did not want to settle their dispute before state courts; thus, every move in this direction could be considered an attempt to circumvent the arbitration agreement, including the arbitral tribunal's exclusive power over the arbitral proceedings.⁵¹³ In addition, one might argue that the requesting party is trying to impose the practices of a specific legal culture as regards matters of evidence, as opposed to the well-balanced approach to the taking of evidence in international arbitration.⁵¹⁴ Although these arguments are to a certain degree justified and comprehensible, from the parties' point of view, cogent arguments may also be made to support the opposite position.

First, it is important to ask whether resorting to state courts is really a circumvention of the arbitration agreement. Admittedly, the agreement to arbitrate implies an intention to settle the dispute through arbitration and not through state court litigation. It also implies an intention to play by the rules referred to in the arbitration agreement (e.g. institutional arbitration rules). These rules, as well as certain *leges arbitri*, oblige arbitrators and parties alike to act loyally—that is, ‘in good faith’—in the conduct of the proceedings.⁵¹⁵ Thus, as SERAGLINI and ORTSCHEIDT argue, if parties do not act in good faith—for example, by withholding important evidence—court assistance is in fact justified by the parties’ arbitration agreement.⁵¹⁶ Hence, the fact that a recalcitrant party is not acting in compliance with the arbitration

513 DUPEYRON, 467.

514 *Ibid.*, 467.

515 See e.g. Art. 2A(1) UNCITRAL ML; 1646 CCP FR; Art. 9(7) IBA Rules; Art. 22(1) ICC Rules; Art. 20(7) ICDR Rules; Art. 14.5 LCIA Rules; Art. 15(7) Swiss Rules.

516 SERAGLINI/ORTSCHEIDT, n. 806.

agreement authorises the arbitral tribunal to seek assistance from state courts. Presuming that the parties have not expressly excluded all types of court intervention, this rather extensive interpretation of the arbitration agreement may be applied.⁵¹⁷

Whether one agrees or not, this book does not consider court involvement as a violation or circumvention of the arbitration agreement—quite the contrary. In fact, in most cases it can be seen as a confirmation of the arbitration agreement. Nonetheless, in order to avoid an extensive interpretation, as previously shown, the parties should define the exact conditions for seeking court assistance or even exclude this possibility entirely, either when drafting the arbitration agreement or in the case management conference.⁵¹⁸ In this way, one can easier discern whether resorting to state courts indeed represents a circumvention of the arbitration agreement. Consequently, an arbitral tribunal, in allocating the costs in the arbitral award, can sanction a party which has incurred costs and time delays by seeking state court assistance in violation of the arbitration agreement.⁵¹⁹

Second, instead of undermining the role of the arbitral tribunal, resorting to state courts can actually reinforce the arbitral tribunal's status as the competent legal authority. In most situations, the arbitral tribunal has enough options to stop non-compliant parties (e.g. drawing an adverse inference or imposing cost sanctions). However, in extreme cases such as illegal (or even relevant criminal) conduct of a party, court assistance might prove useful or even mandatory as part of the arbitral tribunal's task of fulfilling its mandate.⁵²⁰ Where a party seeks court assistance as a dilatory tactic (i.e. without seeking the arbitral tribunal's approval), most state courts will refuse to grant assistance on their own initiative anyway.⁵²¹

Third, in respect of evidence, the scope for intrusive court intervention is very limited.⁵²² Although state courts must examine whether the content of the request is in line with the respective *lex arbitri*, its examination is not

517 See also Art. 34(2)(a)(iv) UNCITRAL ML.

518 DUPEYRON, 470.

519 Ibid., 471.

520 KREINDLER, 104 et seq.

521 See p. 136, p. 155, p. 169, p. 203 et seq. and p. 233 *infra*. Hence, under most *leges arbitri* and institutional arbitration rules, the approval of the arbitral tribunal to seek court assistance must first be obtained. In addition, depending on the respective *lex arbitri*, several other requirements must be met, such as a legitimate motive to seek court assistance or the inability of the arbitral tribunal to obtain the evidence itself.

522 DUPEYRON, 463, 467.

usually extensive and assistance will in most cases be granted.⁵²³ Even if court assistance must be sought in countries with broad discovery/disclosure rights in their domestic civil procedure rules, the parties can define and limit the scope of the taking of evidence in the case management conference.⁵²⁴ Hence, the fear that state courts will impose a foreign legal culture is in most cases unfounded.

Fourth, seeking state court assistance in the taking of evidence will lead to a better-informed arbitral tribunal, which can then render a more fact-grounded verdict.⁵²⁵ Or, to put it differently, in the worst-case scenario, the respective state court will refuse to grant assistance and the arbitral tribunal will have to decide based on the available evidence. At best, however, assistance will be granted and the arbitral tribunal will be even more confident that it is rendering a fair verdict.

E. Summary

As previously discussed, court involvement in international arbitration may variously be seen as helpful assistance or disturbing interference. It has been shown that, based on the UNCITRAL ML and (ad hoc and institutional) arbitration rules, court assistance in the taking of evidence can be sought only if the respective conditions are met. In this regard, the approval of the arbitral tribunal is crucial. Regarding the parties' intentions, in most cases court assistance not only is in line with the arbitration agreement, but also reinforces the competence of the arbitral tribunal, which can render a more fact-grounded arbitral award as a result. Based on these findings, one may conclude that court assistance is in fact a means of supporting the arbitral proceedings, rather than interfering with them.

But does this mean that state courts must automatically provide assistance if all conditions for court assistance are met? Or, to put it another way, are they under a legal obligation to do so? Can state courts refuse to assist international arbitral tribunals in gathering evidence without reason? Or are they bound by constitutional or even international public law, obliging them to grant assistance subject to certain requirements? These questions are the subject of the last part of this chapter.

⁵²³ *Ibid.*, 467.

⁵²⁴ See p. 29 et seqq. *supra*.

⁵²⁵ DUPEYRON, 467.

§ 4 Obligation to Assist Arbitral Tribunals

A. Introduction

The previous analysis has shown the willingness of state courts to grant arbitral tribunals assistance in the taking of evidence. On the one hand, this fact can be seen as welcome support from arbitration-friendly jurisdictions for international arbitration. However, if this were the only reason why state courts granted assistance, it would leave the competent judge with wide discretion to decide whether to grant assistance in a specific case. The intention of the respective legislature is therefore crucial to resolve the issue at hand in cases which are not regulated in detail by law.⁵²⁶ On the other hand, there may even be an obligation to assist. In order to recognise and enforce arbitral awards, all examined *leges arbitri* require that certain fundamental procedural guarantees be observed in the arbitral proceedings.⁵²⁷ If these standards are met, the question arises as to whether state courts must not only recognise and enforce arbitral awards, but also provide assistance during the arbitral proceedings—for example, by ordering interim measures or the disclosure of evidence.⁵²⁸

In order to answer these questions, it is crucial to understand the legislature's intention as regards support for arbitral tribunals in general. This may be achieved by considering superior rules of law—that is, constitutional law and international public law.⁵²⁹ If there were in fact an obligation to assist arbitral tribunals based on superior law, this process would involve more than just 'applying the law' and exercising judicial discretion. Consequently, this discretion would be significantly curtailed, with almost no room for different interpretation—regardless of what the competent judge might think of arbitration as an alternative to state court litigation.⁵³⁰

Thus, in a first step, the issue will be treated by examining the requirements for arbitral proceedings from a constitutional point of view. Since this book tries to make suggestions and propositions regarding court assistance in international arbitral proceedings in Switzerland, the focus is on the Swiss

526 STEINBRÜCK, 45.

527 GÖKSU, n. 963. In addition, arbitral awards can be challenged only under very limited conditions, such as violation of the equality of the parties or the right to be heard (BLACKABY et al., n. 1034 et seqq.; *see also* e.g. Art. 190 (2) PILA CH; § 1065 (1) i.c.w. § 1062 CCP DE; Art. 1520 CCP FR; S. 68 EAA 1996.

528 SCHOIBL, 525 et seq.; STEINBRÜCK, 47; with regard to the German situation, *see* GEIMER, 113 et seqq.

529 STEINBRÜCK, 42 et seqq.

530 *Ibid.*, 42, 46.

Constitution.⁵³¹ This is even more the case since although all examined *leges arbitri* emphasise the importance of fundamental procedural guarantees, as stated in many constitutions, their scope and meaning differ greatly among jurisdictions.⁵³² In a second step, the issue will be discussed in light of international conventions such as the ECHR, the NYC and the HEC. To provide the reader with insight at a purely European level, the ECICA and the EER will also be examined.

B. Swiss Constitutional Law

1. Introduction

Constitutions usually remain silent about arbitration and this is also true of the Swiss constitution.⁵³³ Although the PILA CH provides for support of arbitral proceedings in general, it remains doubtful whether this automatically results in a duty to support arbitral tribunals based on constitutional law. In other words, does the arbitration-friendliness foreseen in the PILA CH (Arts. 183–185) derive from the Const. CH? In fact, neither the Const. CH nor the SFT nor the legal doctrine suggests expressly that state courts have an obligation to support arbitral tribunals.⁵³⁴ Still, there are important connections between the *lex arbitri* (PILA CH) and the Const. CH—for example, as regards access to justice and the right to be heard.

The fundamental procedural guarantees are set forth in Arts. 29–32 Const. CH and determine the procedural requirements of state court proceedings. While Art. 29 Const. CH contains general procedural guarantees, Art. 29a Const. CH focuses on access to justice; followed by Art. 30 Const. CH, which sets out a person's right to have his or her case heard by a legally constituted, competent, independent and impartial court. Finally, Arts. 31 and 32 Const. CH address criminal matters such as the deprivation of liberty (Art. 31) and criminal proceedings (Art. 32). With regard to the taking of evidence, access to justice and the right to be heard are of particular relevance and will thus be considered next.

⁵³¹ For the German perspective see STEINBRÜCK, 48 et seqq.

⁵³² POUDRET/BESSON, n. 546.

⁵³³ As an exception, many Latin American States have constitutionalized arbitration, see e.g. Art. 202 Const. PA; Art. 253 and 258 Const. VE; Art. 57 Const. UY; Art. 116 Const. CO; Art. 43 Const. CR; Art. 23 Const. SV; Art. 248 Const. PY; Arts. 62, 63 and 139 (1) Const. PE; see also ch. V, Art. 5 Const. FR (1791): ‘The right of citizens to finalize their disputes through arbitration cannot be infringed by the acts of the Legislative Power.’

⁵³⁴ For the German perspective, see GEIMER, 126 et seqq., 187 et seq. He argues that since the German legislator allows arbitration, there is a duty to support arbitral tribunals e.g. in the taking of evidence.

2. Access to Justice

Art. 29a Const. CH reads as follows:

“In a legal dispute, every person has the right to have their case determined by a judicial authority. The Confederation and the Cantons may by law preclude the determination by the courts of certain exceptional categories of case.”

This constitutional guarantee equips ‘every person’ (i.e. natural persons and legal entities) with an individual right in the form of access to at least one judicial authority which determines their case, irrespective of whether it derives from criminal, civil or administrative proceedings, or of whether factual or legal questions are concerned.⁵³⁵ Moreover, in certain fields of law, exceptions and restrictions can be made at both federal and cantonal level; this is the case, for instance, as regards political matters such as acts of the Federal Assembly or the Federal Council.⁵³⁶ Another example would be to limit the appellate proceeding before the SFT to legal questions and exclude the incorrect establishment of facts.⁵³⁷ As regards the assistance of arbitral proceedings by state courts, no limitations are foreseen by law at either federal or cantonal level.

Usually, the arbitral proceedings will be examined retrospectively only if one of the parties tries to set aside the arbitral award—for example, by claiming that the right to be heard or the right of equal treatment has been violated.⁵³⁸ One could therefore ask whether Art. 29a Const. CH could be seen as a constitutional obligation to provide sufficient access to justice *during* the arbitral proceedings—for example, by providing assistance in the taking of evidence.⁵³⁹ In this respect, the opinion of Waldmann and Steinbrück deserves approval. Accordingly, it is at the parties’ discretion to exclude state court jurisdiction and this also applies to access to justice.⁵⁴⁰ However, applying the case law of the ECtHR by analogy, this is possible only if the renunciation takes place

⁵³⁵ DFT 143 III 193, cons. 5.4; DFT 141 I 172, cons. 4.4.1; SGK-KLEY, Art. 29a Const. CH n. 13; OFK-BIAGGINI, Art. 29a Const. CH n. 4; BSK-WALDMANN, Art. 29a Const. CH n. 4, 10.

⁵³⁶ *Ibid.*, n. 18; SGK-KLEY, Art. 29a Const. CH n. 20.

⁵³⁷ Art. 97 (i) FSCA CH, but *see* the exceptions listed therein.

⁵³⁸ Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH; *see also* p. 266 et seqq. *infra*.

⁵³⁹ *See also* STEINBRÜCK as regards the situation in Germany (64 et seqq.) and the reference to GEIMER (140 and 187 et seq.); SCHLOSSER, 273, 281.

⁵⁴⁰ BSK-WALDMANN, Art. 29a Const. CH n. 30; STEINBRÜCK, 66.

voluntarily—that is, if it is ‘free, permissible and unambiguous’, and does not represent a complete waiver of every fundamental procedural guarantees as stated in Art. 6 (1) ECHR.⁵⁴¹

In sum, it follows that if one can exclude access, there is no constitutional obligation to support arbitral proceedings under its title. Parties are therefore free to decide the degree to which they wish to exclude state court assistance in the taking of evidence. It will be shown that, even at the level of statutory law (i.e. Art. 184 (2) PILA CH), state courts are not automatically forced to provide assistance.⁵⁴² Nonetheless, one must bear in mind that the mere fact that court assistance in the taking of evidence is not a constitutional obligation does not liberate state courts from the need to consider whether they must render assistance based on statutory law. Otherwise, this would result in a denial of justice.

3. Right to be Heard

As under most laws, according to the PILA CH, the parties and the arbitral tribunal have full discretion to tailor the arbitral proceedings, subject only to the requirement to observe the principle of equal treatment of the parties and the right to be heard.⁵⁴³ That is why, according to Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH, arbitral awards can be challenged through an adversarial procedure on the grounds of violation of the principle of equal treatment or the right to be heard. As regards evidence, the right to be heard is *the* central procedural guarantee. Its constitutional basis is found in Art. 29 (2) Const. CH. While this provision usually refers only to state court proceedings, the SFT has decided and confirmed several times that it is no different from Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH and thus also applies to arbitral proceedings.⁵⁴⁴ Whether this also implies an obligation to assist arbitral tribunals, rather than just to ensure that minimum procedural guarantees are observed, depends on how the SFT defines the right to be heard.

Because arbitral awards can be challenged only on the limited grounds set out in Art. 190 PILA, there is a considerable volume of case law on the right to be heard, which specifies and interprets its scope of application.⁵⁴⁵

⁵⁴¹ *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 26 et seqq., 1 Mar. 2016; STEINBRÜCK, 68.

⁵⁴² See p. 250 et seqq. *infra*.

⁵⁴³ Art. 182 (3) PILA CH.

⁵⁴⁴ DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4A_342/2015 of 26 Apr. 2016, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4A_172/2015 of 29 Sept. 2015, cons. 4.1; DFT 4A_402/2010 of 17 Feb. 2011, cons. 3.1; DFT 130 III 235, cons. 5; DFT 128 III 234, cons. 4b; DFT 127 III 576, cons. 2c; DFT 119 II 386, cons. 1b; DFT 117 II 346, cons. 1a.

⁵⁴⁵ DUTOIT, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 26 et seqq.; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 64 et seqq.

Accordingly, the right to be heard is violated, for example, if the parties did not have the possibility to present their case and evidence, take part in the proceedings and be assisted and represented before the arbitral tribunal.⁵⁴⁶ With regard to the right to present the case, the SFT has specified that the arbitral tribunal has a minimum duty to consider all information, arguments, evidence and evidence requests presented by the parties if they are relevant to the decision to be rendered.⁵⁴⁷ Furthermore, the wording ‘in an adversarial proceeding’⁵⁴⁸ means that a party can comment on the evidence presented by the adverse party and refute it with its own evidence.⁵⁴⁹

After the previous remarks, one could easily conclude that since the SFT’s interpretation of the right to be heard is quite broad and this principle also applies to arbitral proceedings, state courts are obliged to assist in the gathering of evidence based on federal and constitutional law.⁵⁵⁰ However, while the SFT has extended the right to be heard in favour of the parties in certain circumstances, it has also limited this right in others. As regards evidence, the SFT has stated that an arbitral tribunal does not violate the right to be heard if it refuses to examine evidence because the fact to be proven is already established or because the presented evidence will not convince the arbitral tribunal to change its finding.⁵⁵¹ Thus, the possibility to examine witnesses and experts is not unlimited, and the arbitral tribunal can exercise its discretion to impose time limits or refuse to allow certain questions because of their irrelevance to the case.⁵⁵² The SFT has further held that as long as the right to be heard is not simply ignored, which would result in a denial of justice, even an incorrect assessment of evidence cannot be challenged.⁵⁵³ In addition, because the parties can specify that the arbitral award need not be reasoned, there is no constitutional right to receive a reasoned arbitral

546 DFT 130 III 35, cons. 5; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 63.

547 DFT 4A_606/2013 of 2 Sept. 2014, cons. 5; DFT 4A_360/2011 of 31 Jan. 2012, cons. 5.1; DFT 4A_46/2011 of 16 May 2011, cons. 4.3.1; DFT 133 III 235, cons. 5.2; DFT 121 III 331, cons. 3b.

548 Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH.

549 DFT 133 III 139, cons. 6.1; HABERBECK, 1414 et seq.

550 Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH i.c.w. Art. 29 (2) Const. CH.

551 DFT 4A_342/2015 of 26 Apr. 2016, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4A_246/2014 of 15 Jul. 2015, cons. 6.1; DFT 4A_386/2010 of 3 Jan. 2011, cons. 7.2. The so-called ‘anticipated assessment of evidence’ can therefore be examined only from the limited angle of a violation of public policy (Art. 190 (2) (e) PILA CH; HABERBECK, 1422 et seqq.; for a different view see GÖKSU, n. 2087).

552 DFT 4A_544/2014 of 24 Feb. 2015, cons. 3.4.

553 DFT 127 III 576, cons. 2e and f; DFT 121 III 331, cons. 3a.

award.⁵⁵⁴ To summarise, there is no constitutional duty to support arbitral proceedings under the right to be heard.

4. Result

From the preceding discussion, it is difficult to argue that state courts have a constitutional obligation to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence. First and foremost, although the PILA CH provides for the possibility for courts to assist⁵⁵⁵ arbitral tribunals, there is no explicit constitutional basis suggesting the same.⁵⁵⁶ Or, to put it differently, arbitration-friendliness is not the same as a constitutional obligation to assist arbitral tribunals.⁵⁵⁷

Second, neither the Swiss legislature nor the SFT supports the view that a constitutional obligation to assist arbitral tribunals exists, based on the reasoning that minimum procedural guarantees must be granted in arbitral proceedings. By imposing strict requirements on such proceedings, such as equal treatment and the right to be heard, the Swiss legislature wanted to afford arbitral awards equal status to state court decisions.⁵⁵⁸ In addition, in order to provide for fast and efficient arbitral proceedings, the reasons for challenging an arbitral award are very limited under the PILA CH and parties can generally appeal only to the SFT.⁵⁵⁹ That is why minimum procedural guarantees are even more important. These guarantees will be examined in detail in chapter eight of this book.⁵⁶⁰ Finally, as previously discussed (*see p. 107 supra*), there is no reassessment of evidence or examination of how the arbitral tribunal exercised its discretion to conduct the arbitral proceedings. Thus, the Swiss legislature and the SFT are concerned only that certain minimal procedural guarantees are observed during the arbitral proceedings. To imply a direct constitutional obligation to assist arbitral tribunals during the course of arbitration (i.e. in the taking of evidence) would not be in line with this intention.⁵⁶¹

⁵⁵⁴ DFT 134 III 186, cons. 6.1; DFT 133 III 235, cons. 5.2; DFT 116 II 373, cons. 7b.; for a different view *see* HABERBECK, 1417 et seqq.; ZK-OETIKER, Ar. 189 PILA CH n. 59 et seqq.; BUCHER, n. 351; BESSON, n. 400 et seq.

⁵⁵⁵ Arts. 183 (2) and 184 (2) PILA CH.

⁵⁵⁶ STEINBRÜCK, 132 et seq.

⁵⁵⁷ *Ibid.*, 65.

⁵⁵⁸ BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 1; GÖKSU, n. 1978.

⁵⁵⁹ According to Art. 192 PILA CH, parties can even exclude all appeals against the arbitral award if neither party has a domicile, a place of habitual residence or a place of business in Switzerland. Alternatively, the partial exclusion of one or several reasons to challenge the arbitral award as stated in Art. 190 (2) PILA CH is also possible.

⁵⁶⁰ *See* p. 256 et seqq. *infra*.

⁵⁶¹ STEINBRÜCK, 64 et seqq.

Third, a constitutional obligation to assist arbitral tribunals would exist only if the ability to challenge an arbitral awards did not suffice to protect the minimum procedural guarantees of the parties.⁵⁶² In this case, instead of just examining retrospectively whether those guarantees were observed (i.e. *after* the arbitral award has been rendered), state courts would have to observe and protect these guarantees *during* the arbitral proceedings based on the constitution—for example, by assisting in the taking of evidence.⁵⁶³ As previously discussed, this is clearly not the case—at least, not in Switzerland. In order to make Switzerland an attractive forum for arbitration, the Swiss legislature requires the courts to take a ‘hands-off’ approach during the course of arbitration, with the possibility only to examine arbitral awards after they have been rendered.

Finally, it may be summarised that Swiss courts assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence not because of a constitutional duty, but simply because the Swiss legislature wishes to attract and support international arbitral proceedings, and thus to promote Switzerland as an arbitration-friendly jurisdiction. Thus, in assessing whether to grant assistance, a Swiss court is not bound by any direct constitutional obligation, but must decide according to the provisions as set forth in the PILA CH.⁵⁶⁴

C. International Public Law

1. Introduction

At least from the Swiss point of view, there is no constitutional obligation to assist international arbitral tribunals. Under international public law, the situation is not much different.⁵⁶⁵ Although several international conventions state that minimum procedural guarantees must be observed in arbitral proceedings, they do not expressly state how far this obligation goes and what it implies. Nonetheless, various important decisions have helped with the interpretation of the issue. In this case, the question is again whether the need to observe these guarantees also obliges state courts to assist arbitral tribunals during the arbitration proceedings—for example, with regard to the taking of evidence. This question will be answered next by examining several international conventions such as the ECHR,⁵⁶⁶ the NYC and the HEC.

⁵⁶² *Ibid.*, 62.

⁵⁶³ *Ibid.*

⁵⁶⁴ Art. 183 (2) and Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; see p. 223 et seqq. *infra*.

⁵⁶⁵ STEINBRÜCK, 52 et seq.

⁵⁶⁶ As its name implies, the ECHR is largely considered a purely European convention. However, looking at Member States such as Russia and Turkey, the examination of the ECHR under the title of international public law seems to be justified.

It is important to stress that, at the level of international public law, the minimum procedural guarantees are worded even more carefully and generally than in the Const. CH. Thus, although these conventions are meant to have a synchronous effect in all Member States, their adoption and execution vary from one jurisdiction to another.⁵⁶⁷ As stated previously in the introduction to this part of the chapter (*see p. 103 supra*), the issue of whether a possible obligation to assist state courts based on international public law exists can only partially be answered globally; it should rather be considered separately per jurisdiction. The following remarks will thus—where possible—concentrate on the issues and consequences in and for Switzerland.

2. European Convention on Human Rights

a. Introduction

Since its establishment in 1950, the ECHR has been adopted in 47 countries in Europe. It entered into force in Switzerland in 1974.⁵⁶⁸ With regard to minimum procedural guarantees, Art. 6 (1) ECHR reads as follows:

“In the determination of his civil rights and obligations ..., everyone is entitled to a fair and public hearing within a reasonable time by an independent and impartial tribunal established by law.”

As one of the fundamental and by far most important provisions of the ECHR, Art. 6 (1) ECHR grants access to a court combined with several minimum procedural guarantees.⁵⁶⁹ Quite obviously, the wording of Art. 6 (1) ECHR is very general, allowing for broad interpretation. Therefore, the ECtHR has had many possibilities to express its views on the term ‘fair hearing’ and its meaning as regards evidence.⁵⁷⁰ The ECtHR has held that this term includes, among other rights, equality of arms, which allows a party to present its case—including evidence—‘under conditions that do not place him at a substantial

⁵⁶⁷ STEINBRÜCK, 53 et seq. He states that since customary international public law (*Völk-
ergewohnheitsrecht*) provides no requirements with regard to arbitral proceedings, such a basis may be found in contractual international public law (*Völkervertragsrecht*) such as the ECHR or the NYC.

⁵⁶⁸ See the current status.

⁵⁶⁹ See ECtHR Annual Report 2018, 171 et seq. Accordingly, more than 24% of the 1068 cases brought before the ECtHR have concerned a violation of the right to a fair trial; Karpenstein/Mayer-MEYER, Art. 6 EMRK n. 5.

⁵⁷⁰ For an overview, see HARRIS D. et al., Art. 6 ECHR, 413 et seqq.; RAINESY et al., 291 et seqq.; HK-EMRK-LADEWIG et al., Art. 6 EMRK n. 139 et seqq.; Karpenstein/Mayer-MEYER, Art. 6 EMRK n. 100 et seqq.

disadvantage *vis-à-vis* his opponent'.⁵⁷¹ Furthermore, it has stated that parties have a right to a fair procedure for the taking of evidence—that is, to have the opportunity ‘to have knowledge of and comment on the observations filed or evidence adduced by the other party’.⁵⁷² Regarding the admissibility of evidence and the way it should be assessed, the ECtHR has also held that Art. 6 (1) ECHR does not regulate these matters, but leaves them to national laws and courts.⁵⁷³

Thus far, the SFT and the ECtHR have examined the relationship between the ECHR and arbitration several times. In addition, the topic is much debated in legal doctrine.⁵⁷⁴ Although there are all sorts of interesting questions to be answered in this conversation, the following remarks aim to establish whether the ECHR actually obliges Member States and their courts to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, or whether they must merely ensure that minimum procedural guarantees were observed in the arbitral proceedings.

b. Case Law of the ECtHR

The ECtHR has ruled several times on the applicability of the ECHR to arbitral proceedings in general, as well as the admissibility of a waiver of the rights derived from the ECHR in arbitral proceedings in particular. In contrast to various authors who have suggested that the ECHR does not apply to arbitral proceedings at all, the ECtHR has clearly stated that a ‘tribunal established by law’ as foreseen in Art. 6 (1) ECHR should not necessarily be understood as a classic court of law; ‘it may comprise a body set up to determine a limited number of specific issues, provided always that it offers the appropriate guarantees’.⁵⁷⁵ The ECHR is therefore also applicable to arbitral tribunals, at least to a certain degree.

⁵⁷¹ *Dombo Beheer B.V. v. the Netherlands*, ECtHR, no. 14448/88, n. 33, 27 Octobre 1993; HARRIS D. et al., Art. 6 ECHR, 409 et seqq.; RAINY ET AL., 291 et seqq.; DÖRR ET AL.-GRABENWARTER/PABEL, ch. 14 n. 4, 93; HK-EMRK-LADEWIG ET AL., Art. 6 EMRK n. 96 et seqq.; STEINBRÜCK, 57 et seq.; It is noteworthy that a ‘fair hearing’ according to Art. 6 (1) ECHR is anything but a closed term with strict requirements. Derived from the case law of the ECtHR, it is interpreted widely and remains open to new interpretations (HARRIS D. ET AL., Art. 6 ECHR, 409). In addition, whether a hearing was in fact ‘fair’ can be determined only by looking at the proceedings as a whole (RAINY ET AL., 291).

⁵⁷² *Ruiz-Mateos v. Spain*, ECtHR, no. 12952/87, n. 63, 23 Jun. 1993.

⁵⁷³ *Schenk v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 00010862/84, n. 46, 12 Jul. 1988; *Roland Volkmer v. Germany*, ECtHR, no. 39799/98, n. 4, 22 Nov. 2001; see also *Tamminen v. Finnland*, ECtHR, no. 40847/98, n. 38-42, 15 Jun. 2004, where the national court violated Art. 6 (1) ECHR because it refused to hear a witness for unfair and contradictory reasons.

⁵⁷⁴ For an extensive overview, see BESSON, 413 et seqq.; KODEK, n. 8.

⁵⁷⁵ BESSON, 401; *Lithgow and Others v. the United Kingdom*, ECtHR, no. 9006/80; 9262/81; 9263/81; 9265/81; 9266/81; 9313/81; 9405/81, n. 201, 8 Jul. 1986.

In this regard, the ECtHR distinguishes between compulsory and voluntary arbitration.⁵⁷⁶ Consequently, if arbitration is imposed by law and the parties have no other option than to settle their dispute through arbitration, Art. 6 (1) ECHR is fully applicable.⁵⁷⁷ First and foremost, this applies to sports-related arbitration, where the players usually have no choice but to submit to the respective federation rules, which will contain an arbitration clause.⁵⁷⁸ In contrast, according to the *Tabbane* case, if parties choose arbitration voluntarily, they automatically waive certain rights as set forth in the ECHR, and in this case the right of access to a court is not absolute.⁵⁷⁹ As a consequence, a waiver *per se* is not a violation of the ECHR.⁵⁸⁰ Provided that the parties waive their rights freely, permissibly and unambiguously, the ECtHR considers that this does not violate the ECHR, as long as it is not a complete waiver of all rights under Art. 6 (1) ECHR.⁵⁸¹ Moreover, the waiver must be accompanied by minimum guarantees corresponding to its gravity (e.g. to freely choose an arbitrator or to be represented by a lawyer).⁵⁸² Although the ECtHR does not further specify which rights can be waived and which cannot, it seems that this issue is considered on a case-by-case basis rather than according to a dogmatic rule, subject only to the abovementioned conditions.⁵⁸³

c. Case Law of the Federal Tribunal

Not as detailed as the case law of the ECtHR, but noteworthy nonetheless, are the decisions of the SFT and its approach to the ECHR and arbitral proceedings.

⁵⁷⁶ *Mutu et Pechstein v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 40575/10 and 67674/10, n. 95, 2 Oct. 2018.

⁵⁷⁷ *Bramelid and Malmström v. Sweden*, ECtHR, no. 8588/79 and 8589/79, n. 30 et seqq., 12 Dec. 1983. In this case, according to the Swedish Company Act of 1944, a dispute between a parent company and its subsidiary company had to be settled in arbitration by law.

⁵⁷⁸ *Mutu et Pechstein v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 40575/10 and 67674/10, n. 98, 109 et seqq., 2 Oct. 2018.

⁵⁷⁹ *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 26 et seq., 1 Mar. 2016.

⁵⁸⁰ *Ibid.*, n. 25; *Deweerd v. Belgium*, ECtHR, no. 6903/75, n. 49, 27 Feb. 1980.

⁵⁸¹ *Mutu et Pechstein v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 40575/10 and 67674/10, n. 103 et seqq., 2 Oct. 2018; *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 26 et seq., 1 Mar. 2016; *Eiffage S.A. et autres v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 1742/05, 15 Sept. 2009; *Transport Fluviais do Sado S.A. v. Portugal*, ECtHR, no. 35943/02, 16 Dec. 2003; *Osmo Suovaniemi and others v. Finland*, ECtHR, no. 31737/96, 23 Feb. 1999; *Pfeifer and Plankl v. Austria*, ECtHR, no. 10802/84, 25 Feb. 1992; *Karpenstein/Mayer-MEYER*, Art. 6 EM-RK n. 59; BESSON, 400.

⁵⁸² *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 16 and 27, 1 Mar. 2016; *Osmo Suovaniemi and others v. Finland*, ECtHR, no. 31737/96, 23 Feb. 1999.

⁵⁸³ BESSON (405), making reference to *Osmo Suovaniemi and others v. Finland*, ECtHR, no. 31737/96, 23 Feb. 1999.

In some early cases in the 1980s, the SFT stated that because the arbitral tribunal is not a ‘tribunal established by law’, Art. 6(1) ECHR does not apply to arbitration, where the parties are at liberty to choose the arbitrators.⁵⁸⁴ A few years later, the SFT changed its mind, stating that Art. 6(1) ECHR also applies to private arbitral tribunals and especially with regard to the correct composition of the court and the arbitral tribunal, respectively.⁵⁸⁵ In subsequent decisions, the SFT clarified that since the ECHR is not mentioned under the reasons to challenge an arbitral award according to Art. 190(2) PILA CH, it is therefore not *directly* applicable; but it can be used *indirectly* to interpret and substantiate this article.⁵⁸⁶ How this should work in practice has not yet been decided. Hence, there are no clear conditions as to how the ECHR should be used to interpret Art. 190(2) PILA CH or which principles and rights apply with regard to arbitration.

d. Result

Further to the previous remarks, it must be asked whether there is an obligation to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, based on the fact that the ECHR is also partially applicable to arbitral proceedings. It has been shown that, according to the case law of the ECtHR, a ‘fair hearing’ involves similar principles such as the right to be heard pursuant to the Const. CH.⁵⁸⁷ While the SFT has clearly stated that the ECHR is not directly applicable to arbitral proceedings, but rather serves as a means to interpret the minimum procedural guarantees as set forth in Art. 190(2) PILA CH, the ECtHR is not as explicit. It has held that in voluntary arbitration, the ECHR is applicable in principle, although not without limitations. Parties can therefore waive certain rights, as long as they freely agree to this, it is permissible under law and the waiver is made unambiguously.

In light of these findings, it is evident that the ECtHR obliges arbitral tribunals as well as national courts only to ensure that minimum procedural guarantees have been observed in the arbitral proceedings. Besides the fact

⁵⁸⁴ DFT 112 Ia 166, cons. 3a with reference to a further unpublished decision of 9 Feb. 1984, cons. 3d. For opinions against that reasoning, see BANGERT, 54 et seqq.; BESSON, 401.

⁵⁸⁵ DFT 117 Ia 166, cons. 5a. This change in opinion can easily be explained by the reasoning of the *Lithgow* decision of the ECtHR, which has been rendered in the meantime (*see fn 575 supra*).

⁵⁸⁶ DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.2; DFT 4A_246/2014 of 15 Jul. 2015, cons. 7.2.2; DFT 4A_198/2012 of 14 Dec. 2012, cons. 3.1; DFT 4A_238/2011 of 4 Jan. 2012, cons. 3.1.2; DFT 4A_404/2010 of 19 Apr. 2011, cons. 3.5.3; DFT 4A_43/2010 of 29 Jul. 2010, cons. 3.6.1; DFT 4A_612/2009 of 10 Feb. 2010, cons. 2.4.1; DFT 4A_320/2009 of 2 Jun. 2010, cons. 1.5.3; DFT 4A_370/2007 of 21 Feb. 2007, cons. 5.3.2; DFT 4P.105/2006 of 4 Aug. 2006, cons. 7.3.

⁵⁸⁷ *Ibid.*; *see p. 110 supra*.

that there is no explicit obligation in the ECHR for state courts to assist tribunals, various other reasons contradict the existence of such an obligation. First, to conclude that such an obligation exists would not be coherent with the aforementioned case law of the ECtHR and the SFT. Although both suggest that the ECHR applies under certain conditions as regards minimum procedural guarantees, it would go too far to conclude that an obligation exists to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence.⁵⁸⁸ At least in Switzerland, the ECHR serves only as a means to assist with the interpretation of minimum procedural guarantees as stated in Art. 190 (2) PILA CH. Consequently, no further obligation can be derived therefrom.

Second, for the same reason that was presented with regard to the Const. CH, a duty to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence based on the ECHR would exist only if state courts were obliged to supervise arbitration during the course of the proceedings themselves, and not merely after the arbitral award has been rendered (*see p. 109 supra*). This is clearly not the case; rather the contrary.⁵⁸⁹ By agreeing to settle the dispute through arbitration, the parties deliberately renounce certain rights provided by the ECHR.⁵⁹⁰ Moreover, because the arbitral award takes effect only after it has been rendered and a violation of procedural rules can be addressed by challenging the arbitral award, there is no obligation for state courts to supervise the arbitration to achieve a ‘precautionary prevention of procedural violations’.⁵⁹¹

3. New York Convention

a. Introduction

The NYC—which was established in 1958 and has 160 Member States—is the most important convention in the field of international arbitration.⁵⁹² It applies to arbitral awards rendered in a state other than that in which recognition and enforcement are sought.⁵⁹³ Moreover, it comes into play not only as regards

⁵⁸⁸ STEINBRÜCK, 64.

⁵⁸⁹ KODEK, n. 60 et seqq.

⁵⁹⁰ *See* the aforementioned decision *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 26 et seq., 1 Mar. 2016.

⁵⁹¹ KODEK, n. 60. According to KODEK, the only exceptions would concern cases where the arbitral proceedings are excessively lengthy. In this respect, *see R v. Switzerland*, stating that a violation of the ECHR can be assumed only when a case is pending before a state court and not before an arbitral tribunal prior to the application made to the ECtHR (*R v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, no. 10881/84, 4 Mar. 1987).

⁵⁹² UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Preface n. 1. It entered into force on 7 Jun. 1959 and Switzerland joined it on 30 Aug. 1965; Wolff-LIEBSCHER, Preliminary Remarks, n. 1; Balthasar-SOLOMON, n. 1; Mistelis et al.-MISTELIS/DI PIETRO, Introductory Remarks NYC, 1; PAULSSON, 1; Kronk et al.-BAGNER, Art. I NYC, 20 et seq.; *see* the current status.

⁵⁹³ Art. I (1) NYC.

the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards (Arts. III-VI NYC), but also as regards the upholding of the arbitration agreement (Art. II NYC). If the respective arbitration agreement meets the conditions of Art. II(1) NYC, state courts must respect that agreement. Art. II(3) NYC reads as follows:

“The court of a Contracting State, when seized of an action in a matter in respect of which the parties have made an agreement within the meaning of this article, shall, at the request of one of the parties, refer the parties to arbitration, unless it finds that the said agreement is null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed.”

As long as the arbitration agreement is not invalid in the sense of this article, state courts must support it in order to respect the parties’ choice. Whether this obligation also includes support for arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence will be considered below.

b. Art. II (3) NYC

This question can be answered only in general if the terms ‘null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed’ are interpreted uniformly and not according to the respective applicable national law.⁵⁹⁴ The question has been answered differently in various jurisdictions. While the scope of the wording ‘null and void, inoperative or incapable of being performed’ may overlap, its meaning is either understood as being internationalised or interpreted according to the respective national law.⁵⁹⁵ The internationalised approach, adopted by French and US scholars and courts, holds that a valid arbitration agreement should be interpreted in light of international standards such as international public policy⁵⁹⁶ or internationally recognised breach of contract defences such as duress and fraud.⁵⁹⁷ However, most other jurisdictions, such as Switzerland⁵⁹⁸ and Germany,⁵⁹⁹ refer – by analogy to Art. V(1)(a) NYC – to the law chosen by the parties or, in the absence of such a

⁵⁹⁴ STEINBRÜCK, 72.

⁵⁹⁵ Kronke et al.-SCHRAMM et al., Art. II NYC, 104.

⁵⁹⁶ Paris Court of Cassation, 30 Mar. 2004, 1st Civil Chamber, 02-12259; *St. Hugh Williams v. NCL (Bahamas) LTD.*, 686 F.3d 1169 (11th Cir. 2012); *Bautisa v. Star Cruises*, 396 F.3d 1289, 1302 (11th Cir. 2005).

⁵⁹⁷ *Rhone Mediterranee Compagnia Francese di Assicurazioni e Riassicurazioni v. Achille Lauro*, 712 F.3d 50 (3d Cir. 1983), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1984, 474 et seqq.; Kronke et al.-SCHRAMM et al., Art. II NYC, 104; UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Art. II n. 104; Wolff-WILSKIE/FOX, Art. II(3) NYC n. 307.

⁵⁹⁸ DFT 4A_279/2010 of 25 Oct. 2010, cons. 2; DFT 5C.215/1994 of 21 Mar. 1995, cons. 2b.

⁵⁹⁹ STEINBRÜCK, 72 et seq.

choice, to the law of the country in which the award was rendered.⁶⁰⁰ Consequently, the question of whether Art. II (3) NYC obliges national courts to support arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence must be answered separately per jurisdiction.

Although the views on this matter differ from jurisdiction to jurisdiction, there is always a tendency to uphold the arbitration agreement and thus to apply Art. II (3) NYC only in drastic cases.⁶⁰¹ In order to assert or deny an obligation to assist arbitral tribunals, Steinbrück argues that Art. II (3) NYC can be interpreted either extensively or restrictively.⁶⁰² In cases where an arbitration agreement is not ‘incapable of being performed’, but the parties have not agreed on the exact procedure as regards the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, national courts may be bound to support the arbitral proceedings based on the NYC by appointing an arbitrator.⁶⁰³ In contrast, Steinbrück further suggests that there are also cases in which Art. II (3) NYC should be understood as a limitation of court assistance.⁶⁰⁴ For instance, if arbitral proceedings cannot be commenced or if the arbitral tribunal simply refuses to act despite the existence of a valid arbitration agreement, court assistance will not prove as helpful and could even run contrary to the parties’ intention.⁶⁰⁵ Based on the NYC, national courts can therefore assist only if it is within the intention of the parties. Otherwise, arbitral awards will be neither recognised nor enforced because the arbitral proceedings were not in accordance with the agreement of the parties.⁶⁰⁶

c. Result

The foregoing examination shows that the NYC does not provide a clear answer to the question of whether Art. II (3) NYC obliges national courts not only to respect arbitration agreements, but also to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence. Even if Art. II (3) NYC is interpreted uniformly, it remains dubious whether such an obligation exists. In addition, the possible restrictive interpretation of Art. II (3) NYC reveals that there are also situations in which court assistance would contradict the parties’ intention. Hence, because

⁶⁰⁰ *Ibid.*, 104; Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2003, n. 620 et seqq.; Wolff-WILSKE/FOX, Art. II (3) NYC n. 290.

⁶⁰¹ UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Art. II n. 103 et seqq.; Wolff-WILSKE/FOX, Art. II (3) NYC n. 292.

⁶⁰² STEINBRÜCK, 75 et seqq.

⁶⁰³ *Ibid.*, with reference to *Etat d’Israël v. Société NIOC*, Paris Court of Cassation, 1 Feb. 2005, 1st Civil Chamber, in: Rev. Arb. 2005, 693 et seqq.

⁶⁰⁴ STEINBRÜCK, 79 et seqq.

⁶⁰⁵ Kronke et al.-SCHRAMM et al., Art. II NYC, 107; STEINBRÜCK, 80.

⁶⁰⁶ Art. V (1) (d) NYC.

there seems to be no clear-cut answer according to Art. II (3) NYC, the question must be answered by considering the overall intention of the NYC.

As its title states, the NYC aims first and foremost to facilitate the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards to the ‘greatest extent possible’.⁶⁰⁷ The NYC therefore serves as a minimum standard, while leaving Member States free to apply more liberal rules.⁶⁰⁸ This is demonstrated best by Art. V NYC, which states that arbitral awards must be recognised and enforced unless certain exceptions apply, such as where one party was unable to present its case.⁶⁰⁹ Nonetheless, the NYC does not further specify those exceptions; nor does it say when arbitral awards should be enforced or annulled. It states merely that unless there are insurmountable obstacles, arbitral awards must be recognised and enforced.⁶¹⁰

As the connection between arbitration agreements and the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards was discussed late in the drafting process, Art. II NYC was added at the last minute to the text of the convention.⁶¹¹ This explains why important issues such as the precise scope of application and the law governing the interpretation of Art. II NYC are not addressed. However, it seemed crucial to emphasise the importance of the arbitration agreement as the foundation of arbitration itself and ultimately the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.⁶¹² Hence, apart from Art. II (3) NYC, this article harmonises the understanding of the arbitration agreement in general, as well as its formal requirements.

In sum, Art. II NYC prevents parties from having recourse to state courts if they have agreed to settle their dispute through arbitration. It lays the foundations for the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards by emphasising the importance of the arbitration agreement. This is in line with the overall intention of the NYC: to establish general requirements as regards the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, but not to regulate the process itself.⁶¹³ Consequently, no obligation to assist arbitral tribunals during the proceedings (e.g. with the taking of evidence) can be derived from Art. II NYC or the convention as a whole.⁶¹⁴

607 UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Art. II n. 5.

608 Art. VII(1) NYC.

609 Art. V(1)(b) NYC.

610 Kronke et al.-KRONKE, Introduction, 2.

611 UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Art. II n. 2.

612 Kronke et al.-SCHRAMM et al., Art. II NYC, 38 et seq.

613 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.04 n. 28.

614 STEINBRÜCK, 89.

4. Hague Evidence Convention

a. Introduction

In a further step, it will be examined whether an obligation to assist international arbitral tribunals exists under the HEC, which was established in 1970. This convention has proved a very useful tool in international litigation, helping parties to obtain evidence abroad by means of international judicial assistance.⁶¹⁵ So far, the HEC has been adopted by 63 Member States; it entered into force in Switzerland in 1995.⁶¹⁶ Regarding arbitration, there is a broad consensus among Member States and legal scholars that the HEC is not applicable directly to arbitral proceedings, because only ‘judicial authorities’ can submit requests to foreign national courts in order to obtain evidence.⁶¹⁷ The reality is thus that the HEC is not used directly in arbitral proceedings. In this respect, a distinction must be made between the issue of the direct applicability of the HEC to arbitral proceedings and its indirect use where court assistance is sought in support of arbitral proceedings.⁶¹⁸ This applies to cases in which an arbitral tribunal requests assistance from a state court at the seat of arbitration, which then sends a letter of request to a state court based in another jurisdiction. While this scenario does not seem to present any significant difficulties,⁶¹⁹ the following remarks concentrate on a possible direct application which would force state courts of Member States to render assistance in the taking of evidence based on the HEC.

⁶¹⁵ See the HEC Questionnaire (2014), 25 et seq.

⁶¹⁶ See the current status.

⁶¹⁷ Art. 1 HEC; HEC Handbook (2016), n. 93; BLACKABY et al., n. 6.131; SAATHOF, 62; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, n. 2422 et seq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9.02 n. 32; STEINBRÜCK, 129 et seq.; MüKo-PABST, Art. 1 HEC n. 9; KLAUS, 302, fn 21; KNEISEL/LECKING, 153; GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 831 et seqq. Even though GAUTHEY/MARKUS consider the fact that arbitral tribunals render arbitral awards as judicial acts, they agree that they are certainly not ‘judicial authorities of a contracting state’. Accordingly, they are not within the HEC’s scope of application; see also HEC Questionnaire (2009), 40 et seq. According to this questionnaire, very few jurisdictions have been approached directly by arbitral tribunals based on the HEC. These requests have either been denied or transmitted to the respective competent state authority; HEC Questionnaire (2004), 11 et seq.; see also the commentary of Australia as regards arbitration, noting that ‘there is nothing within the Convention to prevent its use by two parties in circumstances where both parties consent to it having such additional application.’

⁶¹⁸ WIRTH/HOFFMANN-NOWOTNY, 70; for the procedure of indirect court assistance see p. 120 *infra*.

⁶¹⁹ WIRTH/HOFFMANN-NOWOTNY, 70; GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 833; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 284 et seqq.; HEC Recommendations (2003), n. 38; HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679.

b. Drafting Process

So far, few authors suggest that the HEC should be directly applicable to arbitral proceedings.⁶²⁰ They suggest that instead of first submitting a request to the competent state court at the seat of arbitration, which will then send a letter of request to the competent authority of the Member State in which the requested evidence is located, international arbitral tribunals should be able to submit direct requests to national courts abroad. In this case, the court approached would be obliged—subject to the requirements of the HEC—to render assistance in the taking of evidence.

This argument is anything but new and has been proposed since the very beginning of the HEC drafting process, as well as during the drafting of the UNCITRAL ML in 1985.⁶²¹ During the discussions on Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML (*see p. 93 et seqq. supra*), it was suggested that international court assistance should not be governed by the UNCITRAL ML, but rather remain within the field of international cooperation.⁶²² This position can also be explained by the fact that the drafters of the UNCITRAL ML knew that, at the same time, a special commission of the Hague Conference on Private International Law was discussing the possibility of using the HEC in the context of arbitral proceedings.⁶²³ The idea was to add an additional protocol to the HEC, allowing arbitral tribunals to submit direct evidence requests to the respective authority of a Member State.⁶²⁴ Within the special commission, opinion on this possibility was divided.⁶²⁵ Despite the technical feasibility of the protocol, the majority of commission members raised doubts about its usefulness.⁶²⁶ In the end—and probably also because the drafting process of the UNCITRAL ML had already been completed without the inclusion of a provision obliging national courts to assist international arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence—the commission abandoned the idea.⁶²⁷ In addition, and in contrast to the former view, the special commission questioned the practicability of the protocol because of the many different types of arbitral

620 MEIER, 120; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 284 et seqq.; Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 1 HEC, n. 16; Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 5.

621 ROTHSTEIN, 84 et seqq.; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 299 et seqq.

622 UNCITRAL, 18th session, A/CN.9/263 (1985), 59.

623 KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 300.

624 HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679.

625 *Ibid.*

626 UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the 325th meeting (1985), n. 57.

627 HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679; AMRAM, n. 254; UNCITRAL, A/40/17 (1985), n. 225.

tribunals (ad hoc and institutional) that exist.⁶²⁸ More recently, the view that the HEC is not applicable to arbitral proceedings in practice has also been reflected in the latest questionnaire of HEC Member States in 2008.⁶²⁹

c. Criticism

It is beyond controversy that an arbitral tribunal is not a ‘judicial authority of a contracting state’, but rather a private body acting without a permanent jurisdiction or coercive powers.⁶³⁰ However, with regard to the term ‘judicial’, the situation is not as clear.⁶³¹ Because arbitral awards have similar effects to state court decisions, the arbitrator’s task may be considered and qualified as a ‘judicial’ act in the sense of Art. 1 HEC.⁶³² Arguing strongly in favour of the direct applicability of the HEC to arbitral proceedings, KNÖFEL suggests that instead of interpreting Art. 1 HEC too strictly, it should rather be read in light of the HEC’s overall aim to ‘improve mutual judicial co-operation in civil or commercial matters’.⁶³³ In assimilating arbitral awards to state court decisions, this cooperation should also be established as regards arbitration.⁶³⁴ Concerning the drafters’ objection that ‘it would be difficult, if not impossible’⁶³⁵ to apply the HEC to different kinds of arbitral tribunals, KNÖFEL argues further that despite the heterogeneity of arbitral proceedings, Member States have a keen interest in promoting international arbitration and should consequently extend the HEC’s applicability to arbitral proceedings in their jurisdictions.⁶³⁶

Moreover, and as regards disclosure proceedings, Rothstein states that in addition to the IBA Rules, using the HEC in arbitral proceedings could help to harmonise arbitral disclosure proceedings, as well as *leges arbitri*.⁶³⁷ In contrast to Knöfel, he suggests that instead of interpreting the HEC too broadly and applying it to arbitral proceedings, it should rather be modified first in order to fit within the context of international arbitration.⁶³⁸

628 HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301.

629 HEC Questionnaire (2009), 40 et seqq.; ROTHSTEIN, 86.

630 Art. 1 HEC; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301; GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 832.

631 Art. 1 HEC; AMRAM, n. 19. The term ‘judicial’ is therefore not defined.

632 GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 831; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301.

633 HEC Preamble; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301.

634 *Ibid.*

635 HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679.

636 KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301 et seq.

637 ROTHSTEIN, 87; Art. 23 HEC.

638 ROTHSTEIN, 86.

Indeed, the HEC's direct applicability to arbitral proceedings could contribute to their effectiveness. In order to provide clarity, in addition to a 'judicial authority', Art. 1 HEC should include an 'arbitral tribunal'. This amendment would have several procedural consequences, as discussed below, focusing on the situation in Switzerland.

d. Procedural Consequences

I. Non-Exclusivity

It is worth mentioning that if arbitral tribunals could avail of the HEC directly, Switzerland would have to amend its first reservation, which declares that the HEC applies exclusively to its Member States.⁶³⁹ As Art. 184 (2) PILA CH also provides for court assistance in the taking of evidence in international arbitral proceedings, neither possibility should be given priority. While the HEC's exclusive character might apply to state court proceedings, this is certainly not the case with arbitral proceedings. As a result, the HEC would represent just one of various possible means to obtain evidence—for instance, in addition to the aforementioned domestic legal basis or another international treaty.⁶⁴⁰ Indeed, Art. 27 (c) HEC explicitly empowers Member States to permit, 'by internal law or practice, methods of taking evidence other than those provided for in this Convention'.⁶⁴¹

In this regard, the US approach should also be mentioned. In *Société Nationale Industrielle Aérospatiale v. U.S. Dist. Court*, the US Supreme Court argued that by virtue of Art. 27 HEC, both the HEC and the domestic rules (FRCP USA) may be used to obtain evidence located in the US and thus there is no exclusivity.⁶⁴² Switzerland could therefore amend its first reservation to the HEC and open up the possibility for arbitral tribunals to avail of the HEC directly. In a similar way to diplomatic officers, consular agents and commissioners (Art. 18 HEC), arbitral tribunals could therefore be empowered to seek evidence.

⁶³⁹ See the reservations.

⁶⁴⁰ Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Introduction, n. 28; Art. 11a(4) PILA CH; MüKo-PABST, Preliminary Remarks n. 11 with reference to the fact Art. 1 HEC is modelled as a discretionary clause; KLAUS, 302: see also p. 128 et seqq. *infra*.

⁶⁴¹ From the point of view of Swiss criminal law, there is no danger of 'felonies and misdemeanours against the state or unlawful activities on behalf of a foreign state' pursuant to Art. 271 SCC CH. Since arbitral tribunals are *per se* private institutions, their taking of evidence, even through an international treaty such as the HEC, would not endanger the sovereignty of any state (see BSK-HUSMANN, Art. 271 SCC CH n. 18 et seqq.).

⁶⁴² *Société Nationale Industrielle Aérospatiale v. U.S. Dist. Court*, 482 U.S. 522 (1987); see also p. 208 *infra*.

If Member States were to expand the scope of application of the HEC to arbitral tribunals—either by making each a separate reservation or by agreeing to amend the convention as a whole—this would positively influence international arbitral proceedings. Consequently, arbitral tribunals could choose to seek evidence under either the HEC or the respective *lex arbitri*. In jurisdictions which do not offer court assistance in the taking of evidence pursuant to their *lex arbitri*, but which are also Member States of the HEC, state courts could provide assistance based solely on the HEC without any need to amend national law.

II. Requesting Arbitral Tribunal

Regarding the requesting authority, the special commission’s concerns regarding the many types of arbitral tribunals can easily be rebutted.⁶⁴³ According to Arts. 3 (a-d) HEC, a letter of request must not only specify who is seeking to obtain what evidence, but also provide further information regarding the parties, including their names and legal representatives, as well as an overview of the dispute in question, including all necessary information thereto. As a consequence, irrespective of whether the letter of request comes from an ad hoc or institutional arbitral tribunal, the competent authority will be perfectly aware of whom it concerns.

III. Jurisdiction

In Switzerland, the ‘central authority’ pursuant to Arts. 2 and 24 HEC is determined by the Federal Office of Justice (FOJ), which usually appoints a Cantonal Supreme Court.⁶⁴⁴ As a result, there are 26 central authorities.⁶⁴⁵ Alternatively, letters of requests can be addressed to the FOJ in Berne, which acts as a subsidiary central authority and forwards the request to the respective competent Cantonal instance.⁶⁴⁶ In very few Cantons will this jurisdiction be different from that where court assistance in the taking of evidence is sought under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH. Taking the example of Berne, while the respective District Court renders assistance pursuant to the PILA CH, it is the Cantonal Supreme Court which executes letters of request in accordance with the

⁶⁴³ HEC Special Commission (1985), 1679; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 301.

⁶⁴⁴ Art. 11 PILA CH; *see the database of Swiss Localities and Courts*; Art. 6 HEC; *see also* Art. 7 (6a and 7) of the Organisation Ordinance for the Federal Department of Justice and Police (SR 172.213.1).

⁶⁴⁵ *See the list of the central authorities.*

⁶⁴⁶ *See the second reservation of Switzerland; Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013)*, 21.

HEC.⁶⁴⁷ However, since this District Court acts as the single cantonal instance too, jurisdiction under the HEC does not substantially deviate from the situation under the PILA CH.⁶⁴⁸

IV. Participation of the Parties and the Arbitral Tribunal

Under Art. 7 HEC, the parties concerned and their representatives can participate in the taking of evidence. This also applies to the requesting judicial authority—that is, an arbitral tribunal if the respective Member State made a declaration in this respect.⁶⁴⁹ According to the fourth reservation of Switzerland, subject to the consent of the executing state court, members of the requesting judicial authority may be present during the taking of evidence.⁶⁵⁰ In sum, from the point of view of due process, the HEC's participation rights regarding the parties to the arbitration and the arbitral tribunal are very welcome and go even further than Art. 184 (2) PILA CH.⁶⁵¹

V. Applicable Law and Procedure

Although the executing authority will normally apply its own law, this does not exclude the consideration of foreign procedure, ‘unless this is incompatible with the internal law of the state of execution or is impossible of performance by reason of its international practice and procedure or by reason of practice difficulties’.⁶⁵² Applied to arbitral proceedings, it follows that the specific procedural rules of the respective arbitration could be taken into account unless one of the grounds previously mentioned applies. Consequently, an arbitral tribunal could seek to cross-examine a witness or allow affidavits, subject to the consent of the respective witness.⁶⁵³ Moreover, this is in line with the proposed Art. 184 (3) PILA, which states that, on request, a state court can apply or consider different (i.e. foreign) procedural forms.⁶⁵⁴

VI. Costs

Regarding costs, the overall principle stated in the HEC is that in general, assistance in the taking of evidence will not lead to any reimbursement of

647 Art. 8 (1) EG ZSJ BE.

648 Art. 356(2)(c) CCP CH by analogy.

649 Art. 8 HEC.

650 See the reservations; Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 25.

651 See p. 233 *infra*.

652 Art. 9 HEC; MüKo-PABST, Art. 9 HEC n. 4 et seqq.; Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 9 HEC n. 2 et seqq.

653 Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 24.

654 See in more detail p. 242 et seq. *infra*.

taxes or costs of any nature.⁶⁵⁵ As an exception thereto, the state of execution can require the state of origin to reimburse the costs occasioned by the use of a special (foreign) procedure.⁶⁵⁶ Because in Swiss court proceedings court assistance in the taking of evidence will always lead to costs, Art. 14 HEC would have to be amended in order to exclude arbitral proceedings from the overall principle.⁶⁵⁷ Otherwise, there would be an unjustified imbalance between the cost regulations pursuant to the PILA CH and the HEC.

VII. Duration of Proceedings

Finally, one must stress that the HEC's direct applicability to arbitration could also lead to a faster and more efficient process for obtaining court assistance in the taking of evidence. In this respect, it is often said that this process is cumbersome, time consuming and costly.⁶⁵⁸ In contrast, and according to Art. 9 HEC, letters of request must 'be executed expeditiously'.⁶⁵⁹ Although this provision does not specify the timeframe within which these letters must be dealt with, let alone any sanction in case of delay, authorities of Member States are nonetheless required to handle evidence requests as quickly as possible.⁶⁶⁰ The most recent available statistics show that most evidence requests are answered within approximately four months, with only small divergences between jurisdictions.⁶⁶¹ While four months can be a long time in international arbitration, this timeframe would be much longer in case of indirect court assistance—that is, through the state courts at the seat of arbitration, via the central authority in the assisting jurisdiction to the assisting court, back to the central authority, then to the court at the seat of arbitration and ultimately to the requesting arbitral tribunal.⁶⁶²

655 Art. 14 HEC; Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 14 HEC n. 1; MüKo-PABST, Art. 14 HEC n. 2; *see also* Art. 26 HEC, which does not apply to Switzerland (Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 26).

656 Art. 14 HEC i.c.w. Art. 9 (2) HEC.

657 Art. 95(1) CCP CH; *see also* p. 255 et seqq. *infra*.

658 *See e.g.* BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 56.

659 *See also* Arts. 5 and 6 HEC, where the requested authorities are bound to act 'promptly' and 'forthwith'.

660 MüKo-PABST, Art. 9 HEC n. 10; Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 9 HEC n. 15.

661 HEC Questionnaire (2014), 18 et seq. While Switzerland executes most evidence requests within two months, the same requests take six months to a year to be answered in France and the US.

662 ROTHSTEIN, 63; SCHOIBL, 527 et seq.

e. Result

The previous discussion has shown that although the HEC is barely mentioned in connection with arbitral proceedings, the idea of its direct application in the field of arbitration is anything but new. The issue came up not only during the drafting process, but also more recently, as international arbitration has become increasingly attractive.

While the direct applicability of the HEC to arbitration would indeed facilitate international arbitral proceedings, Member States still seem to prefer its indirect use via state courts only.⁶⁶³ Were this preference to shift, nothing would prevent them from extending the HEC's scope of application to arbitral proceedings; as previously shown, few amendments would be necessary in this respect. Since the HEC is by far the most important international convention in relation to the taking of evidence, this idea is certainly worth considering, although it remains to be seen whether an international consensus can be reached among Member States. To sum up, at present, the HEC is not generally available directly for arbitral proceedings.

5. Summary

From the foregoing, it may be concluded that there is no obligation for courts to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, whether under the ECHR, the NYC or the HEC. Regarding the ECHR, it has been demonstrated that both the ECtHR and the SFT oblige arbitral tribunals only to observe minimum procedural guarantees during the arbitral proceedings.⁶⁶⁴ Particularly in Switzerland, the ECHR serves only as a tool to interpret those minimum procedural guarantees at the level of federal law. Consequently, there is no duty to comply with the ECHR during the arbitral proceedings, but only once the arbitral award has been rendered. Furthermore, the NYC—which aims to uphold arbitration agreements—does not give a clear-cut answer as to whether this also includes assisting arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence.⁶⁶⁵ While there are good arguments to support answering this question both positively and negatively, a conclusive answer may be found by considering the NYC's overall intention. Instead of imposing strict requirements as regards the arbitral proceedings themselves, the NYC emphasises the importance of the arbitration agreement and its connection to the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards. As a consequence, there is

⁶⁶³ HEC Questionnaire (2009), 40 et seqq.; HEC Questionnaire (2004), 11 et seq.

⁶⁶⁴ See p. 104 et seqq. and p. 110 et seqq. *supra*.

⁶⁶⁵ See p. 116 et seq. *supra*.

no duty to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence. Finally, as a more theoretical discourse (but with practical suggestions), the potential direct application of the HEC to arbitral proceedings has been discussed.⁶⁶⁶ It has been pointed out that, despite the current reluctance to apply the HEC in arbitral proceedings, this idea is worth considering in future amendments of the HEC. This would not only facilitate and accelerate arbitral proceedings, but also promote international arbitration as an alternative dispute settlement mechanism.

D. European Law

1. Introduction

In a purely European context, and in addition to the conventions at the level of international public law, a European convention and a European regulation are notable regarding the taking of evidence. While the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (ECICA) addresses arbitral proceedings in a more general way, the European Evidence Regulation (EER) specifically provides for the taking of evidence in almost all EU Member States. The following will thus examine whether an obligation can be deduced from the ECICA and the EER.

2. ECICA and the Paris Agreement

Shortly after the establishment of the NYC, the ECICA was introduced in 1961; so far, it has 31 Member States, of which only 16 have ratified the convention.⁶⁶⁷ Switzerland is not among the Member States. As a product of the UN Economic Commission for Europe, and with the goal of simplifying arbitration between Western and Eastern European countries, the ECICA addresses the arbitral tribunal as well as the parties, and therefore the arbitral proceedings themselves.⁶⁶⁸ Because it thus has a different scope from the NYC, it is often considered as a supplement thereto.⁶⁶⁹

As regards the existence of a possible obligation to assist arbitral tribunals, Art. IV ECICA is of major importance, since it allows the parties to tailor the arbitral proceedings at their widest discretion (i.e. also in relation to the

666 See p. 118 et seqq. *supra*.

667 See the current status; Despite its name, there are also non-european Member States such as Azerbaijan, Burkina Faso, Cuba and Kazakhstan. In contrast, a few European countries, such as Switzerland and the United Kingdom, are not part of it.

668 HASCHER, n. 1. BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 143.

669 PITKOWITZ, 93.

taking of evidence).⁶⁷⁰ According to Art. IV (1) ECICA, if the parties choose ad hoc arbitration, they can designate the arbitrators, the seat of arbitration and the rules of the arbitral proceedings. By contrast, where the parties have neither agreed upon the rules of the arbitral proceedings nor appointed an arbitrator who could decide in this regard, the ECICA provides for either a special committee or the president of the respective chamber of commerce to do so.⁶⁷¹ On the one hand, this mechanism has facilitated arbitral proceedings between parties from Western and Eastern European countries; but in arbitral proceedings solely between parties from Western Member States, it has proved rather impractical and complicated.⁶⁷²

As a result, several of these (Western) Member States entered into a separate agreement which replaced Arts. IV (2)–(7) ECICA.⁶⁷³ Art. 1 of the so-called Paris Agreement reads as follows:

“If the arbitral Agreement contains no indication regarding the measures referred to in paragraph 1 of Article IV of the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration as a whole, or some of these measures, any difficulties arising with regard to the constitution or functioning of the arbitral tribunal shall be submitted to the decision of the competent authority at the request of the party instituting proceedings.”⁶⁷⁴

According to this agreement, the ‘competent authority’ is responsible for rendering assistance, rather than a chamber of commerce or a special committee. The Paris Agreement itself does not further specify the ‘competent authority’. Although the unofficial German version speaks of ‘state courts’, the official French and English texts refer to the ‘competent authority’.⁶⁷⁵ While the main goal of the ECICA was to simplify West-East arbitration and therefore to appoint special authorities (a chamber of commerce or a special committee) instead of state courts to grant assistance, the Paris Agreement changed this mechanism in relation to arbitral proceedings between its

670 HASCHER, n. 33. However, considering Art. IX (1) (b) ECICA, it becomes clear that the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award can be refused on the grounds of a violation of the right to present one’s case (*see also* Art. V (1) (b) NYC).

671 Art. IV (3) ECICA. The same procedure applies to cases where parties fail to appoint the arbitrators (Art. IV (2) ECICA).

672 PITKOWITZ, 96.

673 Agreement Relating to Application of the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (1962). Except the Republic of Moldova, which joined the agreement in 1998, all other Member States are Western European countries (Austria, Belgium, Denmark, France, Germany, Italy and Luxembourg).

674 Art. 1, para. 2 Paris Agreement.

675 STEINBRÜCK, 69 et seq.

Member States.⁶⁷⁶ This historical background seems to indicate that the rationale behind the Paris Agreement was to shift the competence of either the chamber of commerce or a special committee back to the state courts as the authorities responsible for rendering assistance.⁶⁷⁷

In sum, both the ECICA and the Paris Agreement foresee the possibility for authorities to render assistance during the arbitral proceedings—but nothing more. The extent to which these authorities will or must grant assistance remains unclear. In addition, the international jurisdiction is not regulated. Therefore, both the ECICA and the Paris Agreement merely confirm that there are some situations in which court assistance may be needed and therefore provide mechanisms to resolve the issue, without regulating much more. To interpret this as an obligation to effectively support the arbitral tribunal would thus be too far-fetched.

3. European Evidence Regulation

As regards evidence, in contrast to the ECICA and the Paris Agreement, the EER is not only newer, but also more specific.⁶⁷⁸ It entered into force in 2004 and applies directly between all 28 EU Member States, except Denmark.⁶⁷⁹ As regards Switzerland, it is thus not applicable.⁶⁸⁰ As between the 28 EU Member States, the EER replaces the HEC.⁶⁸¹ The EER allows the courts of one Member State either to submit evidence requests to the competent court in another Member State where the evidence is located or to take evidence directly in that Member State.⁶⁸² Regarding the applicability of the EER to arbitral proceedings, the discussion centres on the term ‘court’ in Art. 1 EER—referring to the authority which can submit an evidence request. As with the term ‘judicial authority’ within the HEC, the prevailing view among authors of legal doctrine is that an arbitral tribunal cannot fulfil the requirements of a court in the sense of the EER.⁶⁸³ Consequently, in order to obtain evidence

⁶⁷⁶ HASCHER, n. 38; STEINBRÜCK, 68 et seqq.

⁶⁷⁷ HASCHER, n. 95; STEINBRÜCK, 69 et seq.

⁶⁷⁸ SCHÜTZE, *Rechtsverfolgung*, n. 317 et seqq.

⁶⁷⁹ See the current status.

⁶⁸⁰ However, the EER can be still useful in situations where Switzerland makes an evidence request according to the HEC in a Member State of both the HEC and the EER. In this situation, the requested court could make further requests with the help of the EER (KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 307 et seq.).

⁶⁸¹ Art. 21 (i) EER; EER Report (2007), 2.

⁶⁸² Art. 1 EER.

⁶⁸³ See p. 120 *supra*; SCHOIBL, 521 et seq.; MüKO-RAUSCHER, Art. 1 EER, n. 1; Rauscher-VON HEIN, Art. 1 EER, n. 9 with further references; KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 303 with further references; EER Study (2007), 18, 102.

abroad, an arbitral tribunal must take the indirect route of seeking assistance from a national court, which will then act according to the mechanism set out in the EER by either submitting a request to the competent foreign court or directly taking evidence in the respective Member State.⁶⁸⁴

So far, there have been no cases in which an arbitral tribunal has used the EER and submitted an evidence request directly. Nonetheless, Knöfel suggests the EER's direct applicability in order to bypass the lengthy and cumbersome process of indirect court assistance in the taking of evidence.⁶⁸⁵ In this respect, he proposes—in keeping with his arguments as regards the HEC—that the term ‘court’ in Art. 1 EER should be interpreted functionally, and consequently that arbitral tribunals should fall under the scope of Art. 1 EER.⁶⁸⁶ One must admit that the direct applicability of the EER to arbitral proceedings would indeed contribute to their effectiveness. In contrast to the HEC, which specifies no express timeframe for responding to evidence requests, the EER states that they must be executed without delay or at the latest within 90 days of receipt.⁶⁸⁷ What is more, subject to the law of the Member State in which the evidence is located, the arbitral tribunal can ask that the taking of evidence take place according to the procedural rules as specified in the arbitration agreement (e.g. cross-examination).⁶⁸⁸ Finally, if the law of the respective Member State so provides, the parties can be present when the evidence is taken or can ask to take evidence directly in another Member State.⁶⁸⁹

In summary, although the EER's direct applicability to arbitral proceedings would facilitate the taking of evidence in international contexts, most authors deny such a possibility due to the clear wording of ‘courts of a Member State’.⁶⁹⁰ Still, in light of the soaring popularity of international arbitration, the EER should be available not only for state courts of Member States, but also for international arbitral tribunals. Instead of interpreting the term

684 KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 305. For the equivalent procedure under the HEC, see p. 118 *supra*.

685 KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 305.

686 *Ibid.*, 306 et seq.; see in this respect e.g. § 1055 CCP DE and Art. 387 CCP CH (as regards domestic arbitration), which give arbitral awards the same effect as final and binding court judgments.

687 Art. 10(1) EER. However, one should be aware that the time limit of 90 days increasingly seems to cause trouble in practice—see EER Impact Assessment (2018), 42 et seqq.; (EER Report (2007), 3; EER Study (2007), 40).

688 Art. 10(3) EER; see also the possibility of using video and conference calls (Art. 10(4) EER).

689 Arts. 11(1) and 17 EER. The direct taking of evidence is only be performed on a voluntary basis without the need of coercive measures (Art. 17(2) EER).

690 See also KNÖFEL, *Judicial Assistance*, 305, with further references in fn 148.

‘court’ too broadly, the EU could thus explicitly include arbitral tribunals in the EER’s scope of application in a future amendment. Still, at present, no obligation derives from the EER to support arbitral tribunals directly in the taking of evidence.

4. Result

Although the ECICA, the Paris Agreement and the EER all address court assistance, their actual significance varies considerably. On the one hand, while the ECICA and the Paris Agreement are still in force and applicable to arbitral proceedings in European Member States, they have nonetheless lost a great deal of their importance due to the improved relationships between Western and Eastern European countries. On the other hand, the EER—which could make a valuable contribution towards increasing the effectiveness of procedures for the taking of evidence in international arbitration—is not currently applicable to arbitration. It follows, therefore, that state courts have no obligation to directly assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, whether under the ECICA, the Paris Agreement or the EER.

E. Summary

This part of the chapter has discussed the possible existence of an obligation to assist arbitral tribunals based on superior law (i.e. either constitutional or international public law). As regards the Const. CH and the ECHR, it has been shown that they are concerned only that certain minimum procedural guarantees be observed during the arbitral proceedings. Furthermore, the NYC aims to uphold arbitration agreements and to facilitate the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards, but says little about the arbitral proceedings themselves (e.g. the taking of evidence). For their part, the ECICA and Paris Agreement merely confirm that in certain situations, state courts must support arbitral proceedings and nothing more. Finally, several arguments have been presented in favour of the direct applicability of the HEC and the EER to international arbitral proceedings, which unfortunately is not currently the case. In sum, no obligation to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence exists based on the Const. CH or international conventions, either European or universal. Whether state courts are obliged to assist international arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence is therefore a question of the respective national law and thus an issue of legal policy.⁶⁹¹

691 STEINBRÜCK, 89.

§ 5 Conclusion

The main focus of this chapter has been to provide the reader with a general understanding of court assistance in the taking of evidence in international arbitration. This has been done by exploring the subject from three different angles. While the first part focused on how this works in practice, the second part considered the legal bases and the intention of the parties. The third part then examined the possible existence of an obligation for courts to assist in the taking of evidence based on the Const. CH and international public law.

In the first part, in order to arrive at a general understanding of how state courts can support arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, the situations in which such support is needed and the means by which it is granted were discussed. In this regard, interim measures are central to temporarily protect the parties' rights from possible damage during the course of arbitration; while ordinary measures for the taking of evidence aim to establish the relevant facts of the case. The second part discussed the divergent perceptions of court assistance in general, and concerning the taking of evidence in particular, as either helpful assistance or disturbing intervention. The prevailing view in international arbitration seems to advocate a hands-off approach, setting strict standards regarding the involvement of state courts in arbitral proceedings and particularly in the taking of evidence. The UNCITRAL ML and (ad hoc and institutional) arbitration rules thus provide for court assistance in the taking of evidence, subject to the consent of the arbitral tribunal or even the adverse party. From the parties' point of view, court assistance in the taking of evidence not only is in line with the arbitration agreement, but will also reinforce the status of the arbitral tribunal and lead to a more substantiated arbitral award. As a result, it can truly be seen as assisting, rather than interfering in, the arbitration. The third and final part demonstrated that there is no obligation to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence under either Swiss constitutional or international public law. The decision of whether and to what extent the courts of a jurisdiction will grant assistance in the taking evidence is therefore an issue of legal policy and depends on the laws of the respective country.

From an arbitration practitioner's perspective, the lack of international common practice is, to put it bluntly, unsatisfactory. As pointed out (*see p. 2 supra*), indirect court assistance in international arbitral proceedings is in most cases not an option, due to the lengthy and cumbersome process involved. Parties and arbitrators have therefore a keen interest in being able to resort directly to foreign state courts in order to obtain evidence. As views on how international arbitral tribunals should be supported vary among coun-

tries, it is indeed difficult to make general statements and suggestions. However, since this book aims to analyse the status quo concerning court assistance in the taking of evidence in aid of international arbitral proceedings in Switzerland, a comparative analysis of several jurisdictions seems useful in this regard. Thus, the focus shall now shift to various other countries and their respective approaches—whether liberal or conservative—to the issue at hand. This comparative study will inform the analysis of the status quo in Switzerland. The following chapter therefore concentrates on the legal bases and technical mechanisms on the one hand and on the respective legislator's intention to offer court assistance in the taking of evidence on the other hand.

Chapter 7:

Comparative Analysis

§ 1 Introduction

Since the theoretical foundations of court assistance in the taking of evidence in international arbitration have been set out in the previous chapter, this chapter concentrates on more practical aspects. The extent to which state courts grant assistance varies significantly from jurisdiction to jurisdiction; from a practitioner's point of view, it is therefore crucial to understand these differences and provide for them in the tactical strategies of a case.⁶⁹² In addition, this chapter lays the groundwork for the analysis of the situation in Switzerland that follows. This chapter therefore outlines how court assistance in the taking of evidence in aid of international arbitral proceedings is provided in several key forums for arbitration: France, England, the USA and Germany.⁶⁹³ Although these countries are best known for their arbitration-friendly stance, the outcome as regards court assistance in the taking of evidence is anything but uniform. Instead of merely listing various country reports or even making a comprehensive comparison, the following remarks concentrate on elaborating key evidentiary issues.

The first and most important issue concerns the question of whether the respective jurisdictions directly grant assistance in the taking of evidence to international arbitral tribunals—that is, without making a detour via international judicial assistance (*see* p. 118 et seqq. *supra*). The second issue relates to the competence to make an evidence request and the possibility to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence. The third issue focuses on the scope of evidence sought and the law according to which evidence may be sought, and from whom (i.e. the parties to the arbitration and/or third parties). It will be examined whether evidence can be obtained only according

⁶⁹² DUPERYRON, 472.

⁶⁹³ Although it is not (yet) considered one of the most popular forums for arbitration, recent ICC statistics have shown the importance of Germany not only in terms of arbitrators and parties to arbitration, but also regarding the number of disputes filed in Germany under the ICC Rules; for a short outline how court assistance in taking evidence is modeled in the USA, England and Wales as well as France, *see also* BRADSHAW, 639 et seqq.

to the respective *lex arbitri* or whether national civil procedure rules or even foreign forms of evidentiary procedure are also applicable. A section on the target of evidence will further show how a party or third party can defend itself against an evidence request. The fourth issue focuses on the competence of the *juge d'appui*—that is, the judge of support in the country in which assistance is sought. In this regard, crucial aspects such as the scope of discretion in general, and how far the *juge d'appui* can examine the legitimacy of the evidence request and the arbitration agreement, will be addressed. As a fifth issue, in order to avoid unnecessarily lengthening the arbitral proceedings, it is important to know whether the decision of the *juge d'appui* as regards an evidence request can be challenged and if so, on what grounds.

§ 2 Germany

A. Introduction

Since the fundamental amendments to the German *lex arbitri* in 1998—namely, the 10th book of the CCP DE (§ 1025 et seqq.)—arbitration in Germany has been facilitated in many ways and the country has become an increasingly attractive forum for international arbitration.⁶⁹⁴ The new provisions were largely an adoption of the UNCITRAL ML and therefore strive to make Germany an attractive seat of arbitration by strengthening the status of arbitral tribunals and facilitating cooperation between arbitral tribunals and state courts.⁶⁹⁵ In this regard, and as stated in the UNCITRAL ML, § 1026 CCP DE provides that a state court may take action only insofar as provided by the 10th book of the CCP DE.⁶⁹⁶ Because Germany—unlike Switzerland—does not have separate statutes for domestic and international arbitration, § 1025–1066 CCP DE are the main source regarding arbitral proceedings.⁶⁹⁷ Nonetheless, the 10th book of the CCP DE sometimes refers to other provisions on German court litigation in other parts of the CCP DE.

⁶⁹⁴ KREINDLER et al., n. 1.6 et seqq.; Balthasar-BALTHASAR, 379, n. 1; *see also* the statistical data of DIS arbitration in Germany.

⁶⁹⁵ Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 22 et seq., 34; KREINDLER et al., n. 1.32; WOLFF, 243; MüKo-MÜNCH, Vorbemerkungen zu § 1025, n. 175.

⁶⁹⁶ Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML; *see also* S. 1(c) EAA 1996.

⁶⁹⁷ MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE, n. 3 et seqq.; KREINDLER et al., n. 1.36.

B. Legal Bases

Like many other *leges arbitri*, the CCP DE provides for court assistance in the taking of evidence in aid of arbitral proceedings. § 1050 CCP DE reads as follows:

- “(1) The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a court assistance in taking evidence or performance of other judicial acts which the arbitral tribunal is not empowered to carry out.
- (2) Unless it regards the application as inadmissible, the court shall execute the request according to its rules on taking evidence or other judicial acts.
- (3) The arbitrators are entitled to participate in any judicial taking of evidence and to ask questions.”

The competent court for assistance in the taking of evidence is the local court (*Amtsgericht*) in whose district the evidence request will be carried out—that is, the place of residence of the witness or third party.⁶⁹⁸ In proceedings before a local court under § 1050 CCP DE, the parties need not be represented by a lawyer admitted to the German bar.⁶⁹⁹ This can be especially relevant and beneficial in international arbitral proceedings with lawyers from foreign jurisdictions.⁷⁰⁰

Although almost all provisions of the 10th book of the CCP DE apply only to arbitral proceedings whose seat is located in Germany, there are certain exceptions.⁷⁰¹ According to § 1025(2) CCP DE, court assistance in the taking of evidence is also granted to arbitral tribunals whose seat has not yet been determined, as well as to international arbitral tribunals with their seat outside Germany. In this regard, the CCP DE goes even further than the UNCITRAL ML and can be considered as a ‘deliberate German offer of cooperation to international arbitration’.⁷⁰² To this day, such provisions are rare in *leges*

⁶⁹⁸ § 1062(4) CCP DE; Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 64; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 11; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1050 CCP DE n. 13; RÜTZEL et al., 162.

⁶⁹⁹ § 1062(4) CCP DE i.c.w. § 78(1) CCP DE.

⁷⁰⁰ BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, § 1050 CCP DE, n. 1; BeckKuKo-HARTMANN, § 1050 CCP DE n. 4; RÜTZEL et al., 162.

⁷⁰¹ § 1025(1) CCP DE.

⁷⁰² Art. 1(2) UNCITRAL ML; WOLFF, 244; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 28; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 12; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 33; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 n. 3 CCP DE; BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 3.2; STEINBRÜCK, 386 et seq.; RÜTZEL et al., 161.

arbitri, so the broadened scope of § 1050 CCP DE is thus truly in the interests of international arbitration.⁷⁰³ It remains to be seen whether other countries will be influenced by § 1025(2) read with § 1050 CCP DE and adopt the same approach. So far, only Austria has implemented an almost identical provision based on the model of the CCP DE.⁷⁰⁴

C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance

1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal

As stated in Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, according to § 1050 (1) CCP DE, the approval of the arbitral tribunal is necessary in order to resort to state courts for assistance in the taking of evidence.⁷⁰⁵ This strengthens the position of the arbitral tribunal as the authority in charge of the arbitral proceedings. In addition, this provision aims to prevent possible delaying tactics of the parties.⁷⁰⁶ Thus, if the arbitral tribunal considers an evidence request to be irrelevant or inadmissible, it can refuse consent to resort to state courts.⁷⁰⁷ In this regard, one could argue that this risks violating the right to be heard.⁷⁰⁸ This would indeed be the case if the arbitral tribunal ignored an evidence request completely or denied it without reasonable grounds. However, as long as the arbitral tribunal—which is obliged to treat the parties equally and observe the right to be heard—respects the mandatory provisions of the CCP DE, the parties' agreement on the procedural rules and the optional provisions of law, it is at liberty to conduct the arbitral proceedings at its full discretion.⁷⁰⁹ Consequently, as long as it acts within these boundaries, there is no risk of violating the right to be heard.⁷¹⁰ If a party nonetheless wants to take action against a refusal to resort to state courts, parties can either challenge this decision directly or challenge the arbitral award if the arbitral tribunal has denied the request without justification and this denial has in some way influenced the arbitral award.⁷¹¹

703 See e.g. similar provisions in S. 2 (3) i.c.w. S. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 (p. 169 *infra*).

704 § 577 (2) i.c.w. § 602 CCP AU; SCHUMACHER, n. 165 fn 260.

705 See also Art. 182 (2) PILA CH; S. 43 (2) EAA 1996; SCHMIDT-AHRENDTS/DE JONG, 285.

706 Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 51.

707 Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZ, § 1050 CCP DE n. 2; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE, n. 18; STEINBRÜCK, 388; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 38; HK-SAENGER, § 1050 n 2.

708 MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE, n. 18.

709 § 1042(1) and (4) CCP DE; Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 46 et seqq.

710 MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE n. 18.

711 § 1059 (1) (d) CCP DE; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 38; see p. 146 et seqq. *infra*.

In addition to the possibility for a party to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence, the arbitral tribunal itself can make an evidence request if it deems this appropriate in order to establish the facts of the case.⁷¹² As a consequence, § 1050 (3) CCP DE entitles the arbitral tribunal to participate in the taking of evidence and to ask questions.⁷¹³ This right, which is not included in the UNCITRAL ML, allows the arbitral tribunal to get a first-hand impression of the taking of evidence.⁷¹⁴ Therefore, arbitrators must be notified in advance when the taking of evidence takes place.⁷¹⁵ Still, they are at liberty to make use of their right and there is no obligation to participate.⁷¹⁶

2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

Since arbitration is a field predominantly influenced by the parties' discretion, one might ask whether the assistance of state courts may be excluded by the parties. As stated in the previous chapter (*see* p. 100 et seqq. *supra*), court assistance in the taking of evidence is in most cases in the interests of the parties. However, the parties might still want to exclude assistance in the taking of evidence through state courts altogether—for instance, for time, cost or confidentiality reasons.⁷¹⁷ In legal doctrine, in the absence of an explicit legal basis, it is controversial whether a complete waiver of § 1050 CCP DE is in fact possible. Schlosser takes the view that although the parties cannot renounce the rights as foreseen in § 1050 CCP DE in advance, in the sense of a total waiver of minimum legal protection, a partial waiver of the right to resort to state courts should nevertheless be possible.⁷¹⁸

By contrast, Münch suggests that because assistance according to § 1050 CCP DE serves the interests of the parties, they are also at liberty to renounce this assistance altogether.⁷¹⁹ This applies even more so, he argues, because the arbitral tribunal must act first and foremost according to the procedural rules that the parties have agreed upon; only in the absence of such rules may

712 § 1050 (1) and § 1042 (4) CCP DE.

713 In addition to the arbitral tribunal, parties are also entitled to participate in the taking of evidence (*see* § 357 CCP DE).

714 Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 51; WOLFF, 266; STEINBRÜCK, 404 et seqq.

715 SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 17; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 18; RÜTZEL et al., 162.

716 § 1042 (4) 2nd sentence CCP DE; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1050 CCP DE n. 34; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 17 et seq.; BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 15; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 30.

717 STEINBRÜCK, 411.

718 Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 3; STEINBRÜCK, 409 et seqq.

719 MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE n. 12.

the arbitral tribunal decide at its own discretion.⁷²⁰ Similarly, Wolff and Schütze state that if parties can exclude certain types of evidence (e.g. witnesses examination), they should also be able to exclude assistance from state courts in taking evidence.⁷²¹

This view deserves approval and is confirmed by considering the issue from the basic concept of arbitration: namely, to provide a private and consensual legal sphere through which parties can obtain ‘a final and binding decision on a dispute ..., without reference to a court of law’.⁷²² If this applies to arbitration in general, it must also apply to the process of taking evidence. Furthermore, one should bear in mind that if the parties waive the possibility to resort to state courts in one arbitration, this does not preclude them from seeking such assistance again in another. Consequently, the exclusion of § 1050 CCP DE is always temporary and not a permanent renouncement of minimum principles of legal protection.⁷²³

D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target

1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement

Before exploring the scope of evidence available pursuant to the CCP DE, the respective state court must examine whether the parties have explicitly excluded certain evidence.⁷²⁴ If the parties, as previously discussed (*see* p.137 et seq. *supra*), can exclude court assistance as a whole, this also applies to different types of evidence.⁷²⁵ For instance, parties may exclude all evidence other than documentary evidence.⁷²⁶ This can be done either by explicitly excluding discovery/disclosure proceedings in the arbitration agreement or by way of reference to institutional arbitration or the IBA Rules.⁷²⁷ Still, if evidence is gathered contrary to a party agreement, this serves as a reason to annul the arbitral award.⁷²⁸ Most often, however, an arbitral tribunal will not introduce evidence which was gathered against a contrary agreement between the parties.

⁷²⁰ §1050 (3) and (4) 1st sentence CCP DE.

⁷²¹ Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8; WOLFF, 256 et seq.

⁷²² BLACKABY et al., n. 1.04 et seq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 1.01 n. 3 et seqq.

⁷²³ STEINBRÜCK, 412.

⁷²⁴ §1042 (4) CCP DE; MüKo-Münch, § 1050 CCP DE n. 25; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 9; EBERL/EBERL, § 1n. 44; WOLFF, 262.

⁷²⁵ Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8.

⁷²⁶ *See* fn 139 *supra*.

⁷²⁷ *See e.g.* Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules; Art. 3(9) IBA Rules.

⁷²⁸ §1059 (2)(1.) (d) CCP DE.

2. Evidence According to the CCP DE

a. In General

According to §1050 CCP DE, parties may seek assistance in relation to either the taking of evidence or ‘other judicial acts’, such as the ordering of documents to be served by public notice or abroad.⁷²⁹ As regards the taking of evidence, the requested state court will carry out the request in accordance with its rules on taking evidence, unless it considers this inadmissible (*see* p. 140 et seqq. *infra*).⁷³⁰ Accordingly, all sorts of evidence can be sought under the CCP DE, such as examination of witnesses (§373 et seqq. CCP DE), parties (§ 445 et seqq. CCP DE) and experts (§ 402 et seqq. CCP DE); production of documents⁷³¹ (§142, § 415 et seqq. CCP DE); inspections (§ 371 et seqq. CCP DE); and the administration of oaths⁷³² (§ 391–393, § 410, § 478–484 CCP DE).⁷³³ The parties are entitled to participate in the taking of evidence.⁷³⁴

b. Independent Evidentiary Proceeding

As already discussed (*see* p. 87 et seq. *supra*), state courts and emergency arbitrators have parallel competence to order interim measures prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. However, because of the lack of coercive power, assistance from an emergency arbitrator is not always suitable in situations where the preservation of evidence is urgent and assistance from state courts is thus required. In such cases, §485 et seqq. CCP DE can prove very helpful. In circumstances where a party fears the potential destruction of evidence prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, §485 et seqq. CCP DE provides for a special procedure in the form of an ‘independent evidentiary proceeding’. Accordingly, and subject to the approval of the adverse

729 Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 51; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, §1050 CCP DE n. 1; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, §1050 CCP DE n. 2, 14; MüKo-MÜNCH, §1025 CCP DE n. 7; BeckOK-WILSKIE/MARKERT, §1050 CCP DE n. 3; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 3; EBERL/EBERL, §1 n. 34.

730 §1050(2) i.c.w. §355 et seqq. CCP DE. This is in line with Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML, according to which ‘the court may execute the request within its competence and according its rules on taking evidence’.

731 While §142 CCP DE concerns documents from third parties, §432 CCP DE allows state courts to order production of records or documents of public authorities in aid of arbitration.

732 Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, §1050 CCP DE n. 10; SCHAEFER, 536.

733 LACHMANN, n. 1621; EBERL/EBERL, §1 n. 30, 47; Zöller-GEIMER, §1050 CCP DE n. 8; HK-SAENGER, §1050 CCP DE n. 3; MüKo-MÜNCH, §1050 CCP DE n. 6; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, §1050 CCP DE n. 6; BeckOK-WILSKIE/MARKERT, §1050 CCP DE n. 4; Prüting/Gehrlein-PRÜTTING, §1050 CCP DE n. 2; RÜTZEL et al., 72 et seqq., 161.

734 §357 CCP DE; for the attendance of the arbitral tribunal, *see* §1050(3) CCP DE.

party, or in cases where there is a concern that evidence might be lost or will become difficult to use, a state court may order inspections, the examination of witnesses or the preparation of an expert review. Although the demarcation between measures in relation to the preservation of evidence as interim measures and ordinary measures for the taking of evidence is not always apparent, German legal doctrine considers preservation measures pursuant to § 485 et seqq. CCP DE as interim measures in the sense of § 1033 CCP DE.⁷³⁵ This provision reads as follows:

“An arbitration agreement does not rule out that a court may order, before or after arbitration proceedings have commenced, and upon a party having filed a corresponding petition, that a provisional measure or one serving to provide security be taken with regard to the subject matter of the dispute being dealt with in the arbitration proceedings.”

The independent evidentiary proceeding should therefore be distinguished from the assistance available under § 1050 CCP DE, where temporal urgency is not the major concern. Regardless of whether the arbitral tribunal has already been established, the preservation of evidence can be an issue in the arbitral proceedings themselves. Thus, because it is considered an interim measure, an independent evidentiary proceeding is also possible during the arbitral proceedings—that is, once the arbitral tribunal has been established.⁷³⁶

3. Foreign Types of Evidence

While the types of evidence that may be sought in accordance with the CCP DE usually cause no problems, it remains doubtful whether a German court could nonetheless apply foreign forms of taking evidence. According to a minority of authors, if the parties in an international arbitration agree on cross-examination or document production in accordance with the IBA Rules, the German courts must apply these foreign forms of taking evidence without further ado.⁷³⁷

⁷³⁵ OLG Brandenburg, 16 Feb. 2011, 13 U 11/10, cons. II, 3; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 12; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1033 CCP DE n. 7; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1033 CCP DE n. 1; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1033 CCP DE n. 5; Zöller-GEIMER, § 1033 CCP DE n. 9; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1033 CCP DE n. 2; Prütting/Gehrlein-PRÜTTING, § 1033 CCP DE n. 2; for a different view, see LACHMANN, n. 2892.

⁷³⁶ On the question of whether the approval of the arbitral tribunal to initiate an independent evidentiary proceeding is indeed necessary after the establishment of the arbitral tribunal, see Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1033 CCP DE n. 1; STEINBRÜCK, 407 et seq.; STEINBRÜCK, Note on OLG Düsseldorf, 7 Feb. 2008, I-20 W 152/07, in: 8 Iprax 424 et seqq. (2010); for a different view see MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1033 CCP DE n. 8 et seq.; VARGA, 249.

⁷³⁷ LACHMANN, n. 1636; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 8.

From the German perspective, there are several arguments against this liberal approach. First of all, and quite obviously, it is against the plain wording of § 1050 (2) CCP DE.⁷³⁸ In addition, § 1026 CCP DE expressly states that state courts may take action only in accordance with the provisions of the 10th book of the CCP DE. The German courts are therefore not bound by any internal agreements between the parties on the arbitral proceedings in general and the taking of evidence in particular.⁷³⁹ Nonetheless, if the parties have explicitly excluded certain types of evidence which are permissible under the CCP DE, this choice must be respected.⁷⁴⁰ Second, although foreign types of evidence are in some cases in the interests of the parties, the intention behind § 1050 (2) CCP DE was to avoid broad US-style discovery proceedings.⁷⁴¹ Because evidence often belongs to third parties, § 1050 (2) CCP DE protects these third parties from unwelcome foreign intrusion.⁷⁴² Although it may at times be accurate to interpret § 1050 CCP DE broadly in the interests of the parties, this is certainly not the case here.

In contrast to the aforementioned arguments against foreign types of evidence, Steinbrück suggests a pragmatic middle way to handle this issue. Although the CCP DE does not provide for any foreign forms of evidence, he argues, German courts ought to transform these measures until they conform to the CCP DE, subject to the German *ordre public*.⁷⁴³ As a sort of compromise, this approach still avoids US-style discovery, but at the same time allows the competent *juge d'appui* to examine the extent to which the foreign form of evidence can be transformed and adapted to proceedings pursuant to the CCP DE.⁷⁴⁴ This not only is in the interests of international arbitration, but also promotes Germany as a seat of arbitration. Because this view is not substantiated by law, it remains doubtful as to how German judges of support will react when confronted with an evidence request containing foreign types of evidence, such as cross-examination or the examination of a party

738 § 1050 (2) CCP DE: Unless it regards the application as inadmissible, the court shall execute the request according to its rules on taking evidence or other judicial acts.

739 STEINBRÜCK, 397.

740 § 1042(3) CCP DE; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 8; SCHÜTZE, *Ermessensgrenzen*, 3; see also SCHMIDT-AHRENDTS/DE JONG, who suggest the amendment of § 1050 to ensure that German courts take evidence only in accordance with the agreement of the parties—for example, that witnesses be cross-examined instead of only questioned by the judge and the arbitrator(s), respectively (285).

741 Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996), 51.

742 STEINBRÜCK, 398.

743 *Ibid.*, 404.

744 *Ibid.*, 403.

as a witness.⁷⁴⁵ So far, few relevant decisions of German courts have been rendered in this regard and it remains to be seen how widely § 1050 CCP DE will be interpreted.⁷⁴⁶

4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence

Besides the aforementioned assistance in the taking of evidence, state courts can provide assistance by requesting foreign state courts to gather evidence by means of international judicial assistance (e.g. through the HEC or the EER).⁷⁴⁷ However, this course of action is unpopular in most situations, due to the lengthy and costly process involved. Since these international treaties are not open for direct use in arbitral proceedings, the best alternative is to approach a state court directly in the jurisdiction in which the evidence is located.

5. Target of Evidence

As regards the target of an evidence request, a distinction must be made between the parties to the arbitration and third parties.⁷⁴⁸ If a party refuses to reveal evidence in its control, state courts cannot force the reluctant party to reveal it; but this will be considered by the arbitral tribunal when assessing the evidence.⁷⁴⁹ In this regard, possible privilege must be taken into account before drawing any adverse inference.⁷⁵⁰

The situation is different regarding third parties—for example, if there is a request for document production or their examination as witnesses. Under the CCP DE, such a request will be granted only if it could reasonably be expected by the respective third party or to the extent that such party is not entitled to refuse to testify.⁷⁵¹ Accordingly, third parties can refuse to reveal documents or to give testimony based on personal privilege (e.g. a personal relationship with one of the parties as spouse or fiancé) or factual privilege

⁷⁴⁵ *Ibid.*; see also SCHMIDT-AHRENDTS/DE JONG, suggesting that in order to facilitate the arbitral proceedings and ensure that the respective state court judge does not have to take evidence in a way that he or she is not normally entitled nor accustomed to, witnesses should be ordered to testify directly before the arbitral tribunal (286).

⁷⁴⁶ RÜTZEL et al., 163.

⁷⁴⁷ See p. 118 et seqq. *supra*; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 23 et seqq.; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 37; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 31; WOLFF, 253; VARGA, 247 et seq. In Germany, the HEC entered into force in 1979 (*see* the current status).

⁷⁴⁸ VON ENZBERG/ROHRSEN, 14 et seq.

⁷⁴⁹ BeckOK-VON SELLE, § 142 CCP DE n. 17; RÜTZEL et al., 162.

⁷⁵⁰ RÜTZEL et al., 80, 163 et seq.

⁷⁵¹ § 142 et seqq. CCP DE i.c.w. § 385-390 CCP DE; WOLFF, 266; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 9 et seq.; RÜTZEL et al., 80 et seqq.

(e.g. if a document or testimony would reveal a technical or trade secret).⁷⁵² Refusing to produce a document or give testimony without sufficient grounds can lead to fines or even coercive detention.⁷⁵³ However, if the respective state court forces a third party to produce evidence, this decision can be challenged by means of a miscellaneous appeal (*sofortige Beschwerde*) to the regional court (*Landgericht*).⁷⁵⁴

E. Competence of the *Juge d'Appui*

1. Scope of Discretion

Regardless of whether the conditions pursuant to § 1050 CCP DE are fulfilled, the respective *juge d'appui* has no choice but to grant or deny assistance.⁷⁵⁵ For instance, there is no discretion to grant assistance in cases where the conditions are not met because of an inadmissible requested method of taking evidence.⁷⁵⁶ Furthermore, as a basic principle of international court assistance, state courts will not examine the usefulness, appropriateness or relevance of an evidence request. Only the arbitral tribunal is entitled to do so.⁷⁵⁷ Thus, if the arbitral tribunal has explicitly requested to examine a witness under oath, the *juge d'appui* seized is not at liberty to deem this request unnecessary because the witness statement is considered reliable; unless, of course, it is legally not permissible.⁷⁵⁸

In contrast, if the arbitral tribunal does not specify the manner in which a witness should be examined and thus does not exclude the administration of oath, the *juge d'appui* can decide freely whether an oath is necessary.⁷⁵⁹ After the evidence has been taken, the result will be introduced into the arbitral proceedings. The assessment of evidence and its consequences (i.e. whether a fact is proved) forms part of the arbitral proceedings and not of the

752 § 383 and § 384 as well as the exception in § 385 CCP DE. In addition to this civil procedural rules, German criminal law can impose sanctions on members of certain professions revealing client information in the context of their profession (§ 203 CC DE); see also RÜTZEL et al., 80 et seqq.

753 § 390 CCP DE.

754 § 567(1)(2.) CCP DE.

755 ZÖLLER-GEIMER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 6; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 44; HK-SAENGER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 5.

756 § 1050(2) CCP DE.

757 § 1042(4) 2nd sentence CCP DE; MüKO-MÜNCH, § 1050 CCP DE n. 24; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 8.

758 Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 13; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 4; BeckOK-WILSKIE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 9; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 16.

759 Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 13.

state court proceedings pursuant to § 1050 CCP DE.⁷⁶⁰ As a consequence, only the assessment of evidence which is taken by a state court is part of the arbitral proceedings, and not the taking of evidence itself.⁷⁶¹

2. Principle of Subsidiarity

According to § 1050 (1) CCP DE, the respective *juge d'appui* will assist in the taking of evidence only if the arbitral tribunal is not empowered to take the evidence itself.⁷⁶² The extent to which the arbitral tribunal must explain why it cannot take the evidence itself remains contentious. On the one hand, it is obvious that if the arbitral tribunal is legally authorised to obtain evidence and can do so without further ado, state courts cannot be approached for assistance.⁷⁶³ Thus, arbitral tribunals cannot resort to state courts merely because they consider it inconvenient to take the evidence themselves.⁷⁶⁴

Situations in which the arbitral tribunal could act autonomously, but only with a disproportionately significant effort, are more problematic.⁷⁶⁵ For example, a third-party witness located abroad may likely refuse to testify.⁷⁶⁶ Consequently, because § 1050 CCP DE does not address this situation and § 1026 CCP DE specifies that state courts can take action only where provided so explicitly by law, the arbitral tribunal will first have to try to examine the witness at his or her place of residence. Obviously, the chances of success are very low, so the question arises as to whether § 1050 CCP DE may be applied by analogy.⁷⁶⁷

⁷⁶⁰ Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 11; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 50; HK-SAENGER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 7; WOLFF, 267.

⁷⁶¹ Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8.

⁷⁶² § 1050 (1) CCP DE.

⁷⁶³ SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 4; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 7; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 4.

⁷⁶⁴ Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, § 1050 CCP DE n. 7.

⁷⁶⁵ Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 11; Zöller-GEIMER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8; HK-SAENGER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 4; RÜTZEL et al., 162 et seq.

⁷⁶⁶ WOLFF, 254; MüKO-MÜNCH, § 1025 CCP DE, n. 26; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 42.

⁷⁶⁷ Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 11; BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 3; for a different view, see LACHMANN, n. 1627. He argues that because of considerable demarcation difficulties in deciding at which stage one can presume that the effort of the arbitral tribunal is too significant to take evidence, § 1050 CCP DE should be applied only *stricto sensu*—that is, exclusively if the arbitral tribunal is not legally empowered to take evidence.

By filling this legal gap, one must consider the fact that § 1026 CCP, like its counterpart in Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, strives to limit court intervention, but not possible assistance by state courts.⁷⁶⁸ Applying § 1050 CCP DE by analogy thus would allow not for additional intervention by state courts, but rather for assistance which goes only slightly further than the strict wording of § 1050 CCP DE.⁷⁶⁹ This argument is supported by the intention of § 1050 CCP DE as a whole—namely, to assist arbitral tribunals where they are unable to effectively conduct the taking of evidence. According to Hartmann, § 1050 CCP DE should be interpreted and applied broadly and thus encompass cases in which the gathering of evidence would be disproportionately burdensome for the arbitral tribunal.⁷⁷⁰ This is also in the interests of the parties that wish to gather such evidence, regardless of whether the state court seized acts because the arbitral tribunal cannot legally gather evidence or because it is almost impossible to do so.⁷⁷¹ Apart from these arguments, there is no hint that the German legislature deliberately intended to exclude such situations from the scope of application of § 1050 CCP DE. All in all, there are several good reasons to apply § 1050 CCP DE by analogy in circumstances where it would involve a disproportionately significant effort for the arbitral tribunal to gather the evidence itself.

3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement

Because § 1050 CCP DE serves only to assist arbitral proceedings, one might ask whether the *juge d'appui* has any scope to examine the validity of the arbitration agreement. This question has been subject to controversial discussions in German legal doctrine. A minority of authors argue that the validity of the arbitration agreement can be examined only on a *prima facie* basis—that is, a motion under § 1050 CCP DE must be denied if the arbitration agreement is obviously invalid.⁷⁷² However, the prevailing view suggests that since the arbitral tribunal is competent to decide on the validity of the arbitration agreement and therefore on its own jurisdiction (competence-competence), state courts are not entitled to review the validity of the arbitration agree-

768 UNCITRAL, (2012), Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML n. 1.

769 STEINBRÜCK, 394; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 42.

770 KuKo-HARTMANN, § 1050 CCP DE n. 1.

771 STEINBRÜCK, 394.

772 SCHWAB/WALTER, § 1050 CCP DE, n. 10; LACHMANN, n. 1634; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE, n. 13; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE, n. 5; STEINBRÜCK, 419 et seq.; HK-SAENGER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 6.

ment under §1050 CCP DE.⁷⁷³ If there is a dispute as regards the arbitration agreement, the parties can challenge the competence of the arbitral tribunal according to §1040(3) CCP DE. Allowing for a full review of the arbitration agreement in proceedings pursuant to §1050 CCP DE would indeed circumvent §1040(3) CCP DE.⁷⁷⁴ This competence is reserved for the higher regional court and not the local court, pursuant to §1050 CCP DE.⁷⁷⁵ Apart from that, the arbitration agreement can of course be examined in the context of the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award under the NYC, but not during court assistance in the taking of evidence.⁷⁷⁶

F. Appellate Remedies

If all conditions under §1050 CCP DE are fulfilled, the *juge d'appui* will render his or her decision in the form of a court order (*Beschluss*).⁷⁷⁷ In cases where only one party has made an evidence request, the right to be heard must be granted to the adverse party prior to rendering a decision.⁷⁷⁸ Reading the CCP DE in its strictest sense, a remedy against an order pursuant to §1050 CCP DE is not possible.⁷⁷⁹ The intention is clear: to keep state court intervention to a minimum and thus simplify and speed up the arbitral proceedings.⁷⁸⁰ Nonetheless, it is widely accepted that parties can initiate an immediate miscellaneous appeal (*sofortige Beschwerde*) to the regional court (*Landgericht*)

⁷⁷³ §1040(1) CCP DE; MüKo-MÜNCH, §1050 CCP DE n. 21; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, §1050 CCP DE, n. 6; EBERL/EBERL, §1 n. 43; Zöller-GEIMER, §1050 CCP DE n. 6; BeckOK-WILSKIE/MARKERT, §1050 CCP DE n. 10; BeckKuKo-HARTMANN, §1050 CCP DE n. 4; Wieczorek/Schütze-SCHÜTZE, §1033 CCP DE n. 23. SCHÜTZE distinguishes between situations where a motion under §1050 CCP DE is initiated by a party or the arbitral tribunal itself. While in the first case an examination is possible, it does not apply to the latter situation because of competence-competence in accordance with §1040 CCP DE.

⁷⁷⁴ For another view see Steinbrück, 420; WOLFF, 260.

⁷⁷⁵ §1062(1)(2.) CCP DE i.c.w. §1059(2)(1.)(a) and (c) CCP DE.

⁷⁷⁶ Art. III(3) and V(1)(a) NYC.

⁷⁷⁷ §1063(1) CCP DE.

⁷⁷⁸ Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, §1050 CCP DE n. 8. Therefore, in order to avoid lengthening state court proceedings, the parties should make an evidence request together if they agree that certain evidence should be gathered or the arbitral tribunal itself initiates a proceeding pursuant to §1050 CCP DE (MüKo-MÜNCH, §1050 CCP DE n. 28).

⁷⁷⁹ §1065(1) i.c.w. §1062(1) CCP DE *e contrario*.

⁷⁸⁰ BeckOK-WILSKIE/MARKERT, §1065 CCP DE n. 1.

if a motion under § 1050 CCP DE is denied.⁷⁸¹ In contrast, there is no remedy against a court order granting the motion.⁷⁸² This follows from the fact that an immediate miscellaneous appeal is possible only against a decision denying a request, not granting one.⁷⁸³

As previously discussed (*see* p. 143 *supra*), the proceeding under § 1050 CCP DE should be viewed separately from the arbitral proceedings in which the evidence which has been taken by the state court will be assessed. That is why in general, violations of procedural rules during the taking of evidence in accordance with § 1050 CCP DE cannot be challenged before the arbitral tribunal. Nevertheless, such violations can be the subject of a challenge to the arbitral award if there is a connection between the violation and the reasons for seeking annulment of the arbitral award pursuant to § 1059 (2) CCP DE.⁷⁸⁴ An example is a situation where the *juge d'appui* orders cross-examination of a witness, even though this has been explicitly excluded by the parties.⁷⁸⁵ If one can demonstrate that there is a separate agreement between the parties which has been violated, and it may be assumed that this violation influenced the arbitral award, the higher regional court (*Oberlandesgericht*) may annul it.⁷⁸⁶

Up to 2011, there seem to have been no cases in which arbitral awards were set aside because the arbitral tribunal disregarded an explicit agreement between the parties. However, this changed in 2011 with a decision of the Higher Regional Court of Frankfurt am Main.⁷⁸⁷ The court reasoned that procedural orders which have been expressly approved by the parties and which amend or change the agreed procedural rules are to be seen as a separate agreement between the parties.⁷⁸⁸ In the respective case, the arbitral

⁷⁸¹ § 567 (1) (2.) CCP DE; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 17; EBERL/EBERL, § 1 n. 46; BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 14; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 6; Prütting/Gehrlein-PRÜTTING, § 1050 CCP DE n. 3; for another view *see* MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1050 CCP DE n. 28. He refers to the competence of the Higher Regional Court (*Oberlandesgericht*) according to § 159 CCA DE.

⁷⁸² SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 13; WOLFF, 264.

⁷⁸³ § 567 (1.) (2.) CCP DE.

⁷⁸⁴ EBERL/EBERL, § 1n. 50; SCHWAB/WALTER, ch. 17 n. 14; Böckstiegel et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 11; Musielak/Voit-VOIT, § 1050 CCP DE n. 8; Stein/Jonas-SCHLOSSER, § 1050 CCP DE n. 21 et seq.; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1050 CCP DE n. 33.

⁷⁸⁵ § 1059 (2) (1.) (d) CCP DE; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1059 CCP DE n. 37.

⁷⁸⁶ § 1059 (2) (1.) (d) CCP DE; § 1062 (1) (4) CCP DE.

⁷⁸⁷ OLG Frankfurt am Main, 17 Feb. 2011, 26 Sch 13/10; § 1059 (2) (1.) (d) CCP DE; MARGHI-TOLA, 231 et seqq.; WAGNER/BÜLAU, 8 et seqq.; RÜTZEL et al., 182 et seq.

⁷⁸⁸ OLG Frankfurt am Main, 17 Feb. 2011, 26 Sch 13/10, n. 57; regarding the difference between procedural orders and party agreements, *see* WAGNER/BÜLAU, 13 et seq.

tribunal refused to order document production in violation of an explicit agreement between the parties.⁷⁸⁹ In addition, in terms of causality, it was held that because of the severity of the violation, it could have influenced the arbitral award.⁷⁹⁰ In this respect, the Court stated that it would indeed be speculative to examine in too much detail whether the arbitral award could have turned out differently.⁷⁹¹

Although in this case the violation of the agreement between the parties did not arise in the context of court assistance in the taking of evidence, the approach followed by the Higher Regional Court of Frankfurt demonstrates that—as opposed to the discretion of the arbitral tribunal to tailor the arbitral proceedings, which mostly cannot be challenged—party autonomy must be taken seriously and failure to do so can lead to the annulment of the arbitral award.⁷⁹² Applied to court assistance in the taking of evidence, one can therefore conclude that under German law, a violation of an agreement during the taking of evidence will be taken seriously, provided that it influenced the arbitral award.

G. Summary

§ 1050 CCP DE takes a very arbitration-friendly stance in various ways. First and most importantly, it does not distinguish between domestic and international arbitration, so court assistance in the taking of evidence is also granted to foreign arbitral tribunals. This direct court assistance considerably simplifies and shortens the process of taking evidence in international arbitration.

Second, from a tactical point of view, the arbitral tribunal must approve a request to seek state court assistance in the taking of evidence, to avoid delaying tactics. The arbitral tribunal can even seek court assistance itself if it considers this necessary. In the ongoing proceedings, the arbitral tribunal can actively participate in the taking of evidence before state courts and ask questions, which confirms and strengthens its position. By contrast, the parties can also exclude this process altogether pursuant to § 1050 CCP DE, without waiving their right to minimum legal protection.

Third, a broad spectrum of possible measures for the taking of evidence is available under the CCP DE. Such measures also include the independent

789 OLG Frankfurt am Main, 17 Feb. 2011, 26 Sch 13/10, n. 64.

790 *Ibid.*, n. 66; MARGHITOLA, 241.

791 OLG Frankfurt am Main, 17 Feb. 2011, 26 Sch 13/10, n. 66.

792 MARGHITOLA, 239 et seqq.; WAGNER/BÜLAU, 11.

evidentiary proceeding prior to and during the arbitral proceedings, in cases where there is a risk that certain evidence may potentially be destroyed. Although only measures for the taking of evidence that accord with the CCP DE are permissible, it has been shown that in cases where foreign types of evidence are requested, they can theoretically be transformed and adapted to the extent that they correspond to the CCP DE. Concerning the target of evidence, parties cannot—in contrast to witnesses—be forced to reveal evidence in their control. Rather, this fact will be considered when assessing the evidence in the arbitral proceedings. The situation is different as regards third parties, which can be forced to reveal evidence in their possession, unless this would be unreasonable or there are legal grounds to refuse to testify or reveal a certain document, including a technical or trade secret.

Fourth, as regards the competence of the *juge d'appui*, his or her scope of discretion is limited. If the conditions of § 1050 CCP DE are met, assistance must be granted and vice versa. Moreover, the *juge d'appui* is not entitled to examine the usefulness, appropriateness or relevance of an evidence request. This exercise is left to the arbitral tribunal which conducts the taking of evidence. The same applies to the assessment of evidence which does not form part of § 1050 CCP DE, but rather of the arbitral proceedings. A further competence—or rather, duty—of the *juge d'appui* is to examine whether the arbitral tribunal could take the requested evidence itself. In this regard, assistance should be granted not only if the arbitral tribunal is legally not entitled to do so, but also where this would involve a disproportionately significant effort. As regards the arbitration agreement, the *juge d'appui* has no power to fully examine it, because of the principle of competence-competence. The challenge to the arbitration agreement is thus part of a separate proceeding, according to § 1042 (3) CCP DE.

Finally, although the CCP DE does not expressly provide for this, the parties can appeal to the local court if a motion under § 1050 CCP DE is denied. If it is granted, an appeal is not possible. Because the proceeding according to § 1050 CCP DE does not form part of the arbitral proceedings, violations of procedural rules during the taking of evidence before a state court generally cannot be challenged during the arbitral proceedings. This is possible only if there is a link between the violation of procedural rules and the reasons for annulling the arbitral award according to § 1059 (2) (d) CCP DE—for example, if the taking of evidence before a state court violated an agreement between the parties and influenced the arbitral award. In such case, the higher regional court could annul the arbitral award. As seen in the decision of the Higher Regional Court of Frankfurt, the bar to affirm such a violation is not set too high.

All in all, § 1050 CCP DE is a very helpful and flexible tool for international arbitral proceedings. Varga even argues that the fact that § 1050 CCP DE provides an easily accessible tool to gather evidence through the German courts should motivate parties to comply voluntarily with the arbitral tribunal's orders, and thus that § 1050 CCP DE will become unnecessary in many cases.⁷⁹³ Admittedly, the very arbitration-friendly German approach, which also allows for the provision of court assistance in the taking of evidence to foreign arbitral tribunals, is remarkable. Nevertheless, it remains questionable why the liberal German approach has gone almost unnoticed, both nationally and internationally. So far, there are almost no reported relevant court decisions concerning the scope of application of § 1050 CCP DE.⁷⁹⁴ This might not necessarily imply its insignificance, but could rather be because decisions of lower first instance courts (regional courts) are frequently unreported.

In addition, German courts which receive an evidence request can assist in the taking of evidence only in accordance with the types of evidence set out in the CCP DE. As previously discussed (*see p. 140 et seqq. supra*), German legal doctrine almost unanimously argues that no foreign forms of evidence can be taken in international arbitral proceedings before German courts. As long as this view prevails, § 1050 CCP DE will very likely remain insignificant.⁷⁹⁵ It remains to be seen whether the German courts will take a more flexible approach by trying to adapt an evidence request containing a foreign form of evidence until it is compatible with the CCP DE.⁷⁹⁶

§ 3 France

A. Introduction

Thanks to the presence of the ICC headquarters and a very liberal arbitration regime, France is one of the most popular forums for international arbitration.⁷⁹⁷ This is confirmed by the pro-arbitration stance of both the Paris Court of Appeal and the Court of Cassation.⁷⁹⁸ The French *lex arbitri* was revised in 2011, when important case law was codified and arbitration-friendly provi-

793 VARGA, 236 et seq.; *see also* WOLFF, 268.

794 RÜTZEL et al., 163.

795 *Ibid.*, 161.

796 STEINBRÜCK, 422; as a possible model, *see e.g.* Art. 184(2) Draft-PILA CH.

797 DERAINS/KIFFER, n. 1; Balthasar-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 1; MOURRE, *France*, 1; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 141.

798 Balthasar-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 3; MOURRE, *France*, 2.

sions were implemented.⁷⁹⁹ Its provisions form part of the fourth book of the CCP FR, which is divided into two parts. While the first part (Arts. 1442–1503 CCP FR) applies to domestic arbitration, the second part (Arts. 1504–1527 CCP FR) deals with international arbitration. These articles apply where ‘international trade interests are at stake’.⁸⁰⁰ To avoid having two different statutes containing identical rules for both domestic and international arbitration, Art. 1506 CCP FR specifies which provisions of domestic arbitration also apply to international arbitration.⁸⁰¹

Obviously, the provisions that apply to international arbitration are often more liberal than the domestic provisions. For instance, the arbitration agreement need not be in writing, while in domestic arbitration, the written form is mandatory.⁸⁰² As discussed below (*see p. 156 infra*), the parties enjoy remarkable freedom in tailoring the arbitral proceedings by modifying Art. 1506 CCP FR at their discretion. Lastly, although it is not based on the UNCITRAL ML, the CCP FR is in many ways influenced by it.⁸⁰³

B. Legal Bases

1. Prior to the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal

The CCP FR foresees the possibility of court assistance in the taking of evidence both before and after the arbitral tribunal has been established. In cases where evidence is sought or must be preserved prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, the arbitral tribunal itself can order conservatory or provisional measures (interim measures), and even combine them with an *astreinte*.⁸⁰⁴ Still, in cases where coercive power is needed, court assistance in the taking of evidence is possible pursuant to Art. 1449 CCP FR:

“The existence of an arbitration agreement, insofar as the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted, shall not preclude a party from applying to a court for measures relating to the taking of evidence or provisional or conservatory measures.”

“Subject to the provisions governing conservatory attachments and judicial security, application shall be made to the President of the Tribunal de grande instance (Court of First Instance) or of the Tribunal de com-

799 BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 142 et seq.

800 Art. 1504 CCP FR.

801 CLAY, Art. 1506 CCP FR, 179 et seqq.; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 85.

802 Art. 1443 and 1507 CCP FR; GAILLARD/DE LAPASSE, n. 28.

803 MOURRE, *France*, 2; DERAINS/KIFFER, n. 1.

804 Art. 1468 CCP FR.

merce (Commercial Tribunal) who shall rule on the measures relating to the taking of evidence in accordance with the provisions of Article 145 and, where the matter is urgent, on the provisional or conservatory measures requested by the parties to the arbitration agreement.”

The competent state judge is either the president of the court of first instance or the Commercial Tribunal.⁸⁰⁵ Where the need for evidentiary measures is urgent—for instance, to preserve evidence from potential loss—one might conclude that Art. 1449 CCP FR can be used only before the arbitral tribunal has been established, since the provision refers only to this stage of the arbitral proceedings.⁸⁰⁶ Indeed, as Gaillard/De Lapasse argue, because Art. 1468(1) CCP FR provides that an arbitral tribunal is competent to order interim measures and combine them with an *astreinte* as an indirect coercive measure, the French legislature did not consider it necessary to implement parallel competence between state courts and arbitral tribunals.⁸⁰⁷

This view has long been criticised and in French legal doctrine, it is widely accepted that in some cases after the arbitral tribunal has been established, the only way to impose suitable interim measures—for example, in relation to the preservation of evidence—is to resort to state courts.⁸⁰⁸ This parallel competence should not be seen as an inconvenience, but rather as helpful assistance that should facilitate smooth arbitral proceedings and effective legal protection.⁸⁰⁹ This view is in line not only with the generally accepted principle in international arbitration of parallel competence to order interim measures between the arbitral tribunal and state courts, but also with the position of Art. 1449 CCP FR in the French *lex arbitri*. It appears under chapter one, which deals with the arbitration agreement without any mention of what happens once the arbitral tribunal has been established.⁸¹⁰ Furthermore, according to the legislative material, Art. 1449 CCP FR has been drafted in order to set the boundaries of court intervention prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal,

⁸⁰⁵ Art. 1449 CCP FR thus deviates from the usual competence of the *juge d'appui* pursuant to Art. 1505 CCP FR.

⁸⁰⁶ CHAINAIS, n. 70.

⁸⁰⁷ GAILLARD/DE LAPASSE, n. 14; LOQUIN, n. 271.

⁸⁰⁸ CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 11; RACINE, n. 307; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 18; CHAINAIS, n. 15; DUPREY, 17; AUDIT/D'AVOUT, n. 1403; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1829; CACHARD, n. 1233; CHAINAIS, n. 69 et seqq.; for another view, see DUPEYRON, 466; CLAY, Art. 1449 CCP FR, 56; GAILLARD/DE LAPASSE, n. 12, 14.

⁸⁰⁹ CHAINAIS, n. 73, 76.

⁸¹⁰ Arts. 1442–49 CCP FR; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 18.

without mentioning the situation thereafter.⁸¹¹ In sum, there are good reasons to apply Art. 1449 CCP FR also after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal.

Hitherto, however, these opinions have not led to any amendments to Art. 1449 (1) CCP FR, such as deletion of the wording ‘insofar as the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted’.⁸¹² Nonetheless, under the old *lex arbitri*, French Courts have confirmed that although Art. 145 CCP FR is no longer available after the establishment of the arbitral tribunal, interim measures according to Arts. 808 et seqq. CCP FR (*see p. 158 infra*) should still be available in urgent cases during the arbitral proceedings.⁸¹³ It is therefore desirable that the French courts confirm this view under the new *lex arbitri*.

2. After the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal

Once the arbitral tribunal has been established, it itself is equipped with the power to force parties to produce evidence and can even attach an *astreinte* to such an order.⁸¹⁴ Nonetheless, when third parties are involved, court assistance is crucial. Thus, Art. 1469 CCP FR, inspired by Art. 184 (2) PILA CH,⁸¹⁵ reads as follows:

- (1) If one of the parties to arbitral proceedings intends to rely on a notarized (acte authentique) or private (acte sous seing privé) deed to which it was not a party, or on evidence held by a third party, it may, upon the arbitral tribunal’s invitation, have that third party summoned before the President of the Court of First Instance for the purpose of obtaining a copy thereof (expédition) or the production of the deed or item of evidence.
- (2) Articles 42 through 48 shall determine which Court of First Instance has territorial jurisdiction in this regard.
- (3) Application shall be made, heard and decided as for expedited proceedings (référé).
- (4) If the President considers the application well-founded, he or she shall order that the relevant original, copy or extract of the deed or item of evidence be issued or produced, under such conditions and guarantees as he or she determines, and, if necessary, attach penalties to such order.

811 Rapport to the Premier Minister (2011), 33; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 18.

812 CHAINAIS, n. 77.

813 Paris Court of Cassation, 13 Jun. 2002, 2nd Civil Chamber, 00-20077; HORY, note on *Société Akzo Nobel et autres v. SA Elf Atochem*, Versailles Court of Appeal, 8 Oct. 1998, 2nd Chambre Civile, in: Rev. Arb. 1999, 57 et seqq.

814 Art. 1467(3) CCP FR.

815 CLAY, *Arbitrage*, 134; CLAY, Art. 1469 CCP FR, 104; RACINE, n. 697.

- (5) Such order is not readily enforceable.
- (6) It may be appealed within fifteen days following service (signification) of the order.”

Quite similar to the respective provision in state court proceedings, state courts will provide assistance *vis-à-vis* recalcitrant third parties.⁸¹⁶ Here again, the competent judge is the president of the court of first instance according to the rules of territorial jurisdiction of Arts. 42-48 CCP FR—that is, the judge where the third party is domiciled or the evidence will be taken.⁸¹⁷ Because there are third parties involved, it is not the *juge d'appui* pursuant to Art. 1505 CCP FR who is competent, but rather the respective president of the court of first instance (also called the ‘judge of evidence’), deciding in an expedited proceeding.⁸¹⁸

3. Support for Foreign Arbitral Tribunal

In contrast to other *leges arbitri*, the French approach is quite liberal and sets no strict boundaries as regards the application of its *lex arbitri*. Arts. 1504 et seqq. CCP FR therefore apply if ‘international trade interests are at stake’.⁸¹⁹ In this regard, the Paris Court of Cassation has confirmed that, irrespective of the applicable law, the seat of arbitration or the nationality of the parties, an arbitration is considered international when it affects international trade interests.⁸²⁰ As an example, a dispute is considered ‘international’ if it concerns a cross-border transfer of goods, even if both parties are French.⁸²¹ Thus, if more than one state is involved economically, the arbitration is considered international.⁸²² The question of whether the international arbitration regime applies therefore depends more on economic aspects than on

⁸¹⁶ Art. 138 CCP FR; NOUGEIN/DUPEYRÉ, n. 226.

⁸¹⁷ *Ibid.*, n. 227.

⁸¹⁸ CLAY, Art. 1469 CCP FR, 105; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 29; RACINE, n. 697; LOQUIN, n. 338.

⁸¹⁹ Art. 1504 CCP FR; DERAINS/KIFFER, n. 3 et seq.; Balthasar-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 6; CADIET/JEULAND, n. 1063.

⁸²⁰ Art. 1504 CCP FR; *Institut national de la santé et de la recherche médicale (INSERM) v. Fondation Letten F. Saugstad, Paris Court of Cassation, 26 Jan. 2011, 1st Civil Chamber, 09-10198; Société Uni-Kod v. Société Ouralkali*, Paris Court of Cassation, 30 Mar. 2004, 1st Civil Chamber, in: Rev. Arb. 2005, 959; DERAINS/KIFFER, n. 3 et seq.; Balthasar-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 6; CADIET/JEULAND, n. 1063.

⁸²¹ *Société Pangeev/Société Fancefert*, Paris High Court, 13 Jul. 1999, in: Rev. Arb. 1995, 625 (2.).

⁸²² *M. Ch. Di Sabatino et autre v. Société Animated Ventures et autres*, Paris Court of Appeal, 7 Oct. 2014, in: Rev. Arb. 2015, 531; for other examples see CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 1504 CCP FR n. 2; CLAY, Art. 1504 CCP FR, 171 et seqq.

legal aspects; unlike in other countries, where the seat of arbitration or the residence of a party is a key factor in determining the applicable *lex arbitri*.⁸²³ From the perspective of a foreign arbitral tribunal, this approach is welcome, since it allows for court assistance in the taking of evidence pursuant to the CCP FR without any connection to France beyond the location of evidence there.

C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance

1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal

Like most *leges arbitri*, Art. 1469(1) CCP FR states that the party seeking court assistance in the taking of evidence must first obtain the consent of the arbitral tribunal.⁸²⁴ Since it is the arbitral tribunal that conducts the arbitral proceedings (Art. 1467 CCP FR), its prior consent strengthens its position and avoids dilatory tactics or unnecessary evidence requests.⁸²⁵ Consequently, when presented with an evidence request, the respective arbitral tribunal is at liberty to grant or decline it, and there are very limited possibilities to challenge its decision.⁸²⁶

Unlike under Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML and other *leges arbitri*, the arbitral tribunal itself is not competent to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence.⁸²⁷ This possibility was discussed in the drafting process of the new French arbitration provisions, but unfortunately was ultimately abandoned.⁸²⁸ However, although the arbitral tribunal is vested with significant power to conduct the taking of evidence and even to order *astreintes*, it should also be able to resort to state courts for assistance in the taking of evidence.⁸²⁹ Not least, this would be in line with Art. 1467(1) CCP FR, which allows the arbitral tribunal to take all ‘necessary steps’ as regards the taking of evidence.

823 Art. 176(1) PILA CH, S. 2(1) EAA 1996; CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 1504 CCP FR n. 1; CLAY, Art. 1504 CCP FR, 107; Balthasar-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 6 et seqq.; for the ‘delocalisation of the seat of arbitration’, *see* LOQUIN, n. 344 et seqq.

824 CLAY, *Arbitrage*, 135.

825 JARROSSON, 337; Loquin, n. 336.

826 JARROSSON, 337; RACINE, n. 697; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1948; NOUGEIN/DUPEYRÉ, n. 227; SERAGLINI/ORTSCHEIDT, n. 339; *see also* Art. 1469(4) CCP FR, stating that document production will be granted ‘If the President considers the application well-founded, ...’.

827 NOUGEIN/DUPEYRÉ, n. 227; CLAY, *Arbitrage*, 135; SERAGLINI/ORTSCHEIDT, n. 339.

828 BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1948; *see also* Art. 184(2) PILA CH; § 1050(1) CCP DE.

829 Art. 1467(3) CCP FR.

2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

In contrast to the discussions in other jurisdictions, it appears that the complete exclusion of court assistance in the taking of evidence as a violation of minimum legal protection in arbitration has not yet been discussed in French legal doctrine.⁸³⁰ Nonetheless, there are several reasons that support this possibility. Besides those presented in the discussion of German law (*see* p.137 et seq. *supra*), the CCP FR explicitly allows for the parties to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence. According to Art.1506 CCP FR, subject to the mandatory rules as foreseen in Arts.1504-1527 CCP FR, the parties are at liberty to exclude the listed provisions, such as those relating to court assistance in the taking of evidence, prior to and after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal.⁸³¹ This guarantees the parties to international arbitral proceedings remarkable freedom, as opposed to the stricter rules applicable to domestic arbitration.⁸³² In sum, although in most cases the complete exclusion of court assistance in the taking of evidence makes little sense, under French law it is nonetheless a possibility.

D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target

1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement

When it comes to the taking of evidence and the procedural rules, the parties enjoy broad discretion in tailoring the arbitral proceedings.⁸³³ As it is already possible to exclude any court assistance in the taking of evidence, this is all the more so the case in relation to specific types of evidence, such as witness testimonies. This may be done either by explicitly limiting the scope of discovery/disclosure in the arbitration agreement or by referring to institutional arbitration rules or the IBA Rules.⁸³⁴ Thus, if the parties have explicitly excluded a specific type of evidence, the respective state court must respect this choice and decline any request in this regard.⁸³⁵ Likewise, if the taking

⁸³⁰ AUDIT/D'AVOUT mention only that in certain situations, parties may have an interest in excluding court assistance and the arbitration agreement should therefore be examined in order to find out whether such an exclusion took place (n. 1400).

⁸³¹ Art. 1506(1) i.c.w. Art. 1449 CCP FR and Art. 1506 (3) i.c.w. Art. 1469 CCP FR.

⁸³² For instance, in international arbitral proceedings, the arbitration agreement does not have to be in writing (Art. 1506(1) i.c.w. Art. 1443 CCP FR *e contrario*); BALTHASAR-BALTHASAR/ZIADE, n. 5; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, 1053; JARROSSON/PELLERIN, n. 90.

⁸³³ Art. 1509 CCP FR.

⁸³⁴ *See, e.g.* Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules; Art. 3(9) IBA Rules.

⁸³⁵ CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 1509 CCP FR n. 7.

of evidence before a state court is contrary to an explicit agreement between the parties, this will serve as grounds for the annulment of the arbitral award if it influences the arbitral award.⁸³⁶ In most cases, however, the arbitral tribunal will be reluctant to introduce evidence into the arbitral proceedings which was gathered contrary to a party agreement.

2. Evidence According to the CCP FR

a. Prior to the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal

As stated in Art. 1449 (2) CCP FR, state courts may either assist in the taking of evidence prior to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal under the conditions set out in Arts. 145 et seqq. CCP FR or, in urgent cases, impose provisional or conservatory measures. Art. 145 CCP FR reads as follows:

“If, before legal proceedings commence, there is a legitimate reason to preserve or establish evidence upon which the resolution of a dispute may depend, measures relating to the taking of evidence may be ordered, upon the request of any concerned party, by way of a petition to a court (*sur requête*) or expedited proceedings (*référé*).”

In contrast to interim measures, no urgency need be proved when starting a proceeding according to Art. 145 CCP FR.⁸³⁷ Before any production of evidence is ordered, the requesting party must prove that there is a ‘legitimate reason’ for this measure—that is, that it is useful and will most likely have an influence on the outcome of the proceedings.⁸³⁸ If this condition is fulfilled, any measure which is ‘legally admissible’ can be ordered in the two different proceedings as foreseen in Art. 145 CCP FR.⁸³⁹ The main difference between a petition to a court (*sur requête*) and an expedited proceeding (*référé*) relates to their (non-) adversarial character.⁸⁴⁰ The adversarial expedited proceeding is often needed in cases where the opinion of an expert is sought (Arts. 232 et seqq. CCP FR) and the parties are invited to express their views on his or her mission.⁸⁴¹ Meanwhile, proceedings *sur requête*—that is, *ex parte* measures—are non-adversarial and offer a wide range of possible measures, derived from either Arts. 232 et seqq. CCP FR or case law, such as examination

836 Art. 1520 (3) CCP FR; *see p. 164 infra*.

837 CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 40.

838 DUPEYRON/VALENTINI, 542; CHAINAIS, n. 21; DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 19.

839 Paris Court of Cassation, 27 Feb. 2014, 2nd Civil Chamber, 13-10.013.

840 Arts. 484 (expedited proceeding) and 493 (*ex parte* measures) CCP FR; DUPEYRON/VALENTINI, 548.

841 *Ibid.*; CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 78.

of witnesses under oath⁸⁴² (Arts. 199 et seqq.), document production⁸⁴³ by third parties⁸⁴⁴ (Art. 11 CCP FR), on-site investigations⁸⁴⁵ and expert reports.⁸⁴⁶ These *ex parte* measures represent a highly effective tool, especially in order to preserve evidence without the possibility for the defendant to challenge such measures in an adversarial proceeding prior to their execution.⁸⁴⁷

In urgent cases, interim measures may also be sought. Art. 808 CCP FR states the following:

“In all cases of urgency, the President of the Court of First Instance may order in an expedited proceeding all measures that do not encounter any serious challenge or which the existence of the dispute justifies.”

Without going into too much detail, it is important to note that this provision aims primarily to preserve evidence—for example, by protecting goods from the threat of loss or destruction by keeping them in good condition. This will prove helpful not only prior to the establishment of the arbitral tribunal, but also thereafter. It remains to be seen whether the French legislature will consider this fact in a possible future revision of its *lex arbitri*.

b. After the Constitution of the Arbitral Tribunal

Once the arbitral tribunal has been constituted—that is, once the arbitrators have accepted their mandate—the possibilities for the taking of evidence are very limited, in terms of both the target (*see* p. 160 et seq. *infra*) and the scope of evidence.⁸⁴⁸ Pursuant to Art. 1469 (1) CCP FR, parties can seek to obtain from third parties only documents which are either notarised or private.⁸⁴⁹ If the respective president of the court of first instance considers the evidence request well founded, the third party must deliver the original document, or a copy or extract therefrom.⁸⁵⁰ Because the respective state court judge can conduct the proceeding under Art. 1469 CCP FR ‘under such con-

⁸⁴² Under French law, parties can be examined as witnesses (Art. 205 CCP FR).

⁸⁴³ Paris Court of Cassation, 11 Apr. 1995, Commercial Chamber, 92-20985; CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 69.

⁸⁴⁴ Paris Court of Cassation, 26 May 2011, 2nd Civil Chamber, 10-20048; CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 70.

⁸⁴⁵ DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 20.

⁸⁴⁶ Paris Court of Cassation, 11 Oct. 1995, 2nd Civil Chamber, 92-20496; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1829.

⁸⁴⁷ Paris Court of Cassation, 19 Mar. 2015, 2nd Civil Chamber, 14-14.389; Art. 493 CCP FR.

⁸⁴⁸ Art. 1456 (1) CCP FR.

⁸⁴⁹ Although only documentary evidence can be sought under Art. 1469 CCP FR and the word ‘private’ is not clearly defined, the range of documents seems to be very broad.

⁸⁵⁰ Art. 1469 (4) CCP FR.

ditions and guarantees as he or she determines', the presence of the parties is also allowed, at least in theory.⁸⁵¹

Apart from document production, no other evidence can be sought—neither an examination of witnesses nor any inspection or expert report.⁸⁵² In the absence of any visible legislative intent to exclude such types of evidence, one must conclude that this is because the arbitral tribunal is competent to take all 'necessary step concerning evidentiary and procedural matters', even under threat of an *astreinte*. Still, as previously discussed, document production is often connected to witnesses.⁸⁵³ This is why it would be welcome if Art. 1469 CCP FR were extended to examination of witnesses and other types of evidence.

3. Foreign Types of Evidence

In general, it may be said that the French courts will not execute evidence requests relating to US-style discovery.⁸⁵⁴ Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, Art. 1449 CCP FR explicitly states that the taking of evidence must be conducted in compliance with Art. 145 CCP FR. As a result, only measures for the taking of evidence pursuant to French law, as stated in Arts. 145 et seqq. CCP FR, are permissible. The situation is not much different once the arbitral tribunal has been established. Art. 1469(4) CCP FR states that evidence requests will be granted under the conditions determined by the president of the court of first instance.⁸⁵⁵ In practice, this is regularly done according to French law.⁸⁵⁶ Although the parties enjoy wide discretion to tailor the taking of evidence within the arbitral proceedings—for instance, by agreeing on foreign measures for the taking of evidence—this does not apply to the proceeding before state courts pursuant to Art. 1469 CCP FR. Since the French legislature has not allowed for evidence requests in the style of US-discovery, document production will therefore be ordered according to French law. What STEINBRÜCK has suggested for German law—that is, that foreign types of evidence be adapted until they are compliant with domestic law—thus seems not possible under French law.⁸⁵⁷

851 Art. 1469(4) CCP FR.

852 GAILLARD/DE LAPASSE, n. 22; CLAY, *Arbitrage*, 134; RACINE, n. 697; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1948; SERAGLINI/ORTSCHEIDT, n. 338.

853 See p. 41 *supra*.

854 DUPEYRON/VALENTINI, 542, 550; JARROSSON, 338; see also the reservation of France as regards Art. 23 HEC (see the reservations).

855 Art. 1469(4) CCP FR.

856 DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 20.

857 See p. 141 *supra*.

4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence

As an alternative, although this is seldom used in practice, the French courts can also assist in the taking of evidence by means of international judicial assistance pursuant to the HEC or the EER.⁸⁵⁸ As previously discussed (*see* p. 2 et seqq. *supra*), parties are very reluctant to choose this route due to the lengthy and cumbersome process involved, and instead will generally seek court assistance pursuant to Arts. 1449 and 1469 CCP FR.

5. Target of Evidence

Regardless of whether evidence is sought from a party to the arbitration or a third party, possible privileges such as commercial or technical confidentiality, as well as attorney-client privilege, must be respected at all times.⁸⁵⁹ Third parties who are parents, direct relatives or a (divorced) spouse of one of the parties may refuse to testify.⁸⁶⁰ Regardless of whether he or she is called by a party to the arbitration or a third party, if a witness refuses to testify without legitimate reason, he or she can be charged with a civil fine of up to EUR 10,000.⁸⁶¹

Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, evidence can be sought from anyone, irrespective of the target of evidence or whether the evidence request has been granted by a petition to court (*sur requête*) or in an expedited proceeding (*référé*). While the target of evidence in an adversarial expedited proceeding can seek to avoid the taking of evidence as a whole, or at least limit its extent, this is logically not possible as regards *ex parte* measures.⁸⁶² In this proceeding, the respective measures can be avoided or modified only upon request, once they have already been executed.⁸⁶³ After the arbitral tribunal has been established, evidence can be sought only from third parties located in France. As regards the parties to the arbitration, the arbitral tribunal will usually order a party to produce evidence under threat of an *astreinte* or, as an alternative, will draw an adverse inference in case of non-compliance with evidence orders. Nonetheless, if the taking of evidence from a third party according to Art. 1469 CCP FR is requested, this takes the

⁸⁵⁸ JARROSSON, 338. In France, the HEC entered into force in 1974 (*see* the current status).

⁸⁵⁹ CALLÉ/DARGENT, Art. 145 CCP FR n. 112; DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 22; as regards examination of witnesses *see* Art. 206 CCP FR.

⁸⁶⁰ Art. 206 CCP FR.

⁸⁶¹ Art. 207 CCP FR.

⁸⁶² DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 22; Arts. 484 et seqq. CCP FR (expedited proceeding) and Arts. 493 et seqq. CCP FR (*ex parte* measures).

⁸⁶³ Art. 497 CCP FR.

form of an adversarial expedited proceeding, in which the third party can be forced to produce evidence, where necessary combined with an *astreinte*.⁸⁶⁴ A third party may also appeal the decision of the respective state court within 15 days of the date of grant of the evidence request.⁸⁶⁵

E. Competence of the *Juge d'Appui*

1. Scope of Discretion

Strictly speaking, and as previously discussed (*see* p. 152 *supra*), the judge who provides assistance prior to or after the constitution of the arbitral award is not the *juge d'appui* in the sense of Art. 1505 CCP FR (i.e. the president of the Paris Court of First Instance), but rather the respective judge where the evidence is located or the witness is domiciled.⁸⁶⁶ In deciding whether court assistance in the taking of evidence should be granted, the respective judge has full discretion, subject only to the requirements as stated in Arts. 1449 and 1469 CCP FR.⁸⁶⁷ However, the judge has no scope to assess the evidence taken, which is left completely to the arbitral tribunal.⁸⁶⁸

Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, the respective judge will usually grant the request if there is a legitimate reason to gather the evidence—for example, if it is useful and relevant in the context of the case at hand.⁸⁶⁹ If the requesting party already has enough evidence to prove its case or if the request itself is too vague or far reaching, it will most likely be denied.⁸⁷⁰ In contrast, if the request is granted, the respective judge is at liberty to modify the requested evidence production pursuant to Arts. 145 et seqq. CCP FR ‘as to what is sufficient for the resolution of the dispute by endeavouring to select the simplest and least onerous ones’.⁸⁷¹ In proceedings as stated in Art. 1469 CCP FR after the arbitral tribunal has been constituted, the respective ‘judge of evidence’ will execute the evidence request as long as it is ‘well-founded’. The fact that the respective state court judge can then take the evidence ‘under such conditions and guarantees as he or she determines’

864 Art. 1469 (3) CCP FR.

865 Art. 1469 (6) CCP FR; *see also* p. 163 et seq. *infra*.

866 In case of Art. 1469 CCP FR, the respective judge is called the ‘judge of evidence’.

867 JARROSSON, 337 et seq.; NOUGEIN/DUPEYRÉ, n. 227.

868 Paris Court of Cassation, 10 Jan. 2013, 2nd Civil Chamber, 12-12-375; DEVOT/LAURENT-BELLUE, 24; in respect of the *juge d'appui* in accordance with Art. 1505 CCP FR *see* BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1900.

869 DUPEYRON/VALENTINI, 542.

870 Paris Court of Cassation, 18 Feb. 1986, 2nd Civil Chamber, 84-10620.

871 Art. 147 CCP FR.

indicates that the judge is not strictly bound by the evidence request, but can modify it at his or her discretion. Lastly, if it is necessary to put pressure on the third party, an *astreinte* will be attached to the order to produce specific documentary evidence.

2. Principle of Subsidiarity

Contrary to other *leges arbitri*, the CCP FR does not mention whether it is possible to have recourse to state courts if the arbitral tribunal could take the evidence itself.⁸⁷² This makes perfect sense, since Art. 1469 CCP FR addresses only evidence held by third parties, over which the arbitral tribunal has no *imperium*.⁸⁷³ Nevertheless, one might ask—as a minimum requirement—whether state courts should not examine whether the arbitral tribunal has at least tried to make third parties comply with an evidence request on a voluntary basis.⁸⁷⁴ However, it appears that this view is supported neither by legal doctrine nor by French case law.

3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement

The question of whether the judge of evidence can express a view on the validity of the arbitration agreement has not yet been discussed, either in French legal doctrine or in case law. As regards competence-competence, the CCP FR addresses the examination of the arbitration agreement both prior to and after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. Art. 1448 CCP FR states:

“When a dispute subject to an arbitration agreement is brought before a court, such court shall decline jurisdiction, except if an arbitral tribunal has not yet been seized of the dispute and if the arbitration agreement is manifestly void or manifestly not applicable.”

Consequently, in a proceeding under Art. 1449 CCP FR, the respective judge will examine whether the arbitration agreement is manifestly void or inapplicable.⁸⁷⁵ This is therefore a very restricted and limited *prima facie* examina-

⁸⁷² In contrast, *see e.g.* § 1050 (1) CCP DE: The arbitral tribunal or a party with the approval of the arbitral tribunal may request from a court assistance in taking evidence or performance of other judicial acts *which the arbitral tribunal is not empowered to carry out* (emphasis added).

⁸⁷³ SERAGLINI/ORTSCHEIDT, n. 338; AUDIT/D'AVOUT, n. 1403; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1948; CLAY, *Arbitrage*, 134; GAILLARD/DE LAPASSE, n. 14; JARROSSON, 336.

⁸⁷⁴ *See also* the suggestion for Swiss domestic arbitration in DIKE-BRUNNER/STEININGER, Art. 375 CCP CH n. 7.

⁸⁷⁵ JARROSSON, 332; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1817.

tion.⁸⁷⁶ However, in most cases—especially in institutional arbitral proceedings—if an arbitration agreement is invalid, this will be discussed long before an evidence request is brought before state courts.⁸⁷⁷ The situation is different once the arbitral tribunal has been established. Art. 1455 CCP FR states:

“If an arbitration agreement is manifestly void or manifestly not applicable, the judge acting in support of the arbitration shall declare that no appointment need be made.”

Because this provision clearly addresses only the *juge d'appui* (Art. 1505 CCP FR), and not the judge of evidence in accordance with Art. 1469 CCP FR, the arbitration agreement cannot be examined under this provision. Rather, if a party wants to challenge the competence of the arbitral tribunal after the arbitral tribunal has been constituted, it can do so by challenging the arbitral award, where the validity of the arbitration agreement can be examined extensively.⁸⁷⁸ Finally, the examination of the arbitration agreement during court assistance in the taking of evidence must be distinguished from its examination in the context of recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award under the NYC.⁸⁷⁹

F. Appellate Remedies

A decision on court assistance in the taking of evidence issued prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal—whether issued against a future party to the arbitration or a third party—can be challenged before the respective court of appeal within 15 days.⁸⁸⁰ The respective state court will render its decision in the form of a ‘*décision provisoire*’—that is, an interim order.⁸⁸¹ As previously discussed (*see p. 157 supra*), unlike where evidence is ordered in an expedited proceeding, *ex parte* measures can be challenged only if they have been denied.⁸⁸² However, if they have already been executed, they can still be avoid-

876 *Ibid.*; According to the Paris Court of Cassation, the existence of a valid arbitration agreement already excludes the possibility that it is manifestly void or not applicable (FOUCHARD, note on Paris Court of Cassation, 1 Dec. 1999, 1st Civil Chamber, in: Rev. Arb. 2000, 96 et seqq.).

877 JARROSSON, 332.

878 Art. 1520 (1) CCP FR; BÉGUIN/MENJUCQ, n. 1818; Paris Court of Cassation, 6 Oct. 2010, 1st Civil Chamber, 08-20563.

879 Arts. III(3) and V(1)(a) NYC.

880 Art. 490 (3) CCP FR (expedited proceeding) and Art. 496 CCP FR (*ex parte* measures).

881 Arts. 484 CCP FR (expedited proceeding) and 493 CCP FR (*ex parte* measures).

882 Art. 496 CCP FR.

ed or modified upon the request of either party.⁸⁸³ If an evidence request is presented during the arbitral proceedings, the state court's decision can be appealed before the respective court of appeal within 15 days of service of the decision.⁸⁸⁴ As this decision is analogous to a decision issued in an expedited proceeding, it can be challenged whether it has been granted or denied.⁸⁸⁵

The taking of evidence according to Arts. 1449 and 1469 CCP FR may be distinguished from the assessment of evidence by the arbitral tribunal. Thus, if a party wants to challenge the taking of evidence due to a violation of the procedural rules applicable to the arbitral proceedings, this can be done only by challenging the arbitral award on the grounds that due process has been violated or the arbitral tribunal has not complied with its mandate.⁸⁸⁶ As an example—albeit purely theoretical—consider the situation where a state court orders a third party to testify even though witness examination has been explicitly excluded by the parties.⁸⁸⁷ If this testimony has a significant influence on the arbitral award, the arbitral award may be challenged before the respective court of appeal within one month of the date on which the arbitral award is rendered.⁸⁸⁸

G. Summary

From an analysis of the French *lex arbitri*, it is clear that this not only affords the parties broad discretion in tailoring the arbitral proceedings, but also provides for assistance in the taking of evidence both prior to and after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. First, instead of requiring the fulfilment of various conditions, such as the applicable law, the seat of arbitration or the nationality of the parties, court assistance in the taking of evidence will be granted as long as international trade interests are at stake.⁸⁸⁹ This simplification, which is unique in international arbitration, is highly welcome—even more so since in such cases evidence is often located in several different countries. In these situations, it is unnecessarily cumbersome if the availability of state court assistance hinges on whether the international arbitral

⁸⁸³ Art. 497 CCP FR.

⁸⁸⁴ Art. 1469(6) CCP FR.

⁸⁸⁵ Art. 1469(3) i.c.w. Arts. 484 et seqq. CCP FR; CLAY, Art. 1469 CCP FR, 105.

⁸⁸⁶ Arts. 1520(3) and (4) CCP FR.

⁸⁸⁷ See also *Société Filali Film Alimentaire SARL v. Société Bielloni Convertin Spa*, Paris Court of Appeal, 4 Nov. 2014, in: Rev. Arb. 2014, 1037.

⁸⁸⁸ Ibid.; Art. 1523 CCP FR.

⁸⁸⁹ See p. 154 *supra*.

tribunal has its seat in the respective country or whether a certain law is applicable to the matter in dispute.⁸⁹⁰

Second, and unsurprisingly, the arbitral tribunal's consent must be obtained before court assistance in the taking of evidence can be sought. Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, court assistance can also be requested *ex parte*. Unlike under other *leges arbitri*, the arbitral tribunal cannot resort to state courts on its own initiative. Since the arbitral tribunal is already competent to conduct the taking of evidence and even to impose *astreintes* as it sees fit, this should also apply to its competence to seek court assistance by itself as a 'necessary step' concerning evidentiary matters.⁸⁹¹ Moreover, the parties are at liberty to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence altogether or in relation to specific forms of evidence.

Third, as regards the scope and target of evidence, the situation differs depending on whether the arbitral tribunal has been constituted. Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, a wide range of evidentiary measures can be imposed both on third parties and on the future parties to the arbitration. Because the types of evidence must accord with Art. 145 CCP FR, no foreign types of evidence may be sought. Once the arbitral tribunal has been constituted, evidence can be taken from third parties only and the scope of evidence is limited to document production according to French law. Third parties can even be forced to produce such evidence under threat of an *astreinte*. Since document production is often related to the examination of witnesses, Art. 1469 CCP FR should be extended to encompass witness examination and other types of evidence. Moreover, regardless of whether court assistance in the taking of evidence is sought prior to or after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, it would be desirable and in the interests of international arbitration if state courts could take evidence according to foreign law.⁸⁹²

Fourth, both prior to and after the constitution of the arbitral tribunal, the respective state court judge has broad discretion in deciding whether to grant or deny court assistance, and in deciding how evidence will be taken. As regards the principle of subsidiarity, the CCP FR makes no mention of whether the arbitral tribunal can take the evidence itself and if and when state courts come into play in this regard. This may be explained in part because Art. 1469 CCP FR refers only to third parties as targets of evidence, from whom the arbitral tribunal is *per se* unable to take evidence because of its lack of *imperium*. Furthermore, it remains doubtful whether the court must ex-

890 STEINBRÜCK, 32.

891 Art. 1467(1) CCP FR.

892 See e.g. the proposed Art. 184 (3) PILA CH.

amine whether the arbitral tribunal tried to take the evidence from a third party on a voluntary basis. Regarding the examination of the arbitration agreement, once again, the situation differs depending on whether the arbitral tribunal has been constituted. Prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, examination is possible on a *prima facie* level only. Thereafter, the judge of evidence, pursuant to Art. 1469 CCP FR, is no longer competent to examine the arbitration agreement; this can be done only post-arbitration by challenging the arbitral award and therefore the arbitration agreement.

Finally, the decision of state courts to assist in the taking of evidence may be challenged both prior to and after constitution of the arbitral tribunal. If evidence is taken before a state court contrary to an explicit agreement between the parties (e.g. which provides for documentary evidence only), the arbitral award can be challenged if this had an influence on the arbitral award.

By and large, the French *lex arbitri* takes a very liberal approach as regards court assistance in the taking of evidence. In this regard, its application to international arbitration is highly beneficial and parties should not be too hesitant to initiate an evidence request if relevant evidence is located in France. On the one hand, this applies to situations prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal where the target of evidence may be caught by surprise through an *ex parte* proceeding. On the other hand, it might become necessary during the arbitral proceedings, even though only documents can be obtained from third parties.

§ 4 England

A. Introduction

England in general, and London specifically, are among the most popular forums for international arbitration.⁸⁹³ This is confirmed by the consistently high caseload of the LCIA and the fact that the vast majority of parties to LCIA arbitration are not English residents.⁸⁹⁴ The English *lex arbitri* is substantially codified by the Arbitration Act of 1996, which provides a detailed legal framework for both domestic and international arbitration.⁸⁹⁵ Case law also plays a vital role in further interpreting and substantiating the English *lex arbitri*.⁸⁹⁶ The EAA 1996 came into force in 1997 and generally applies where the seat of arbitration is in England and Wales or Northern Ireland, irrespective of

⁸⁹³ BALTHASAR-ILLMER, n. 1; ANDREWS/LANDBRECHT, n. 1; BORN, *Int. Comm. Arb.*, 148.

⁸⁹⁴ LCIA Report (2018), 8 et seq.

⁸⁹⁵ RAWDING et al., n. 18-3.

⁸⁹⁶ EAA 1996 Report (1996), n. 9.

the chosen substantive law.⁸⁹⁷ As set out below (*see* p. 196 *infra*), it applies to evidentiary and other procedural matters even if the seat of arbitration is outside the English territory or has not been determined.⁸⁹⁸

Although it is not based on the UNCITRAL ML and is much broader in its application, the structure and language of the EAA 1996 are clearly and intentionally inspired by the UNCITRAL ML.⁸⁹⁹ For instance, like Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, S. 1(c) EAA 1996 states that no court should intervene unless there is an explicit legal basis to do so.⁹⁰⁰ Although more broadly drafted than Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, the EAA 1996 aims to limit state court intervention.⁹⁰¹ In this way, the parties have plenty of space to conduct the arbitral proceedings at their discretion, subject only to the mandatory provisions as listed in schedule 1 of the EAA 1996 and the general duty to ‘do all things necessary for the proper and expeditious conduct of the arbitral proceedings’.⁹⁰² Still, once the assistance of a state court is sought pursuant to the EAA 1996, that court has wide discretion in deciding whether and to what extent such assistance should be granted or denied.

B. Legal Bases

Under the EAA 1996, court assistance in the taking of evidence can be sought either by securing the attendance of witnesses (S. 43 EAA 1996) or by exercising other powers in support of arbitral proceedings (S. 44 EAA 1996). S. 43 EAA 1996 reads as follows:

- “(1) A party to arbitral proceedings may use the same court procedures as are available in relation to legal proceedings to secure the attendance before the tribunal of a witness in order to give oral testimony or to produce documents or other material evidence.
- (2) This may only be done with the permission of the tribunal or the agreement of the other parties.

⁸⁹⁷ Ss. 2(1) and 3 EAA 1996; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 15. For the sake of brevity, the following will only refer to the *English Arbitration Act*, well aware that it applies to Wales and Northern Ireland too.

⁸⁹⁸ S. 2(3) EAA 1996.

⁸⁹⁹ EAA 1996 Report (1996), n. 1, 4; ANDREWS, preface (viii); SHEPPARD, Introduction n. 4; ANDREWS/LANDBRECHT, n. 40, 161; STEINBRÜCK, 104.

⁹⁰⁰ This provision concerns only the first part of the EAA 1996 and, for instance, does not apply to consumer arbitration agreements as set out in the second part (*see* Ss. 89 et seqq. EAA 1996).

⁹⁰¹ Instead of ‘shall’ as in Art. 5 UNCITRAL ML, the EAA 1996 uses ‘should’; EAA Report (1996), n. 19 et seqq.; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 10.

⁹⁰² Ss. 4 and 40 EAA 1996; ANDREWS, n. 1.11; DEY et al., n. 511.

- (3) The court procedures may only be used if–
 - (a) the witness is in the United Kingdom, and
 - (b) the arbitral proceedings are being conducted in England and Wales or, as the case may be, Northern Ireland.
- (4) A person shall not be compelled by virtue of this section to produce any document or other material evidence which he could not be compelled to produce in legal proceedings.”

What is more, S. 44 EAA 1996 equips the respective state court with a broad range of possible assistance measures for the taking of evidence:

- “(1) Unless otherwise agreed by the parties, the court has for the purposes of and in relation to arbitral proceedings the same power of making orders about the matters listed below as it has for the purposes of and in relation to legal proceedings.
- (2) Those matters are:
 - (a) the taking of the evidence of witnesses;
 - (b) the preservation of evidence;
 - (c) making orders relating to property which is the subject of the proceedings or as to which any question arises in the proceedings:
 - (i) for the inspection, photographing, preservation, custody or detention of the property, or
 - (ii) ordering that samples be taken from, or any observation be made of or experiment conducted upon, the property;
 - and for that purpose authorising any person to enter any premises in the possession or control of a party to the arbitration;
 - (d) the sale of any goods the subject of the proceedings;
 - (e) the granting of an interim injunction or the appointment of a receiver.
- (3) If the case is one of urgency, the court may, on the application of a party or proposed party to the arbitral proceedings, make such orders as it thinks necessary for the purpose of preserving evidence or assets.
- (4) If the case is not one of urgency, only on the application of a party to the arbitral proceedings (upon notice to the other parties and to the tribunal) made with the permission of the tribunal or the agreement in writing of the other parties.
- (5) In any case the court shall act only if or to the extent that the arbitral tribunal, and any arbitral or other institution or person vested by the parties with power in that regard, has no power or is unable for the time being to act effectively.

- (6) If the court so orders, an order made by it under this section shall cease to have effect in whole or in part on the order of the tribunal or of any such arbitral or other institution or person having power to act in relation to the subject-matter of the order.
- (7) The leave of the court is required for any appeal from a decision of the court under this section.”

In both cases, the competent court is usually⁹⁰³ the Commercial Court or the Circuit Commercial Court, which is part of the Business and Commercial Courts of England and Wales and which forms part of the High Court in London (EWHC).⁹⁰⁴ As an exception to the rule that the EAA 1996 applies only if the seat of arbitration is in England and Wales or Northern Ireland, Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 are available even if the seat of arbitration is outside the English territory or has not yet been determined.⁹⁰⁵ In this regard, the EAA 1996 differs from the rather narrow scope of application as foreseen in the UNCITRAL ML.⁹⁰⁶ Although this approach is not enshrined in many *leges arbitri*, the English legislature considers court assistance in the taking of evidence to support foreign arbitrations as a natural necessity.⁹⁰⁷ As a consequence, the HEC and the EER are in most cases superfluous in arbitral proceedings.⁹⁰⁸

C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance

1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal

Court assistance in the taking of evidence under the EAA 1996 can be sought either autonomously by the parties if they both agree—in contrast to the usual stance in international arbitration; or, as under most other *leges arbitri* and the UNCITRAL ML, with the approval of the arbitral tribunal.⁹⁰⁹ In both cases, the goal is to respect party autonomy as set out in the arbitral agreement and the position of the arbitral tribunal in charge of the arbitration.⁹¹⁰ How-

903 It should be noted that in some cases, some applications must be started in the Commercial Court (see e.g. Rules 58.1(2)(k) and 62.1(3) CPR 1998; CPR 1998 Practice Direction 62.3, para. 2.3).

904 S. 105(1) EAA 1996; S. 2 High Court and County Courts Order 1996; DEY et al., n. 551.

905 S. 2(3) EAA 1996.

906 Art. 1(2) UNCITRAL ML.

907 EAA Report (1996), n. 25; SHEPPARD, S. 2 EAA 1996 n. 4.

908 SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 5.

909 Ss. 43(2) and 44(4) EAA 1996; see also e.g. Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML; Art. 184(2) PILA CH; § 1050(1) CCP DE.

910 EAA Report (1996), n. 213.

ever, the situation is different in urgent cases—mostly prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal—where a party may seek remedy from the court unilaterally in order to preserve evidence or assets.⁹¹¹ What is more, pursuant to S. 33 EAA 1996, the arbitral tribunal must act fairly and impartially by giving each party the possibility to present its case. The arbitral tribunal is not obliged to agree to all evidence requests initiated by one of the parties to the arbitration; but likewise, it cannot unreasonably refuse an evidence request according to Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 if there are reasonable grounds to grant it.⁹¹²

It remains unclear whether the arbitral tribunal itself can seek court assistance in the taking of evidence. Neither S. 43 nor S. 44 EAA 1996 empowers the arbitral tribunal to do so explicitly. However, in the absence of any contrary agreement between the parties, the arbitral tribunal is empowered by law to decide ‘whether and to what extent the tribunal should itself take the initiative in ascertaining the facts and the law’.⁹¹³ It is noteworthy and surprising that such an inquisitorial approach, which is generally foreign to common law, has found its way into the EAA 1996.⁹¹⁴ In light of this provision and the overall intention of the EAA 1996, the arbitral tribunal itself should also be able to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence on its own initiative, pursuant to Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996.⁹¹⁵ That said, as English case law has pointed out, arbitrators should not exceed their powers by, for example, directly and unilaterally contacting witnesses.⁹¹⁶ To avoid such a situation, the parties are at liberty to limit the vast powers of the arbitral tribunal in this regard.⁹¹⁷

2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

Since arbitration is *per se* a sphere in which the parties have broad discretion in tailoring the arbitral proceedings, they may wish to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence altogether. However, under English law, this is only partially possible. Since S. 43 EAA 1996 is a mandatory rule, its exclusion is void.⁹¹⁸ In contrast, assistance according to S. 44 EAA 1996, as a

⁹¹¹ S. 44 (3) EAA 1996; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 179.

⁹¹² HARRIS et al., S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 43C.

⁹¹³ S. 34 (2)(g) EAA 1996.

⁹¹⁴ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 141; HARRIS et al., S. 34 EAA 1996 n. 34K.

⁹¹⁵ TOMS, 17.

⁹¹⁶ *Norbrook Laboratories Ltd v. Tank* [2006] EWHC 1055 (Comm.).

⁹¹⁷ S. 34 (1) EAA 1996: It shall be for the tribunal to decide all procedural and evidential matters, subject to the right of the parties to agree any matter.

⁹¹⁸ S. 4 (1) i.c.w. Schedule 1 EAA 1996; SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 1; HARRIS et al., S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 43A.

non-mandatory provision, may be excluded.⁹¹⁹ To make things clear, the parties would be well advised to include an express statement on the exclusion of assistance according to S. 44 EAA 1996. In this regard, the EWHC has specified that in order to exclude S. 44 EAA 1996, neither a specific form of words nor a ‘very clear express’ agreement is necessary.⁹²⁰ Rather, the court considered that a general clause excluding state court legal proceedings until the dispute is heard and determined by arbitrators will suffice to exclude S. 44 EAA 1996.⁹²¹ Finally, the question of a complete loss of minimum legal protection does not arise under the EAA 1996, since the parties cannot completely waive the right to court assistance in the taking of evidence under S. 43 EAA 1996.

D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target

1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement

In the same way that parties can exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence under S. 44 EAA 1996 as a whole, certain types of evidence may also be excluded. This is usually done by way of an explicit limitation of discovery/disclosure in the arbitration agreement or by making reference to institutional arbitration rules or the IBA Rules.⁹²² State courts must respect this choice by denying any evidence request which is contrary to an agreement between the parties. However, the chances that a state court will take evidence in violation of such an agreement are very low. This is because the arbitral tribunal is bound by any agreement between the parties in relation to evidentiary issues, and the parties themselves will most likely not make an evidence request which is inconsistent with their own agreement.⁹²³ Nevertheless, if evidence is taken contrary to an explicit agreement between the parties, this will serve as grounds to challenge an award based on a ‘failure by the tribunal to conduct the proceedings in accordance with the procedure agreed by the parties’.⁹²⁴ This may be the case, for instance, if the tribunal itself initiates court assistance to examine a witness while the parties have agreed on documentary evidence only. If this witness examination has a substantial influence on the arbitral award, there is a good chance that a subsequent challenge to the arbitral award based on S. 68(2)(c) EAA 1996 will succeed.

919 S. 4(2) i.c.w. Schedule 1 EAA 1996 *e contrario*; SUTTON et al., n. 7-192.

920 *B v. S* [2011] EWHC 691 (Comm.), n. 8, 9, 78-90.

921 *Ibid.*, n. 2.

922 See e.g. Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules; Art. 3(9) IBA Rules.

923 S. 34(1) EAA 1996.

924 S. 68(2)(c) EAA 1996; see p. 180 et seqq. *infra*.

2. Evidence According to the EAA 1996

a. In General

Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 offer a wide range of measures for assistance in the taking of evidence. While S. 43 EAA 1996 concerns securing the attendance of a witness who is located in England, S. 44 EAA 1996 has a much broader focus. Because of the general rule that no state court should intervene except as provided by the EAA 1996, the list in S. 44 is exhaustive.⁹²⁵

b. Securing the Attendance of Witnesses

S. 43 EAA 1996 is inspired by Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML and serves to bring witnesses before the arbitral tribunal in order to give testimony or produce documents or other material evidence. This provision therefore has a broad scope of application which goes beyond the mere examination of witnesses. As a first condition, the witness must be in England (as opposed to S. 44 (2) (a) EAA 1996) and, in the absence of any clear indication, he or she must probably be an English resident rather than simply be located in England at the time of service of the witness summons.⁹²⁶

The second condition requires that arbitral proceedings be conducted on the English territory. Because S. 43 EAA 1996 is explicitly excluded as a whole from the general requirement that the seat of arbitration be within England (S. 2(3) EAA 1996), arbitral proceedings can be held temporarily in England to make use of the powers of S. 43 EAA 1996.⁹²⁷ An arbitral tribunal with its seat in France could therefore request the English courts to examine a certain witness located in England, if the arbitral tribunal itself or the French courts cannot act effectively.⁹²⁸ This second condition makes it quite clear that S. 43 EAA 1996 is available only once the arbitral tribunal has been constituted.⁹²⁹ If both conditions are met, the court procedures of the CPR 1998 may be used in the arbitral proceedings.⁹³⁰ As a consequence, a witness will be summoned according to Pt. 34 CPR 1998 and the respective practice directions will apply.⁹³¹

⁹²⁵ S. 1(c) EAA 1996; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 180.

⁹²⁶ S. 43 (3) (a) EAA 1996; SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 5.

⁹²⁷ SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 5; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 170; SUTTON et al., n. 7-212; O'CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-112.

⁹²⁸ Ss. 44 (2) (a) and (5) EAA 1996.

⁹²⁹ This stands in sharp contrast to cases of urgency pursuant to S. 44 (3) EAA 1996 according to which state courts can make orders for the preservation of evidence or assets.

⁹³⁰ S. 43 (1) EAA 1996.

⁹³¹ See CPR 1998 Practice Direction 34A (depositions and court attendance by witnesses; paras. 1.1-3.4) and 62 (arbitration; paras. 7.1-7.3).

Although this is mentioned under S. 43 (1) EAA 1996, the term ‘other material evidence’ remains unclear. In contrast, the English courts have ruled on several occasions on the (non-) availability of disclosure from third parties under S. 43 EAA 1996. In *BNP Paribas v. Deloitte & Touche LLP*, the High Court held that S. 43 EAA 1996 gives no right to order disclosure from third parties.⁹³² Consequently, instead of applying for the production of classes of documents as in disclosure proceedings under Rule 31.17 CPR 1998, an application pursuant to S. 43 EAA 1996 must specifically identify the party to the arbitration agreement against which the remedy is sought and a description of the documents in question.⁹³³ Regarding disclosure, it is up to the arbitral tribunal—and not the assisting state court—to decide whether and to what extent to grant disclosure.⁹³⁴

c. Court Powers Exercisable in Support of Arbitral Proceedings

S. 44 EAA 1996 aims to redefine the relationship between arbitral tribunals and state courts by providing the state courts with several powers in case the arbitral tribunal cannot act, either at all or effectively.⁹³⁵ Also, where the conditions of S. 43 EAA 1996 are not met, an application pursuant to S. 44 (2)(a) EAA 1996 may be made.⁹³⁶ As can be seen in S. 44 EAA 1996, the state courts have considerable scope to assist in the taking of evidence. Consequently, under the respective conditions, the English courts may assist in relation to the taking of evidence regarding witnesses⁹³⁷ (lit. a), preservation of evidence⁹³⁸ (lit. b), measures concerning property⁹³⁹ (lit. c), the

⁹³² *BNP Paribas v. Deloitte & Touche LLP* [2003] EWHC 2874 (Comm.), n. 12; O’CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-115.

⁹³³ *Stuart Peter and Anor v. Skylet Andrew* [2009] EWHC 1511 (QB), n. 3; *Tajik Aluminium Plant v. Hydro Aluminium AS & Ors* [2006] EWCA 1218 (Civ.), 24 et seqq.; *BNP Paribas v. Deloitte & Touche LLP* [2004] EWHC 2874 (Comm.), n. 14; see also *Assimina Maritime Ltd. v. Pakistan Shipping Corp* [2004] EWHC 3005 (Comm.), n. 16; *South Tyneside Borough Council v. Wickes Building Supplies* [2004] EWHC 2428 (Comm.), n. 23 (i).

⁹³⁴ S. 34 (2) (d) EAA 1996: ‘...whether any and if so which documents or classes of documents should be disclosed between and produced by the parties and at what stage’. The former rule of S. 12 (6) (b) EAA 1950 contained the state court’s power to order disclosure, which has been handed over to the arbitral tribunal under the EAA 1996 (*Tajik Aluminium Plant v. Hydro Aluminium AS & Ors* [2006] EWCA 1218 (Civ.), n. 26; SUTTON et al., n. 7-213).

⁹³⁵ EAA Report (1996), n. 214.

⁹³⁶ SUTTON et al., n. 7-198. This applies to cases where either witnesses are located and/or the arbitration is conducted outside of England (S. 43 (3) EAA 1996).

⁹³⁷ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 180 et seqq.; SUTTON et al., n. 7-198; SHEPPARD, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 3.

⁹³⁸ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 182 et seq.; SUTTON et al., n. 7-199; SHEPPARD, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 4.

⁹³⁹ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 183; SUTTON et al., n. 7-200; SHEPPARD, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 5.

sale of goods⁹⁴⁰ (lit. d) and interim injunctions⁹⁴¹ (lit. e). As with S. 43 EAA 1996, third parties will not be ordered to disclose documents.⁹⁴² For instance, an English court will most likely grant a request from an arbitral tribunal with its seat in Switzerland to inspect a certain property in England which belongs to a party if the arbitral tribunal and the Swiss courts are unable to act effectively.⁹⁴³

In English case law, there have been some discussions on the scope of the assistance provided by state courts in urgent cases.⁹⁴⁴ S. 44 (3) EAA 1996 authorises a state court to ‘make such orders as it thinks necessary for the purpose of preserving evidence or assets’. In *Cetelem v. Roust* the EWCA had to decide whether S. 44 (3) EAA 1996 encompasses the powers as stated in Ss. 44 (1) and (2) EAA 1996. It held that S. 44 (3) EAA 1996 is not restricted to orders for the preservation of evidence or assets; the court can make any order as provided in subsection (2), as long as it is ‘necessary for the purpose of preserving evidence or assets’.⁹⁴⁵ Furthermore, it applied a rather broad interpretation of S. 44 (3) EAA 1996, defining ‘assets’ not only as tangible assets, but also as choses in action, including contractual rights.⁹⁴⁶

3. Foreign Types of Evidence

Both Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 equip state courts assisting in arbitration with the same powers as are available in state court proceedings.⁹⁴⁷ This seems to indicate that the English courts will assist in the taking of evidence only pur-

940 MERKIN/FLANNERY, 183; SUTTON et al., n. 7-201.

941 *Ibid.*, n. 7-202; MERKIN/FLANNERY, 183 et seqq.; SHEPPARD, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 7; O’CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-95 et seqq.

942 See p.173 *supra*.

943 S. 2(3) EAA 1996 i.c.w. Ss. 44 (2) (a) and (5) EAA 1996; HARRIS, S. 2 EAA 1996 n. 2E.

944 MERKIN/FLANNERY, 179 et seq.; O’CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-61 et seqq. Regarding the term ‘urgency’, see *Travelers Insurance Co Ltd v. Countrywide Surveyors Ltd* [2010] EWHC 2455 (TCC), n. 4: ‘Section 44 (3) of the 1996 Act was intended to be invoked in exceptional circumstances where, for example, the critical evidence was about to be lost forever or where there was a risk that it would be destroyed or otherwise tampered with, such as to make it of no probative value.’; *Starlight Shipping Co v. Tai Ping Insurance Co Ltd.* [2007] EWHC 1893 (Comm.), n. 22: ‘Urgency, in this context must have reference to the question whether or not arbitrators could reach any decision on the point in any relevant timescale.’

945 *Cetelem SA v. Roust Holding Ltd* [2005] EWCA 618 (Civ.), n. 49.

946 *Ibid.*, n. 57; see also *AB v. CD* [2014] EWHC 1 (QB), n. 19 et seq.; *Euroil Ltd v. Cameroon Offshore Petroleum Sarl* [2014] EWHC 12 (Comm.), n. 12 et seq.; HARRIS et al., S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 44H; SHEPPARD, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 7; SUTTON et al., S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 7-194; O’CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-62.

947 S. 43(1) and S. 44(1) EAA 1996.

suant to the CPR 1998.⁹⁴⁸ Assisting state courts are therefore not bound by any agreement between the parties concerning either a foreign law applicable to the substance of the dispute or foreign procedural rules governing the arbitral proceedings when assisting in the taking of evidence. As a consequence, the method as proposed by Steinbrück under German law—that is, to adapt foreign types of evidence until they are compliant with domestic law—seems questionable under English law.⁹⁴⁹ In *Commerce & Industry Insurance Co. (Canada) v. Lloyd's Underwriters*, the EWHC denied a request to examine a witness according to US-style discovery.⁹⁵⁰ Unsurprisingly, this request was considered ‘inappropriate’ in the sense of S. 2(3) EAA 1996.⁹⁵¹ It is therefore possible that English courts may allow evidence requests according to a foreign law and adapt them to comply with English law, as long as they do not substantially differ from proceedings under the CPR 1998.

4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence

In common with the approach taken under German and French law, Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 overcome the difficulties presented by the HEC and EER—that is, the lengthy and cumbersome process involved—by providing direct assistance to international arbitral tribunals.⁹⁵² The parties to arbitration thus will most likely not initiate a request by means of the HEC or EER, but directly approach an English court based on Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996.⁹⁵³ Theoretically, it seems possible that an arbitral tribunal may also approach an English court in order to request court assistance via another foreign state court. However, due to the lengthy process that this would involve, the arbitral tribunal is more likely to try to approach that foreign court directly.

5. Target of Evidence

Regarding the target of evidence, a clear distinction must be drawn between Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996. While the former serves to force third parties to produce evidence, the latter is available only against the parties to the arbitration. To secure the attendance of witnesses according to S. 43 EAA 1996, third parties can be ordered, by means of a witness summons, to give testimony or

948 TOMS, 15.

949 See p. 141 et seq. *supra*.

950 *Commerce and Industry Co, Canada v. Certain Underwriters of Lloyds of London* [2002] EWHC 2 All ER, 211.

951 *Ibid.*

952 SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 5.

953 In Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the HEC entered into force in 1976 (see the current status).

produce evidence for an ongoing arbitration. However, one must bear in mind that a third party who receives a witness summons can object if privilege applies or if the requested documents are not relevant to the proceedings. S. 43(4) EAA 1996 is quite clear on this point:

“A person shall not be compelled by virtue of this section to produce any document or other material evidence which he could not be compelled to produce in legal proceedings.”

For instance, nobody can be forced to reveal documents which are protected by attorney-client privilege.⁹⁵⁴ To set aside a witness summons, the potential witness must make an application to the court that issued it (in arbitration, usually the EWHC).⁹⁵⁵ In contrast, a witness who fails to comply with a witness summons without sufficient reason risks being in contempt of court, which may incur a fine or even imprisonment.⁹⁵⁶ Finally, as previously mentioned (*see* p. 173 *supra*), state courts cannot order disclosure of documents from a third-party witness under S. 43 EAA 1996.

On the other hand, there is some debate as to whether S. 44 EAA 1996 can be used against third parties. The legislative materials of the EAA 1996 state merely that S. 44 EAA 1996 may have effect on third parties without saying that they are a direct target.⁹⁵⁷ In *Cruz City 1 Mauritius Holding v. Unitech Ltd.* it was held that because of the wording in S. 44 EAA 1996, which states ‘for the purposes of and in relation to arbitral proceedings’, S. 44 EAA 1996 applies only between the parties to the arbitration.⁹⁵⁸ Moreover, because this provision applies even if the seat of arbitration is outside the English territory, the respective judge will consider it unlikely that a state court could make orders against third parties domiciled anywhere in the world.⁹⁵⁹ This view is arguably correct, even though it would be desirable if S. 44 EAA 1996 had the same broad scope of application in proceedings as S. 43 EAA 1996.

⁹⁵⁴ Rules 31.3(i)(b) and 31.19 CPR 1998; SUTTON et al., n. 7-213; SHEPPARD, S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 6; HARRIS et al., S. 43 EAA 1996 n. 43G; BURROWS, n. 22.61.

⁹⁵⁵ Rule 34.3(4) CPR 1998; CPR 1998 Practice Direction 34A, para. 2.2.

⁹⁵⁶ Rule 34.10 CPR 1998; Pt. 81 CPR 1998; CPR 1998 Practice Direction 34A, para. 4.11; O'CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, n. 20-114; SUTTON et al., n. 7-214; *see also* the official form of a witness summons.

⁹⁵⁷ EAA Report (1996), n. 214.

⁹⁵⁸ *Cruz City 1 Mauritius Holding v. Unitech Ltd. & Ors* [2014] EWHC 3704 (Comm.), n. 48; confirmed in *DTEK Trading S.A. v. Morozov & Anor* [2017] EWHC 94 (Comm.); for a summary of the previous contrary case law *see PJSC Vseukrainskyi Aktsionernyi Bank v. Sergey Maksimov & Ors* [2013] EWHC 3203 (Comm.), n. 72 et seqq.

⁹⁵⁹ *Cruz City 1 Mauritius Holding v. Unitech Ltd. & Ors* [2014] EWHC 3704 (Comm.), n. 49.

E. Competence of the *Juge d'Appui*

1. Scope of Discretion

Court assistance in the taking of evidence according to the English *lex arbitri* must always be read in combination with S. 2(3) EAA 1996 (last para.):

“The court may refuse to exercise any such power if, in the opinion of the court, the fact that the seat of the arbitration is outside England and Wales or Northern Ireland, or that when designated or determined the seat is likely to be outside England and Wales or Northern Ireland, makes it inappropriate to do so.”

State courts therefore have wide discretion in deciding whether to grant or deny assistance in the taking of evidence and the boundary of this provision must be determined by case law. The aim of S. 2(3) EAA 1996 is to avoid possible conflicts with another jurisdiction.⁹⁶⁰ In case of a conflict, the respective state court is therefore entitled to deny its assistance. An example is *Commerce & Industry Insurance Co. (Canada) v. Lloyd's Underwriters*.⁹⁶¹ In arbitral proceedings conducted in New York, a claimant requested an *ex parte* order for two witnesses in England to attend for examination under US law, to make a deposition in a discovery proceeding. Although the court argued that it had jurisdiction based on S. 2(3) i.c.w. S. 44(2)(a) EAA 1996, they refused the request on several grounds. First, the EWHC held that discovery proceedings do not form part of English law and consequently state courts have no power to order a witness for examination for the sole purpose of determining whether he or she has information which may help in the case at hand:

“The procedure adopted under the curial law differs in this respect from that which applies under our law in a way which, on this ground alone, makes it inappropriate in my view to make the order now being sought.”⁹⁶²

This would suggest that as long as the foreign law—or rather, the way of taking evidence under a foreign law—does not substantially differ from English law, an evidence request may be considered ‘appropriate’. It is therefore at least conceivable that English courts could adapt evidence requests pursuant to

960 EAA Supplementary Report (1997), n. 15.

961 *Commerce and Industry Co, Canada v. Certain Underwriters of Lloyds of London* [2002] EWHC 2 All ER (Comm.); MERKIN/FLANNERY, 181 et seq.; ILLMER/STEINBRÜCK, 337 et seq.; HARRIS et al., S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 44H.

962 *Commerce and Industry Co, Canada v. Certain Underwriters of Lloyds of London* [2002] EWHC 2 All ER (Comm.), 205.

foreign law until they are compatible with English law.⁹⁶³ Although this first argument in itself was sufficient to reject the request, the EWHC further stated that the requesting party had presented no evidence regarding the importance of the examination to the arbitration:

“The greater the likely inconvenience to the witness, the greater the need to satisfy the court that he can give evidence which is necessary for the just determination of the dispute.”⁹⁶⁴

As the application had been made *ex parte*, this statement is unsurprising; it would most likely not have been made if the arbitral tribunal itself or a party with the consent of the arbitral tribunal had initiated the request. This decision shows how the English courts can use their discretion according to S. 2(3) EAA 1996 to find a balance between assisting foreign arbitral proceedings and protecting third-party witnesses based in England.⁹⁶⁵

2. Principle of Subsidiarity

Irrespective of whether the matter is urgent, according to S. 44 (5) EAA 1996, state courts can act only insofar as the arbitral tribunal cannot take the evidence itself:

“In any case the court shall act only if or to the extent that the arbitral tribunal, and any arbitral or other institution or person vested by the parties with power in that regard, has no power or is unable for the time being to act effectively.”

They can therefore act only if the arbitral tribunal either has no power or is unable to act quickly or effectively enough.⁹⁶⁶ This applies to situations where the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted⁹⁶⁷ or lacks coercive power—for example, to enforce a freezing order or restrain a (third) party from doing something.⁹⁶⁸ Logically, this does not apply to S. 43 EAA 1996, where the parties *per se* cannot force a third party to produce evidence. As far as can be seen, cases in which the taking of evidence by the arbitral tribunal

⁹⁶³ For this approach under German law, *see* p. 141 *supra*.

⁹⁶⁴ *Commerce and Industry Co, Canada v. Certain Underwriters of Lloyds of London* [2002] EWHC 2 All ER (Comm.), 211.

⁹⁶⁵ ILLMER/STEINBRÜCK, 338.

⁹⁶⁶ EAA Report (1996), n. 215; for the similar German approach, *see* § 1050 (1) CCP DE.

⁹⁶⁷ *Euroil Ltd. v. Cameroon Offshore Petroleum SARL* [2014] EWHC 12 (Comm.), n. 11; *Permasteelisa Japan KK v. Bouyguesstroi & Anor* [2007] EWHC 3508 (TCC), n. 42; *Cetelem S.A. v. Roust Holdings Ltd.*, [2005], EWCA 618 (Civ.), n. 71; DEY et al., n. 554.

⁹⁶⁸ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 177 et seq. with reference to *Pacific Maritime (Asia) Ltd. v. Holystone Overseas Ltd* [2007] EWHC 2319 (Comm.), n. 80.

would involve a disproportionately significant effort, and where state court assistance is therefore sought according to S. 44 EAA 1996, have not been the subject of any debate in English legal doctrine or case law. Still, this scenario could easily be included under the term ‘unable ... to act effectively’.⁹⁶⁹

S. 44(5) EAA 1996 acknowledges the overall principle of the EAA 1996 by giving the arbitral tribunal full control over the arbitral proceedings.⁹⁷⁰ Because the arbitral tribunal is vested with the necessary powers, not at least as regards evidentiary issues, under S. 44 EAA 1996 state courts will examine whether the arbitral tribunal itself could not act effectively.⁹⁷¹ Also, because S. 44(5) EAA 1996 makes direct reference to arbitration institutions, state courts must consider whether, in an arbitration held under institutional arbitration rules, an emergency arbitrator could act more effectively.⁹⁷² Indeed, in an LCIA arbitration in 2016 (*Gerald Metals SA v. Timis & Ors*), it was held that parties cannot resort to state courts for a ‘second attempt’ if the relief sought through an emergency arbitrator is unsuccessful.⁹⁷³ Finally, according to S. 44(6) EAA 1996, state courts are competent to decide that any order made under S. 44 EAA 1996 may be varied or set aside by the arbitral tribunal once it has been constituted or any time during the arbitral proceedings.⁹⁷⁴ It is therefore at the discretion of the respective court to pronounce on the longevity of its orders.⁹⁷⁵

3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement

Thus far, the possibility to examine the arbitration agreement under Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 does not seem to have been the subject of debate in English legal doctrine or case law. According to S. 30(1)(a) EAA 1996, the competence-competence principle means that the arbitral tribunal is competent to decide whether there is a valid arbitration agreement.⁹⁷⁶ If there is a dispute regarding the validity of the arbitration agreement, a party may object to the

969 S. 44(5) EAA 1996.

970 S. 34 EAA 1996; O’CALLAGHAN/FINNIS, S. 44 EAA 1996 n. 20-71.

971 As regards the power of the arbitral tribunal to order disclosure instead of state courts see NB *Three Shipping Ltd. v. Harebell Shipping Ltd* [2004] EWHC 2001 (Comm.), n. 14.

972 SUTTON et al., n. 7-195; see e.g. Art. 29 ICC Rules; Art. 43 Swiss Rules; Rule 30 SIAC Rules.

973 *Gerald Metals SA v. Timis & Ors* [2016] EWHC 2327, n. 7.

974 MERKIN/FLANNERY, 199.

975 SUTTON et al., n. 9-197. Because an arbitral tribunal has no power over third parties, SUTTON et al. suggest that the state court in charge can make an order that lasts for the duration of the proceedings.

976 EAA Report (1996), n. 137 et seqq.; HARRIS et al., S. 30 EAA 1996 n. 30C; see also S. 9(4) EAA 1996 as regards the examination of the arbitration agreement under a stay of legal proceedings.

arbitral tribunal's jurisdiction pursuant to S. 31 EAA 1996 and state courts therefore will not examine the arbitration agreement under Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996.⁹⁷⁷ Furthermore, the examination of the arbitration agreement is possible in the context of recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award under the NYC.⁹⁷⁸

F. Appellate Remedies

As regards orders under S. 44 EAA 1996, the leave of the court is required for any appeal.⁹⁷⁹ In comparison to other *leges arbitri*, this provision is unique.⁹⁸⁰ It aims to limit the role of the court and ensures a high degree of finality—regarding not only S. 44 EAA 1996, but also many other provisions in the EAA 1996.⁹⁸¹ Consequently, if a state court finds that there are no flaws in an order of S. 44 EAA 1996 that would constitute sufficient grounds for an appeal, the request under S. 44(7) EAA 1996 will most likely be denied. Since this provision gives wide discretion to the respective state court, it remains to be seen whether English courts will interpret this broadly or narrowly. However, there seems to be a consensus that it is possible to apply to the EWHC without permission if the state court did not have jurisdiction at the outset⁹⁸² or if the court's refusal to leave to appeal was arbitrary, unfair or even against Art. 6 EHRC.⁹⁸³ Applying the rules of appellate remedies against an arbitral award by analogy, an appeal may be filed with the EWHC in London within 28 days of the parties being notified of the decision under S. 44 EAA 1996.⁹⁸⁴

In the absence of any explicit legal bases, the aforementioned appeal procedure also applies to S. 43 EAA 1996. In this regard, the procedure mentioned under S. 44 EAA 1996 likewise applies accordingly. A distinction must

977 SUTTON et al., n. 2-012.

978 Arts. III(3) and V(1)(a) NYC.

979 S. 44(7) EAA 1996.

980 See e.g. the approach under German (p. 146 et seqq. *supra*), French (p. 163 et seq. *supra*), US (p. 212 et seq. *infra*) and Swiss law (p. 256 et seqq. *infra*).

981 See e.g. Ss. 12(6), 17(4), 18(5), 21(6), 24(6), 25(5) and 42(5) EAA 1996; *Cetelem SA v. Roust Holding Ltd* [2005] EWCA 618 (Civ.), n. 24; *CGU International Insurance Plc & Ors v. AstraZeneca Insurance Co Ltd* [2006] EWCA 1340 (Civ.), n. 3 as regards S. 69 EAA 1996 (appeal on point of law): 'It enacts a concern, in the interest of party autonomy, privacy and finality, that such awards should not be readily transferred to the courts for appellate review.'; SUTTON et al., n. 8-128.

982 *Cetelem SA v. Roust Holding Ltd* [2005] EWCA 618 (Civ.), n. 25.

983 *CGU International Insurance Plc & Ors v. AstraZeneca Insurance Co Ltd* [2006] EWCA 1340 (Civ.), n. 98.

984 S. 70(3) EAA 1996.

be made, however, regarding the assessment of evidence, which falls under the exclusive competence of the arbitral tribunal and not any state court under S. 43 or 44 EAA 1996.

The threshold for challenging an arbitral award is high. Although S. 68(2)(c) EAA 1996 provides that an arbitral award may be set aside due to a ‘failure by the tribunal to conduct the proceedings in accordance with the procedure agreed by the parties’, this can be done only by showing that the conditions set out in S. 68(1) EAA 1996 are met. Accordingly, a party must demonstrate that there has been a serious irregularity which affected the arbitral tribunal, the proceedings or the award. This is no easy task; thus, the EAA 1996 ensures a high degree of finality regarding arbitral awards.⁹⁸⁵ With regard to the timeframe for appeal, according to S. 70(3) EAA 1996, an appeal must be brought before the EWHC within 28 days of the date of the award.

G. Summary

Like the approaches taken in the *leges arbitri* of Germany and France, the English approach is very liberal in many ways and seeks to preserve party autonomy and contractual choice. First, although the EAA 1996 usually applies only if the seat of arbitration is in the English territory, court assistance in the taking of evidence is explicitly excluded from this requirement. The parties are therefore at liberty to make requests for the attendance of witnesses or to avail of additional state court powers in support of the arbitral proceedings.

Second, unlike other *leges arbitri*, the arbitral tribunal’s consent to seek court assistance is not necessary if both parties agree to this course of action.⁹⁸⁶ In exceptional urgent cases, a party may resort to a state court *ex parte* in order to preserve evidence or assets. In the absence of any explicit legal basis, the arbitral tribunal, in executing its mandate to decide whether and to what extent it should take the initiative in ascertaining the facts and law, can seek court assistance in taking evidence itself. If the parties wish to exclude this possibility, they can only exclude the powers according to S. 44 EAA 1996; this is not possible with regard to S. 43 EAA 1996, which has mandatory application.

Third, while the attendance of a witness to testify or produce evidence under S. 43 EAA 1996 can be requested only if that witness is located and the arbitral proceedings are conducted in England, the spectrum of possible measures under S. 44 EAA 1996 is much broader. According to S. 43 EAA 1996,

985 MERKIN/FLANNERY, 305.

986 *See e.g.* p. 169 *supra*.

third parties can be forced to appear before an arbitral tribunal to give evidence, but this provision cannot be used to request disclosure from third parties under the CPR 1998. Because S. 43 EAA 1996 relates to third parties, they do not have to reveal evidence which is irrelevant or protected by privilege. In contrast, orders under S. 44 EAA 1996 can be imposed only on the parties to the arbitration. Unlike S. 43 EAA 1996, if the case is urgent and evidence or assets must be preserved, S. 44 EAA 1996 plays a role even before the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. As regards foreign types of evidence which are requested to be executed before an English court, this depends on how narrowly the appropriateness rule set out in S. 2(3) EAA 1996 is interpreted; a clear-cut answer in this regard is therefore not possible.

Fourth, the respective *juge d'appui* has wide discretion in deciding whether and to what extent court assistance in the taking of evidence should be granted. As previously discussed (*see p. 177 et seqq. supra*), state courts can deny court assistance in the taking of evidence solely on the grounds that the seat of arbitration, which is or will likely be outside of England, would make this inappropriate. Obviously, this leaves a lot of room for interpretation. As regards evidence, English courts seem to deny evidence requests from foreign arbitral tribunals if they are substantially different from English law. In addition, the importance of the taking of evidence and its link to the outcome of the arbitration must be demonstrated in order to obtain assistance. As a consequence, the English courts will consider the usefulness, appropriateness and relevance of the request, unlike under German law, for example. Moreover, assistance will be granted only if the arbitral tribunal cannot take the evidence itself. This is mostly the case if the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted or if evidence is sought from third parties. This should also apply to situations where the taking of evidence by the arbitral tribunal would involve a disproportionately significant effort. Finally, a state court whose assistance is sought under Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996 is not entitled to conduct a full examination of the arbitration agreement, but only on a *prima facie* basis. The extensive examination forms part of a separate procedure under the EAA 1996 (*see p. 179 supra*).

Finally, to minimise state court involvement in arbitral proceedings, the leave of the assisting state court is required to make an appeal. The threshold for granting or denying such a request remains at the discretion of the respective state court. However, if it never actually had jurisdiction or if the refusal to appeal was arbitrary, unfair or in breach of Art. 6 EHRC, the parties can appeal to the EWHC. Moreover, it has been demonstrated that the EAA 1996 imposes a high threshold for challenging an arbitral award and therefore guarantees a high degree of finality.

All in all, the English *lex arbitri* and case law take a very pro-arbitration stance. Therefore, if the parties wish to force witnesses to appear before the arbitral tribunal or use the powers of the English courts to support arbitral proceedings, they should not be too hesitant to initiate an evidence request. However, the issue of whether the English courts will consider evidence appropriate nonetheless remains.

§ 5 USA

A. Introduction

In recent years, international arbitration in the USA has become increasingly popular. The caseload of the ICDR continues to grow, promoting the USA as an attractive forum for arbitration.⁹⁸⁷ Unlike the detailed provisions of English law, the approach under US law is in many ways different. On the one hand, the US courts have adopted a very arbitration-friendly stance, acknowledging and enforcing arbitral agreements and awards. On the other hand, however, the US *lex arbitri* is one of the most wide-ranging and complex arbitral legal frameworks at the federal, state and international levels.⁹⁸⁸ This is also true when it comes to assisting international arbitral tribunals in gathering evidence.⁹⁸⁹ Since a comprehensive examination of the relevant procedures in all fifty states would exceed the scope of the present discussion, the following analysis will concentrate on the issue at a purely federal and international level, including federal court decisions applying federal and international law.

Arbitration at the federal level is mainly governed by the Federal Arbitration Act (FAA USA), which was first enacted in 1925 and forms part of the USC (Title 9). In contrast to other *leges arbitri*, it is not based on the UNICTRAL ML, which has served as a model for the laws in only eight out of fifty US states.⁹⁹⁰ Due to the age of the FAA USA, many aspects of arbitration have been defined by case law over time.⁹⁹¹ Besides chapter one, which mainly governs domestic arbitration matters, the NYC and the so-called

⁹⁸⁷ In 2019, the ICDR dealt with 9,737 commercial cases; see the 2019 statistics.

⁹⁸⁸ SHORE et al., Introduction, 6.

⁹⁸⁹ O'MALLEY, n. 3.107.

⁹⁹⁰ This applies for the states of California, Connecticut, Florida, Georgia, Illinois, Louisiana, Oregon and Texas (see the current status); for a summary of the predominant arbitral legal frameworks among the fifty states, see AMIRFAR et al., 1 et seqq.; SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, *Obtaining Evidence*, 558 et seqq.

⁹⁹¹ Balthasar-NIEDERMAIER, n. 5.

Panama Convention⁹⁹² are applicable, due to their implementation into the FAA USA in 1970 and 1990 in chapters two and three respectively.⁹⁹³ While the FAA USA sometimes applies to international arbitral proceedings –for instance, to refer the parties to arbitration or vacate an arbitral award–this does not apply to evidentiary issues if the seat of arbitration is outside the US.⁹⁹⁴ Thus, § 7 FAA USA, which governs the possibility to summon witnesses to assist with arbitration–applies only to arbitral proceedings with their seat in the USA; international arbitral proceedings with their seat abroad are therefore excluded.⁹⁹⁵ The question thus arises as to whether there are other possibilities to obtain evidence located in the USA to assist in international arbitration.

B. Legal Bases

1. Federal Rules of Civil Procedure

The FRCP USA provide for a wide range of different discovery measures in state court litigation.⁹⁹⁶ In international arbitration, however, it is commonly accepted that broad discovery rights are not available, subject to a divergent agreement between the parties, the arbitration rules and the discretion of the arbitral tribunal.⁹⁹⁷ The reasons for this resistance towards broad discovery are clear when the matter is considered from the parties' point of view, since they are seeking a faster, less expensive alternative to state court litigation. Moreover, the parties in international arbitration often have different ideas and approaches as to how the taking of evidence should be conducted (*see p. 7 et seqq. supra*).

992 Inter-American Convention on International Commercial Arbitration.

993 SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, *Obtaining Evidence*, 555.

994 § 206 and § 303 FAA USA; *see also* Art. II(3) NYC; STEINBRÜCK, 168 et seqq.; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 38; as regards vacating an arbitral award under the FAA USA *see p. 212 et seqq. infra*.

995 § 7 FAA USA only confers enforcement authority on the 'district court for the district in which such arbitrators, or a majority of them, are sitting; *see also* National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV, (2d Cir.1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 886; FRIEDMAN/LAVAUD, 4; SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, FAA, 352 et seqq.

996 Rule 26-37 FRCP USA; SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, *Obtaining Evidence*, 587 et seqq.

997 DELANEY/FRUCHTER, 21; *see also* Art. 21(10) ICDR Rules: 'Depositions, interrogatories, and requests to admit as developed for use in US court procedures generally are not appropriate procedures for obtaining information in an arbitration under these Rules.'

What is more, the US courts have confirmed several times that pre-trial discovery is generally not available in arbitral proceedings.⁹⁹⁸ Nevertheless, discovery has been granted in arbitral proceedings with their seats outside the USA in very few exceptional urgent cases—primarily maritime cases—in order to preserve evidence.⁹⁹⁹ As an example, in *Deiulemar Compagnia v. Pacific Eternity*, a US District Court ordered an inspection of a damaged engine of a ship which was soon scheduled to leave US waters. In the ongoing proceedings, the Court of Appeals of the 4th Cir. stated that although discovery rules typically do not apply to arbitral disputes, their application in the present case was justified due to ‘extraordinary circumstances’, as otherwise the requested information would be unavailable.¹⁰⁰⁰

As far as can be seen, this case law in maritime law has not yet led to any similar decisions in other areas of law, let alone to a common principle regarding when and under what conditions foreign arbitral tribunals can seek discovery under the FRCP USA. Nonetheless, it is noteworthy that direct discovery pursuant to the FRCP USA is not altogether excluded in international arbitration, but is reserved for extraordinary circumstances, which seem to be defined on a case-by-case basis. Furthermore, discovery under the FRCP USA might be available through 28 USC § 1782.

2. 28 USC § 1782

a. General Scope of Application

US statute law provides a powerful litigation and investigation tool, empowering US district courts to assist in discovery in aid of a ‘foreign or international tribunal’. 28 USC § 1782 (hereinafter ‘§ 1782’) reads as follows:

“(a) The district court of the district in which a person resides or is found may order him to give his testimony or statement or to produce a document or other thing for use in a proceeding in a foreign or international tribunal, including criminal investigations conducted before formal accusation.

The order may be made pursuant to a letter rogatory issued, or request made, by a foreign or international tribunal or upon the application of

998 *Burton v. Bush*, 614 F.2d 389 (4th Cir. 1980), n. 5: ‘When contracting parties stipulate that disputes will be submitted to arbitration, they relinquish the right to certain procedural niceties which are normally associated with a formal trial. ... One of these accoutrements is the right to pre-trial discovery.’

999 *In re Application of the Petition of Compania Chilena de Navegacion*, 2004 WL 1084243 (E.D.N.Y 2004); *Deiulemar Compagnia v. M/V. Allegra*, 198 F.3d 473 (4th Cir. 1999); *In Re Deiulemar di Navigazione S.P.A.*, 153 F.R.D. 592, 593 (E.D. La. 1994); *STEINBRÜCK*, 188 et seq.

1000 *Deiulemar Compagnia v. M/V. Allegra*, 198 F.3d 473, 476, 479 (4th Cir. 1999).

any interested person and may direct that the testimony or statement be given, or the document or other thing be produced, before a person appointed by the court. By virtue of his appointment, the person appointed has power to administer any necessary oath and take the testimony or statement.

The order may prescribe the practice and procedure, which may be in whole or part the practice and procedure of the foreign country or the international tribunal, for taking the testimony or statement or producing the document or other thing. To the extent that the order does not prescribe otherwise, the testimony or statement shall be taken, and the document or other thing produced, in accordance with the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

A person may not be compelled to give his testimony or statement or to produce a document or other thing in violation of any legally applicable privilege.

(b) This chapter does not preclude a person within the United States from voluntarily giving his testimony or statement, or producing a document or other thing, for use in a proceeding in a foreign or international tribunal before any person and in any manner acceptable to him."

However, the application of § 1782 in international arbitration remains unclear. The increasing split among US courts and in legal doctrine not only is confusing, but also suggests that, to be on the safe side, arbitration practitioners should resist trying to make use of § 1782, especially in private commercial arbitration. However, the following examination shows that this conclusion is not appropriate in all circumstances. This follows from a closer look at US case law, especially a ground-breaking Supreme Court decision from 2004. Therefore, before examining § 1782 according to the common structure, as with the previous examined *leges arbitri*, the questionable applicability of this section in arbitration must first be discussed.

b. Legislative Background

§ 1782 was enacted in 1948 to assist foreign state courts with discovery.¹⁰⁰¹ In 1964 the word 'court' in § 1782 was replaced with the wording 'foreign or international tribunal', to broaden the scope of this section and avoid its appli-

¹⁰⁰¹ H.R. Rep. 1052, 88th Cong. 1st Sess. (1963), 9; BENTO, 32 et seqq.; The history of discovery in aid of foreign proceedings goes indeed much further back; see *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 247 et seqq. (2004); MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 38 et seqq.; BEALE et al., 56 et seqq.; O'MALLEY/EATON, 112 et seqq.; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 2 et seqq.

cation being restricted merely to conventional courts.¹⁰⁰² It was expected that other countries would initiate similar reforms.¹⁰⁰³ Reading this passage, one might easily conclude that arbitral tribunals are included.¹⁰⁰⁴ Unfortunately, however, US Congress (hereinafter ‘Congress’) never defined the term ‘foreign or international tribunal’ sufficiently specifically.¹⁰⁰⁵ It merely stated the following:

“The word ‘tribunal’ is used to make it clear that assistance is not confined to proceedings before conventional courts. For example, it is intended that the courts have discretion to grant assistance when proceedings are pending before investigating magistrates in foreign countries. (...). In view of the constant growth of administrative and quasi-judicial proceedings all over the world, the necessity for obtaining evidence in the United States may be as impelling in proceedings before a foreign administrative tribunal or quasi-judicial agency as in proceedings before a conventional foreign court. Subsection (a) therefore provides the possibility of U.S. judicial assistance in connection with all such proceedings.”¹⁰⁰⁶

Although the wording remains vague, one may conclude that Congress’ overall intention was to broaden the scope of international court assistance in the taking of evidence by increasing the powers of district courts in this respect.¹⁰⁰⁷

c. Case Law

I. Introduction

In light of the legislative history, it is unsurprising that for a long time, the use of § 1782 in international arbitral proceedings was non-existent or denied.¹⁰⁰⁸

1002 H.R. Rep. 1052, 88th Cong. 1st Sess. (1963), 9; Sen. Rep. 1580, 88th Cong. 2nd Sess. (1964), 3788; ELUL/MOSQUERA, n. 408. In addition, the replacement meant a combination between the former 22 USC § 270 to 270g which only addressed international tribunals, while the former 28 USC § 1782 to 1785 referred to foreign courts. The revisions in 1964 has therefore resulted in a combination of both provisions (*see also* SMIT, *International Tribunals*, 1264 et seqq.; SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 3).

1003 H.R. Rep. 1052, 88th Cong. 1st Sess. (1963), 20; SMIT, *International Litigation*, 1019; MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 38; BENTO, 54 et seq.

1004 BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 30.

1005 ELUL/MOSQUERA, n. 393 et seq.

1006 H.R. Rep. 1052, 88th Cong. 1st Sess. (1963), 9.

1007 *In re Request for Assistance from Ministry of Legal Affairs of Trinidad and Tobago petition Jospeh Azar*, 848 F.2d 1151, 1154 (11th Cir. 1988).

1008 *Application of Medway Power Ltd.*, 985 F. Supp. 402 (S.D.N.Y. 1997); *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 884 et seqq.; *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 918 et seqq.

Accordingly, arbitral tribunals and parties were forced to gather evidence in the USA through international judicial assistance under treaties such as the HEC.¹⁰⁰⁹ This situation changed dramatically following the Supreme Court's decision *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.* (hereinafter 'Intel') in 2004.¹⁰¹⁰ As a logical consequence, this shift in case law has led to a broad debate in legal doctrine and a split among various circuits. It therefore remains very unclear whether there is in fact a legal basis for US-style discovery in aid of international arbitration. Nevertheless, there are some commonalities among the decisions of various circuits. The following discussion tries to shed some light on the applicability of § 1782 by analysing various US court decisions prior to and after *Intel*. Needless to say, given the vast case law on § 1782, the discussion focuses on a selective examination rather than a comprehensive overview.

II. Decisions prior to Intel

Following the amendment of § 1782 in 1964, US courts from the 2d and 5th Cir. had several possibilities to express their views on the term 'foreign or international tribunal'.¹⁰¹¹ In *Application of Technostroyexport*, an NY district court (2d Cir.) stated bluntly that an arbitrator or an arbitration panel is a tribunal in the sense of § 1782.¹⁰¹² However, the court did not further elaborate on its decision, but denied the request for discovery because it had been made *ex parte*. The same applied in *Trygg-Hansa Ins. Co., Ltd.*, where discovery was sought in arbitral proceedings in England, but was denied because the district court (5th Cir.) considered the request an attempt to circumvent English disclosure rules.¹⁰¹³ Here again, the district court mentioned nothing regarding the applicability of § 1782 to arbitral proceedings. By contrast, in *Application of Medway Power Ltd.*, an NY district court (2d Cir.) denied discovery in aid of an arbitration held under the EAA 1996 because an arbitral tribunal was not considered a 'foreign and international tribunal'.¹⁰¹⁴ The

¹⁰⁰⁹ For the relationship between the HEC and § 1782, see p. 208 *infra*. As an exception to this, there have been a few rare cases in which arbitral tribunals have been supported by ordering discovery according to the FRCP USA (see p. 185 *supra*).

¹⁰¹⁰ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241 (2004); STRONG, 302 et seq.

¹⁰¹¹ See e.g. in the case of a letter rogatory by a Director of Inspection under the Income Tax Act of the Government of India in *Letters Rogatory Issued by Director of Inspection of Government of India*, 385 F.2d 1017 (2d Cir. 1967).

¹⁰¹² *Application of Technostroyexport*, 853 F. Supp. 695, 697 (S.D.N.Y. 1994).

¹⁰¹³ *In re Trygg-Hansa Ins. Co., Ltd.*, 896 F. Supp. 624 (E.D. La. 1995).

¹⁰¹⁴ *Application of Medway Power Ltd.*, 985 F. Supp. 402 (S.D.N.Y. 1997).

court argued that in amending §1782, Congress intended to assist only official ‘governmental agencies exercising a judicial or quasi-judicial’ role, and that consequently arbitral tribunals are excluded.¹⁰¹⁵

Two years later, in 1999, the decision in *National Broadcasting Company, Inc. and NBC Europe, Inc., v. Bear Stearns & Co., Inc.* (hereinafter ‘NBC’) was even clearer;¹⁰¹⁶ the 2d Cir. held that an ICC arbitration conducted in Mexico was not a proceeding under a foreign or international tribunal in the sense of §1782.¹⁰¹⁷ The court held that although it has been argued that the term ‘foreign or international tribunal’ is ambiguous and does not necessarily include or exclude arbitral tribunals, the legislative history shows that Congress had in mind only ‘governmental entities, such as administrative or investigative courts, acting as state instrumentalities or with the authority of the state’.¹⁰¹⁸ This stems from the fact that the term ‘international tribunal’ in the new §1782 came from the former 22 USC § 270-270g, enacted in 1930 to compel witnesses to appear in state arbitral proceedings between Canada and the USA.¹⁰¹⁹

Furthermore, the court held that allowing foreign arbitral tribunals to make use of §1782 would be in stark contrast to court assistance in the taking of evidence in domestic arbitration pursuant to § 7 FAA USA, which is far more limited.¹⁰²⁰ This result, the court reasoned, could not have been intended by Congress. Finally, the 2d Cir. Court of Appeals argued that the application of wide-ranging discovery rights under §1782 to arbitration would also contradict the basic principle of arbitration: that is, to provide an efficient and cost-effective alternative to litigation.¹⁰²¹ If it were applied to international arbitration, there would be a risk that a party could *ex parte* initiate discovery according to §1782 and therefore misuse this option for tactical reasons, which would not be in the interests of arbitration.

1015 *Ibid.*, 402, 403 et seq. In addition, reference was made to *Application of Technostroyexport*, 853 F. Supp. 695 (S.D.N.Y. 1994; made in the same 2d Cir.) stating that this decision has been rendered on no precedent authority and therefore it was not binding (404).

1016 *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir.1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 884 et seqq.; BEALE et al., 61 et seqq.; ROBERTSON/FRIEDMAN, 68 et seq.

1017 The decision confirmed was *In re Application of National Broadcasting Co.*, No. M-77, 1998 WL 1994 (S.D.N.Y. 1998).

1018 *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir.1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 888.

1019 SMIT, *International Tribunals*, 1264 et seqq.

1020 See p.183 *supra*; see also SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, *Obtaining Evidence*, 554 et seqq.; *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir.1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 886.

1021 *Ibid.*, 890 et seq.

Shortly after *NBC*, the 5th Cir. rendered a very similar decision in an investment arbitration between Kazakhstan and a US investor. In *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann Int.* (hereinafter ‘*Republic of Kazakhstan*’), the Court of Appeals of the 5th Cir. largely followed the reasoning in *NBC*.¹⁰²² In doing so, it emphasised the comparison between § 1782 and § 7 FAA USA. Accordingly, the latter provision permits arbitration panels to serve a witness summons only within the federal district in which the arbitrators, or a majority of them, are sitting. Under § 1782, however, not only foreign and international tribunals, but also ‘every interested party’, can initiate discovery requests. Therefore, the Court of Appeals stated:

“It is not likely that Congress would have chosen to authorize federal courts to assure broader discovery in aid of foreign private arbitration than is afforded its domestic dispute-resolution counterpart. ... Empowering arbitrators or, worse, the parties, in private international disputes to seek ancillary discovery through the federal courts does not benefit the arbitration process.”¹⁰²³

The decisions prior to *Intel* leave little room for interpretation; private international tribunals are clearly excluded from the scope of application of § 1782. First, only ‘state-sponsored’ entities will thus benefit from discovery rights under § 1782. Second, if § 1782 were used in international arbitration, there would be a clear imbalance between domestic and international arbitration held in the USA. Third, the often time-consuming discovery process is at odds with the very essence and goal of international arbitration, which is to provide an efficient and cost-effective instrument to settle international commercial disputes. In sum, the use of § 1782 in international arbitral proceedings seemed out of the question for the time being—at least in the 2d and 5th Cirs.

III. Intel

i. Factual Background

In the 2004 *Intel* case, Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. (hereinafter ‘AMD’) filed an antitrust complaint against Intel Corporation (hereinafter ‘Intel’) before the Directorate-General for Competition (DG-Competition) of the

¹⁰²² *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 918 et seqq.; BEALE et al., 63 et seq.; ROBERTSON/FRIEDMAN, 69 et seqq.

¹⁰²³ *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 921 et seq.

Commission of the European Communities.¹⁰²⁴ Pursuing this complaint, AMD applied to the District Court for the Northern District of California, requesting Intel to produce certain documents in accordance with § 1782. After the Californian district court denied the application because it lacked authority, the Court of Appeals of the 9th Cir. reversed this decision, ordering the district court to rule on the merits of AMD's application. Subsequently, Intel appealed to the Supreme Court, which issued several guidelines on how to deal with requests under § 1782 before remanding the case to the district court.

Without doubt, *Intel* represents a landmark in the history of § 1782, since it paved the way for discovery in international arbitral proceedings where evidence is sought to be obtained in the USA.¹⁰²⁵ Although this decision was rendered *obiter dicta*—that is, with non-binding effect for lower courts, because it was not primarily about a foreign arbitral tribunal—the Supreme Court offered some helpful insight into how to interpret and apply § 1782, which at times runs contrary to what was decided by the 2d and 5th Cirs. (*see p. 188 et seqq. supra*).¹⁰²⁶ The consequences of *Intel* are thus crucial as regards obtaining evidence in the USA for international arbitration. The following analysis focuses on how the US Supreme Court in *Intel* tackled the three main reasons raised in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan* against the use of § 1782 in arbitral proceedings, as well as the ‘*Intel* factors’.

ii. ‘Foreign and International Tribunal’

The first and most important issue concerns the term ‘foreign and international tribunal’. As seen in the cases prior to *Intel*, by looking at the historical background of § 1782, several courts reached the clear conclusion that Congress did not intend to include arbitral tribunals at all.¹⁰²⁷ Although not speaking explicitly of arbitral tribunals, it is still startling that in *Intel*, Justice Ginsburg stated very quickly that since the DG-Competition is an adjudicative body involved in taking evidence and acting as a first-instance decision maker whose decisions can be reviewed, it may be considered a ‘foreign or

¹⁰²⁴ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 246 (2004); MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 44; BEALE et al., 64 et seqq.; O’MALLEY/EATON, 114; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 19 et seqq.

¹⁰²⁵ MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 43.

¹⁰²⁶ *Ibid.*, 45.

¹⁰²⁷ *See p. 188 et seqq. supra*.

international tribunal' in the sense of § 1782.¹⁰²⁸ To support this view, she made reference to Smit, who served as director of the Columbia Law School project—in which Justice Ginsburg herself was an associate director—which assisted the law commission in drafting the new § 1782.¹⁰²⁹ According to a passage in an article written by Smit in 1965, one year after the enactment of § 1782, the term 'tribunal' encompasses:

"All bodies exercising adjudicatory powers, and includes investigating magistrates, administrative and arbitral tribunals, and quasi-judicial agencies, as well as conventional civil, commercial, criminal, and administrative courts ..., but also arbitral tribunals or single arbitrators."¹⁰³⁰

Besides the fact that arbitral tribunals are explicitly mentioned by Smit, one might easily also consider them to be first-instance decision makers, taking evidence in the arbitral proceedings and rendering an arbitral award which is subject to review depending on the respective *lex arbitri*.¹⁰³¹ Accordingly, § 1782 could be used in aid of international arbitration, irrespective of any other requirement such as the applicable law, the seat of arbitration or the nationality of the parties. Despite this very arbitration-friendly approach taken in *Intel*, one must acknowledge that Smit adopted this same liberal approach back in 1965, a year after § 1782 was revised.¹⁰³² In an earlier publication of Smit from 1962, to which Congress explicitly referred in the legislative materials on § 1782, (private) international arbitral tribunals are not mentioned at all.¹⁰³³ However, this does not necessarily lead to the conclusion that Congress deliberately excluded arbitral tribunals from the scope of application of this provision.

Looking at the legislative history of § 1782, it may be assumed that although Congress adopted rather broad wording, it is hard to justify an interpretation that the primary focus was on private international arbitral tribunals as understood today.¹⁰³⁴ In 1964, although international arbitra-

¹⁰²⁸ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 255 et seq. (2004); MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 45; MALAMENT, 1219 et seq. It is noteworthy that in 1964, the time of the important amendment to § 1782, the DG-Competition had not yet been founded (see O'MALLEY/EATON, 118).

¹⁰²⁹ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 258 (2004); VALENTINE, 397.

¹⁰³⁰ *Ibid.*; SMIT, *International Litigation*, fn 71; SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 5 et seqq.

¹⁰³¹ MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 46.

¹⁰³² MALAMENT, 1224; STRONG, 303 et seq.

¹⁰³³ SMIT, *International Aspects*, 1031 et seqq.; see also SMIT, *International Tribunals*, 1264 et seqq. (1962).

¹⁰³⁴ ROTHSTEIN, 79.

tion was slowly gaining importance, it had not yet become the instrument of choice to settle international commercial disputes. This can be seen in the fact that multilateral treaties concerning international arbitration such as the NYC and the Panama Convention had not yet been ratified in the USA.¹⁰³⁵ By the same token, however, the USA was by no means a ‘dead man’s land’ for arbitration at this time.¹⁰³⁶ Following the end of World War II, the USA entered into several treaties of friendship, commerce and navigation, especially between 1946 and 1968,¹⁰³⁷ which often included clauses on the reciprocal acknowledgment and enforcement of arbitral awards.¹⁰³⁸ What is more, in 1966 the USA ratified the ICSID Convention.¹⁰³⁹ It may thus be concluded that—contrary to what was held in *NBC*—Congress neither expressly included nor excluded international arbitral tribunals from the scope of application of § 1782.¹⁰⁴⁰ Rather, the clear aim was to improve international court assistance—albeit that at the time, this was mainly in the field of international litigation.¹⁰⁴¹ In this regard, *Intel* goes even further by emphasising the broad scope given to the term ‘foreign and international tribunal’.

iii. Domestic v. International Arbitration

The second issue concerns the difference between domestic and international arbitration.¹⁰⁴² Regarding the difference between § 1782 and § 7 FAA USA, the Supreme Court reached a different conclusion from that in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan*.¹⁰⁴³ The latter decisions suggested that Congress could not have intended to introduce a disparity between domestic and international arbitration with regard to who can request discovery, which district court may decide and what evidence may be sought. The reasoning in *Intel* was rather different:

“Section 1782 is a provision for assistance to tribunals abroad. It does not direct United States courts to engage in comparative analysis to determine whether analogous proceedings exist here.”¹⁰⁴⁴

1035 STRONG, 304; ROTHSTEIN, 72 et seqq. The NYC was ratified in 1970 and the Panama Convention in 1990; *see* the current status of the NYC, and the Panama Convention.

1036 *Contra GODFREY*, 503.

1037 COYLE, 308; STEINBRÜCK, 215 et seq.; ILLMER/STEINBRÜCK, 332 et seq.

1038 STEINBRÜCK, 216; *see* e.g. the Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation between the USA and Germany from 1956, Art. VI(2).

1039 *See* the current status.

1040 *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC T V.* (2d Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 888; STEINBRÜCK, 213; MALAMENT, 1224.

1041 MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 40.

1042 *See* p. 183 *supra*; MALAMENT, 1234 et seqq.

1043 *See* p. 189 et seqq. *supra*.

1044 *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 263 (2004).

First, the Supreme Court makes it clear that there is no legal basis or principle stating that domestic and international arbitration must be treated equally.¹⁰⁴⁵ § 1782 only and specifically addresses tribunals *abroad* and says nothing of the situation in domestic arbitration, which is a separate issue.¹⁰⁴⁶ Going one step further, Smit even argued that instead of narrowing § 1782, either § 7 FAA USA should be revised based on the model of § 1782 or § 1782 should also be applied to domestic arbitration.¹⁰⁴⁷ One must also bear in mind that a district court whose assistance is sought under § 1782 always has wide discretion to decide whether and to what extent to grant such assistance.¹⁰⁴⁸ Consequently, in the case of requests made *ex parte*, assistance may depend on the consent of the arbitral tribunal in charge.¹⁰⁴⁹

Second, as previously discussed, in some circumstances § 7 FAA USA can even be invoked in international arbitral proceedings.¹⁰⁵⁰ In the same manner, § 7 FAA USA does not purely apply to domestic arbitration; it can also be applied to domestic arbitration in the USA, as long there is an international arbitral tribunal seated in the country.¹⁰⁵¹ From a systematic point of view, *Intel* therefore suggests that the differences between domestic and international court assistance in the taking of evidence are no reason to deny this assistance to foreign arbitral tribunals.

iv. Discovery in Arbitral Proceedings: Intel Factors

Third, it remains to be considered whether the use of § 1782 in international arbitral proceedings would in fact run contrary to the essence and nature of

1045 See also *Hallmark Capital Corporation*, 534 F. Supp. 2d 951, 956 et seq. (D. Minn. 2007); Regarding the different approaches to arbitrability in domestic and international arbitration, see *Mitsubishi v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth*, 473 U.S. 614, 615 (1985); *Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Co.*, 417 U.S. 506 (1974).

1046 NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 38 et seq.

1047 SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 7, fn 31. He even argues that US courts have inherent power to order discovery according to 28 USC § 1782 in domestic arbitration.

1048 *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 264 et seqq. (2004): 'A district court is not required to grant a § 1782(a) discovery application simply because it has the authority to do so.'; MALAMENT, 1232 et seq., 1236.

1049 See e.g. *Application of Technostroyexport*, 853 F. Supp. 695, 697 (S.D.N.Y. 1994).

1050 See p.183 *supra*; STEINBRÜCK, 222.

1051 SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 7 et seq. He argues for the broadest possible interpretation of 'international', which is if any of the parties or arbitrators is not a citizen or resident of the USA; for the difference between 'foreign and international' tribunal, see also NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 32 et seqq.

arbitration.¹⁰⁵² Indeed, discovery under the FRCP USA—subject to a divergent agreement between the parties—is uncommon in international arbitral proceedings,¹⁰⁵³ and can end up in lengthy and cumbersome battles over discovery requests.¹⁰⁵⁴ Moreover, according to § 1782, any ‘interested person’ can initiate a request for discovery, even without the prior consent of the arbitral tribunal. Consequently, as argued in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan*, there is a danger that § 1782 may be misused for tactical reasons by either party.¹⁰⁵⁵ The question of discovery should therefore be answered prior to the arbitral proceedings by the parties themselves or, in the absence of any agreement, by the arbitral tribunal.¹⁰⁵⁶

In *Intel*, however, to address the concern over allegedly lengthy discovery proceedings, the Supreme Court stated:

“The dissent sees a need for ‘categorical limits’ to ward off ‘expensive, time-consuming battles about discovery’. ... There is no evidence whatsoever, in the 40 years since § 1782 (a)’s adoption, ... of the cost, delays, and forced settlements the dissent hypothesizes.”¹⁰⁵⁷

In light of the broad discussion of the appropriateness of US discovery, the Supreme Court’s respective remarks are incisive. Besides the statutory requirements, Justice Ginsburg then set out several discretionary guidelines to deal with discovery requests under § 1782. Simply put, a court presented with a § 1782 request always has wide discretion to decide whether to grant or deny

¹⁰⁵² *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir.1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 890; *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 922 et seq.; see also the dissenting opinion of Justice Breyer in *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 267 et seqq. (2004).

¹⁰⁵³ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9.01 n. 19; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1329; GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 994; VÁRADY et al., 674; MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 55; GODFREY, 506 et seq.; see also Art. 21(10) ICDR Rules.

¹⁰⁵⁴ *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 922 et seq.; CONLEY, 67 et seq.

¹⁰⁵⁵ *Ibid.*; *National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, (2d Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 890.

¹⁰⁵⁶ *Ibid.*; *Republic of Kazakhstan v. Biedermann International*, (5th Cir. 1999), in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. 2000, 922 et seq.

¹⁰⁵⁷ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 264, fn 17 (2004); MALAMENT, 1233. This fact is even acknowledged in a decision denying the use of § 1782 in arbitral proceedings; see *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroeléctrica v. El Paso*, 617 F.Supp.2d 481, 487 (S.D. Tex. 2008): ‘The Supreme Court may yet be moved by the stronger gravitational pull of international comity, concomitant with international commerce, to apply § 1782 to arbitral tribunals.’

it.¹⁰⁵⁸ In this regard, the court ought to examine not only who is seeking discovery, but also from whom and for what reason.¹⁰⁵⁹ More specifically, the Supreme Court identified five discretionary factors which district courts ought to consider:

- “1. The person from whom discovery is sought. §1782 will most likely not be granted if it is invoked against a party over which the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction.¹⁰⁶⁰ As previously discussed, under most institutional arbitration rules, the arbitral tribunal can order a party to produce evidence and even impose sanctions in case of non-compliance.¹⁰⁶¹ In contrast, without §1782, evidence from non-participants would be unobtainable.”¹⁰⁶²
- “2. The nature of the foreign tribunal as a first-instance decision maker whose decision is subject to review, as well as the character of the proceedings underway abroad—that is, the rules applicable to the arbitral proceedings concerning discovery (e.g. institutional arbitration rules or the IBA Rules), as well as the stage at which the arbitral proceedings currently stand.”¹⁰⁶³
- “3. The receptivity of the foreign tribunal to court assistance under §1782.¹⁰⁶⁴ If assistance is not desired—for instance, because the arbitral tribunal refused to give its consent to a request under §1782—it will most likely be denied.”
- “4. Whether the §1782 request is an attempt to circumvent foreign evidence-gathering restrictions.”¹⁰⁶⁵
- “5. Whether the §1782 request is unduly intrusive or burdensome.¹⁰⁶⁶ Such requests for ‘fishing expeditions’ may be rejected or restricted.”¹⁰⁶⁷

¹⁰⁵⁸ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 255 (2004): ‘The statute authorizes, but does not require, a federal district court to provide assistance’ For an extensive outline of the *Intel* factors see BENTO, 50 et seqq.

¹⁰⁵⁹ *Ibid.*, 264, 264 et seqq.

¹⁰⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, 264.

¹⁰⁶¹ See p. 27 et seqq. and p. 57 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁰⁶² *Ibid.*

¹⁰⁶³ *Ibid.*, 243, 264; BEALE et al., 100; see e.g. *Caratube Intl. Oil Company, Llp.*, 730 F. Supp. 2d 101, 106 et seq. (D.C.C. 2010).

¹⁰⁶⁴ BEALE et al., 97 et seqq.; *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 264 (2004).

¹⁰⁶⁵ *Ibid.*, 244 et seq., 265.

¹⁰⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, 245, 265.

¹⁰⁶⁷ BEALE et al., 101.

At first sight, these factors, together with the statutory requirements of § 1782, seem clear enough to equip district courts with the necessary guidance to grant or deny discovery requests.¹⁰⁶⁸ However, because the decision did not expressly address arbitral tribunals, it remained unclear how US courts would react to *Intel*.

IV. Decisions after Intel

The decisions following *Intel* could not differ more with regard to their interpretation of the case itself and the ensuing consequences in the respective disputes.¹⁰⁶⁹ While in some circuits there seems to be a logical line of case law, the picture in others is very inconsistent. For the sake of clarity, the following decisions have been presented chronologically, according to their circuit. One must pay close attention to the distinction between decisions of district and circuit courts on the one hand, and the fact that in some circuits, district courts do not follow the previous rulings of the respective circuit courts on the other.

i. 2d Circuit

After *Intel*, in dealing with requests pursuant to § 1782, district courts in the 2d Cir. took a more liberal view as opposed to the prior stance taken in *NBC* in 1999.¹⁰⁷⁰ For instance, in *OJSC Ukrnafta v. Carpatsky Petroleum Corp.*, based on the criteria in *Intel*, it was held that a private SCC arbitration was within the scope of § 1782.¹⁰⁷¹ In other decisions, district courts cited a misguided line of case law differentiating between purely private arbitrations and those conducted by UNCITRAL, which was seen as ‘a body operating under the United Nations’.¹⁰⁷² Quite obviously, although the UNCITRAL Rules were drafted by UNCITRAL, this commission itself—unlike arbitration institutions—is not an administering body in arbitral proceedings conducted under the UNCITRAL Rules.¹⁰⁷³

¹⁰⁶⁸ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 266 (2004): ‘Having held that § 1782(a) authorizes, but does not require, discovery assistance, we leave it to the courts below to ensure an airing adequate to determine what, if any, assistance is appropriate.’

¹⁰⁶⁹ STRONG, 303; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 21 et seqq.; BENTO, 110 et seqq.

¹⁰⁷⁰ See also the NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), strongly arguing for the use of § 1782 in aid of international arbitral proceedings (44 et seq.).

¹⁰⁷¹ *Ukrnafta v. Carpatsky Petroleum Corp.*, 2009 WL 2877156, 1 (D. Conn. 2009).

¹⁰⁷² *Ibid.*, 4; *In re Arbitration between Norfolk Southern Corporation et al.*, 626 F. Supp. 2d 882, 885 (N.D. Ill. 2009); see also the investment arbitration disputes in this respect; *In re Government of the Lao People’s Democratic Republic*, Case 1:15-MC-00018, 5 et seq. (D. n. Mar. 1. 2016); *Chevron Corp. v. Jonathan S. Shefftz*, 754 F. Supp. 2d 254 (D. Mass. 2010); STRONG, 311 et seqq.; *Oxus Gold PLC*, MISC 06-82 (D.N.J. 2007).

¹⁰⁷³ STRONG, 308; TIMÁR/KRAAYVANGER, 70.

In the 2016 case of *Kleimar N.V.*, an NY district court confirmed an *ex parte* application under §1782 in aid of arbitration held in London under the LMAA.¹⁰⁷⁴ Regarding the precedent in *NBC*, rendered in the same circuit, the district court bluntly stated that unfortunately, the 2d Cir. has not yet approved the Supreme Court's reasoning in *Intel*.¹⁰⁷⁵ Quite unusually, by citing several decisions rendered outside the 2d Cir., the district court considered itself no longer bound by *NBC* in light of these persuasive decisions.¹⁰⁷⁶ Consequently, after confirming that the requirements of *Intel* had been met, the request made under §1782 was granted. This reasoning was recently confirmed in 2019 in *In re Children's Investment Fund Foundation*, in which an NY district court granted §1782 discovery in aid of an arbitration held under the LCIA Rules.¹⁰⁷⁷

ii. 5th and 3d Circuit

By contrast, the 5th Cir.—which handed down the decision in *Republic of Kazakhstan* in 1999—stood firmly behind its precedent and denied an *ex parte* request under §1782 in aid of an arbitration in Switzerland.¹⁰⁷⁸ In *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso*, the district court noted that in *Intel*, the Supreme Court never intended to include arbitral tribunals, even though it cited Smit's article in which arbitral tribunals were explicitly mentioned.¹⁰⁷⁹ The 5th Cir. argued that this reference was made only to justify that §1782 applies to quasi-judicial agencies and administrative courts such as the

¹⁰⁷⁴ *Kleimar N.V.*, 220 F. Supp. 3d 517 (S.D.N.Y. 2016); see also the related request in the 7th Cir. which has also been granted: *N.V. v. Benxi Iron & Steel Am., Ltd.*, No. 17-cv-01287 (N.D. Ill. 2017).

¹⁰⁷⁵ *Kleimar N.V.*, 220 F. Supp. 3d 517, 521 (S.D.N.Y. 2016).

¹⁰⁷⁶ *Ibid.*, 521 et seq. citing *Consortio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA)*, 685 F.3d 987 (11th Cir. 2012); *Winning (HK) Shipping Co. Ltd.*, No. 09-22659 (S.D. Fla. 2010; 11th Cir.); *In re Owl Shipping, LLC*, No. 14-5655 (D.N.J. 2014; 3d Cir.).

¹⁰⁷⁷ *In re Children's Inv. Fund Found. (UK), Sir Christopher Hohn, & Axon Partners, LP*, No. 18-MC-104 (VSB) (S.D.N.Y. 2019).

¹⁰⁷⁸ *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso*, 617 F.Supp.2d 481 (S.D. Tex. 2008); confirmed in *El Paso Corp. v. La Comission Ejecutiva Hidroelectrica*, 341 Fed. Appx. 31 (5th Cir. 2009). Respecting the arbitral tribunal's opinion that itself would have denied a request for discovery because it had been made *ex parte*, the District Court of the S.D. of Texas noted that even if it had the power to order discovery under §1782, it would not do so 'out of respect for the efficient administration of the Swiss arbitration' (*La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso*, 617 F.Supp.2d 481, 487 (S.D. Tex. 2008)).

¹⁰⁷⁹ *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso*, 617 F.Supp.2d 481, 486 (S.D. Tex. 2008); BEALE et al., 74 et seqq.; O'MALLEY/EATON, 116.

DG-Competition.¹⁰⁸⁰ Ironically, the same request for documents submitted to the District Court of Delaware in the 3d Cir. led to a different result. This court simply stated that Intel indicated that § 1782 applies to foreign private arbitration, but unfortunately did not explain why.¹⁰⁸¹ In the subsequent appeal, the Court of Appeals of the 3d Cir. dismissed the appeal without expressing itself further on § 1782, because the parties merely waited for the arbitral award to be rendered; the whole issue has thus become moot.¹⁰⁸²

iii. 11th Circuit

In the 11th Cir., several other district courts applied a functional approach to the issue as illustrated in *Intel*, arguing that ‘it is the function of the body that makes it a “tribunal”, not its formal identity as “governmental” or “private” institution’, but rather its adjudicatory function:¹⁰⁸³

“Where a body makes adjudicative decisions responsive to a complaint and reviewable in court, it falls within the widely accepted definition of ‘tribunal’, the reasoning of Intel, and the scope of § 1782 (a), regardless of whether the body is, governmental or private.”

Thus, in *Roz Trading Ltd.*, a Georgia district court concluded that an arbitral panel of the International Arbitral Centre of the Austrian Federal Economic Chamber in Vienna fell within the scope of § 1782.¹⁰⁸⁴ Conversely, in *Operadora DB Mexico* a district court from the same circuit reached the opposite conclusion regarding an ICC arbitral tribunal, upholding the reasoning in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan* that the word ‘tribunal’ refers only to governmental (i.e. state-sponsored) entities.¹⁰⁸⁵ In addition, it held that the re-

1080 *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso*, 617 F.Supp.2d 481, 486 (S.D. Tex. 2008); ‘Smit does not speak for the Supreme Court. Until, and, if, the Supreme Court itself adopts Hans Smit’s statements as its own within the text of the opinion itself, Hans Smit’s opinions on arbitral tribunals has no more weight and authority than any other article. Smit’s opinion is not even Supreme Court *dicta*.’

1081 *Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica del Rio Lempa v. Nejapa Power Company, LLC*, WL 4809035 (D. Del. 2008).

1082 *Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica del Rio Lempa v. Nejapa Power Company LLC*, 341 Fed. Appx. 821 (3d Cir. 2009).

1083 See e.g. *In re Roz Trading Ltd.*, 469 F. Supp. 2d 1221, 1228 (N.D. Ga. 2006).

1084 *Ibid.*

Ibid., 1226; BEALE et al., 69 et seqq.

1085 *Operadora DB Mexico, S.A. DE C.V.*, Case No. 6:09-cv-Orl-22GJK., 23 (M.D. Fla. 2009); ‘Because the ICC Panel is the product of a private agreement to resolve disputes independently of state-sponsored tribunals, the court finds that Congress and the Supreme Court would not casually extend § 1782 to such proceeding without some deliberation.’ *See also O’MALLEY/EATON*, 117 et seq.

view process of the ICC arbitration did not satisfy the requirements of *Intel* because the arbitral award was ‘judicially reviewable’ only within very narrow boundaries.¹⁰⁸⁶

One year later, in *Winning (HK) Shipping Co. Ltd.* which was conducted under the LMAA, another district court again reached a different conclusion.¹⁰⁸⁷ Because the arbitration at hand was governed by the EAA 1996 and the arbitral award was therefore reviewable by an English court, the arbitral tribunal was considered a first-instance decision maker in the sense of *Intel*.¹⁰⁸⁸ Unfortunately, no further explanations of the differences between the review process under ICC and LMAA arbitration were given. In 2012, however, *Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA)* shed some light on this issue, at least in the 11th Cir.¹⁰⁸⁹ The Court of Appeals held that the Centre of Arbitration and Conciliation of the Guayaquil Chamber of Commerce in Ecuador does render first-instance decisions which are subject to judicial review.¹⁰⁹⁰ Unfortunately, in 2014 the same court vacated this ruling without examining the phrase ‘foreign or international tribunal’.¹⁰⁹¹ However, it did emphasise the functional approach taken by the Supreme Court in *Intel* and cited Smit’s article which explicitly mentioned arbitration tribunals.¹⁰⁹²

iv. Other Circuits

In other circuits, the situation is even more confusing. District courts in the 1st and 8th Cirs. have considered §1782 applicable to arbitrations under the ICC Rules, as well as to an Israeli arbitration, based mainly on the legislative history of §1782 and the reasoning in *Intel*.¹⁰⁹³ Furthermore, interpreting the word ‘foreign tribunal’ broadly and stating that congress intended to broaden the scope of §1782, the 6th Cir. reversed the prior district court’s order and

1086 *Operadora DB Mexico, S.A. DE C.V.*, Case No. 6:09-cv-Orl-22GJK., 20 et seq. (M.D. Fla. 2009).

1087 *Winning (HK) Shipping Co. Ltd.*, No. 09-22659 (S.D. Fla. 2010); BEALE et al., 83 et seq.; regarding arbitration under the LMAA *see also Kleimar N.V.*, 220 F. Supp. 3d 517 (S.D.N.Y. 2016); *In re Owl Shipping, LLC*, No. 14-5655 (D.N.J. 2014).

1088 *Ibid.*, 18 et seq.

1089 *Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA)*, 685 F.3d 987 (11th Cir. 2012); VÁRADY et al., 692 et seq.; MALAMENT, 1229 et seq.

1090 *Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA)*, 685 F.3d 987, 996 et seqq. (11th Cir. 2012).

1091 *Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA)*, 747 F.3d 1262 (11th Cir. 2014).

1092 *Ibid.*, 1270 fn 4; MALAMENT, 1216 et seq., 1221 et seq.

1093 *In re Babcock Borsig AG*, 583 F. Supp. 2d 233 (D. Mass. 2008; 1st Cir.); *Hallmark Capital Corporation*, 534 F. Supp. 2d 951 (D. Minn. 2007; 8th Cir.) *see also* the decisions regarding investment arbitration mentioned in BLACKMAN/STIEFLER, fn 40 et seq.; STRONG, 306 et seqq.; ALFORD, 136, fn 56.

remanded the case so the district court determines again if discovery pursuant to § 1782 could be granted.¹⁰⁹⁴ Their counterparts in the 4th, 9th and 10th Cirs., however, denied its application. In *Finserve Group Ltd.*, a district court of the 4th Cir. argued, concerning an LCIA arbitration in London, that ‘the Court questions whether the LCIA would be considered to be a ‘foreign tribunal’ under the statute, as there appears there is no judicial review’.¹⁰⁹⁵ Without further discussing this point, the request was denied as the LCIA was not receptive to the request.¹⁰⁹⁶

What is more, in several decisions of the 9th Cir., requests for court assistance in arbitration under § 1782 were denied based on the reasoning of the 2d and 5th Cirs. prior to *Intel*. In *Dubey*, the district court distinguished between ‘purely private arbitrations established by private contract and state-sponsored arbitral bodies’ such as the DG-Competition.¹⁰⁹⁷ By following the reasoning in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan*, it denied a request under § 1782 requesting discovery in an AAA arbitration held in California.¹⁰⁹⁸ A decision rendered in the 10th Cir. likewise found an ICC arbitration to be outside the scope of § 1782.¹⁰⁹⁹

Finally, district court decisions both granting and denying requests for court assistance in arbitration under § 1782 have been handed down in the 7th Cir. In *Norfolk Southern Corp.*, a district court agreed to the flawed assumption that § 1782 does not apply to purely private arbitral tribunals, but does apply to arbitration under the UNCITRAL Rules and administrated by UNCITRAL itself.¹¹⁰⁰ Moreover, it followed *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan* by making a clear distinction between state-sponsored tribunals and purely private arbitral tribunals.¹¹⁰¹ The same reasoning was applied in *TJAC Waterloo*, a construction dispute in which a request under § 1782 was denied to a

¹⁰⁹⁴ *Abdul Latif Jameel Trans. Co. v. Fedex Corp.*, No. 19-5315, 10 et seqq., 18 (6th Cir. 2019); *BENTO*, 119 et seqq.

¹⁰⁹⁵ *Finserve Group Ltd.*, No. 4:11-mc-2044-RBH, 4 (D.S.C. 2011); regarding judicial review, see also the decisions from the 11th Cir., p. 199 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁰⁹⁶ *Finserve Group Ltd.*, No. 4:11-mc-2044-RBH, 5 (D.S.C. 2011); see also *In re Servotronics, Inc.*, No. 2:18-mc-00364-DCN (D.S.C. 2018).

¹⁰⁹⁷ *Dubey*, 949 F. Supp. 2d 990, 994 (D.C. California 2013).

¹⁰⁹⁸ See also the subsequent decisions after *Dubey* in the 9th Cir.; *Grupo Unidos Por El Canal S.A.*, No. 14-mc-80277-JST (N.D. Cal. 2015); *In re Government of the Lao People’s Democratic Republic*, 1:15-MC-00018 (D. n. Mar. I. 2016).

¹⁰⁹⁹ *Grupo Unidos Por El Canal, S.A.*, No. 14-mc-00226-MSK-KMT, 15 et seq. (D.C. Colo. 2015).

¹¹⁰⁰ *In re Arbitration between Norfolk Southern Corporation et al.*, 626 F. Supp. 2d 882, 885 (N.D. Ill. 2009); see also p. 197 *supra*.

¹¹⁰¹ *Ibid.*

private arbitration held in London.¹¹⁰² In another decision which was closely connected to *Kleimar* (see p. 198 *supra*), a district court within the 7th Cir. applied a similar functional approach to that applied in the 11th Cir. and held that the LMAA is a foreign tribunal according to §1782.¹¹⁰³

v. Summary

Unfortunately, there is not only a split among the circuits, but at times also within them. In light of this, it is difficult to determine commonalities. This problem is vividly demonstrated in requests made under §1782 in the same dispute, which ended in conflicting decisions in different circuits.¹¹⁰⁴ Nonetheless, one can detect several lines of argumentation among the US courts. With regard to those decisions which denied the application of §1782 to arbitration, it seems commonly accepted among these courts that §1782 does at least apply to state-sponsored tribunals whose decisions are subject to review, as stated in *Intel*.¹¹⁰⁵ Therefore, most courts in the 4th, 5th, 7th, 9th, 10th and 11th Cirs. have excluded only arbitral tribunals from the scope of application of §1782. A minority of decisions within these circuits have distinguished between purely private arbitration and arbitration conducted under the UNCITRAL Rules. As previously discussed, this assumption is clearly misguided.¹¹⁰⁶ In contrast, decisions granting requests under §1782 in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 8th Cirs. have been justified either by referring to the legislative history of *Intel* or by applying a functional approach to the issue. The use of this approach has led to varied results.

d. Intermediate Result

The foregoing discussion has focused on the use of §1782 by US courts in the field of international arbitration. The result is disturbing, to put it mildly. At this point, only a clear-cut decision from the Supreme Court or an amendment of §1782 would afford sufficient guidance and clarity on whether and under what conditions this section is applicable to arbitration. In the meantime, US courts are left with the legislative history of §1782 and the reasoning in *Intel*. Regarding the legislative materials, it has been shown that Congress

¹¹⁰² *TJAC Waterloo, LLC*, No. 3:16-mc-9CAN (N.D. Ind. 2016).

¹¹⁰³ *N.V. v. Benxi Iron & Steel Am., Ltd.*, No. 17-cv-01287, 12 et seqq. (N.D. Ill. 2017).

¹¹⁰⁴ The several decisions rendered in the dispute between *La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroeléctrica* and *El Paso* show vividly how inconsistently §1782 is handled among US courts; see p. 198 *supra*.

¹¹⁰⁵ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 254 et seq. (2004).

¹¹⁰⁶ See p. 197 *supra*.

neither expressly included nor excluded arbitral tribunals from the scope of application of § 1782. Although the primary focus of this provision is not arbitration, the goal was to improve international court assistance in general. With regard to the tension between court assistance in the taking of evidence in domestic (under the FAA USA) and foreign (under § 1782) arbitration, it has been demonstrated that there is no obligation to treat requests equally.

Still, the main question remains as to whether US-style discovery in fact runs contrary to the essence of arbitration and the expectations of arbitrators and the parties. According to *Intel*, if § 1782 is read not only with the statutory requirements which have been further interpreted by the Supreme Court, but also with the five discretionary factors set out in *Intel*, the risk of imposing US discovery in foreign proceedings is considerably minimised. The question at hand has been treated differently not only by various US courts, but also in legal doctrine. A minority of authors have embraced the reasoning of *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan*, arguing that neither the legislative history nor *Intel* itself suggests that § 1782 should be used in relation to arbitral proceedings.¹¹⁰⁷ Yet the majority seem to have embraced the use of § 1782 in arbitration.¹¹⁰⁸ These authors mainly argue that, together with the *Intel* factors, § 1782 can be used in arbitration without disturbing the proceedings. They further argue that an appropriate use of § 1782 may be very beneficial. Whether this is in fact true will be analysed in the following section, applying the same structure as was followed in the previous examinations of *leges arbitri*.

C. Competence to Seek Court Assistance

1. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal

A request under § 1782 is initiated through either a letter rogatory, a request by a foreign or international tribunal or a simple application by ‘any interested person’. This latter possibility presents one of the main problems arising from § 1782: the ‘interested person’ might be either a party to the arbitration or even a third party.¹¹⁰⁹ As previously discussed, this was strongly criticised

¹¹⁰⁷ STRONG, 315 et seqq.; GODFREY, 475 et seqq.; CONLEY, 45 et seqq.

¹¹⁰⁸ BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 30; BLACKABY et al., n. 7.44; MALAMENT, 1217 et seqq.; BEALE et al., 51 et seqq.; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 1 et seqq.; STEINBRÜCK, 205 et seqq.; KRAAYVANGER et al., 161 et seqq.; ILLMER/STEINBRÜCK, 329 et seqq.; SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 5 et seqq.; differentiated O’MALLEY/EATON, 118; ROTHSTEIN, 61 et seqq.

¹¹⁰⁹ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 255 et seq., 256 (2004): ‘No doubt litigants are included among, and may be the most common example of, the ‘interested person(s)’ who may invoke § 1782(a) ...’

in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan*.¹¹¹⁰ While there is no danger if the arbitral tribunal itself is allowed to make a request, the situation is different if assistance is sought *ex parte* either by one of the parties to the arbitration or by any other person. Practice shows that § 1782 is mostly invoked *ex parte* and, as a consequence, the primacy of the arbitral tribunal is obviously undermined.¹¹¹¹ Although in *Intel* the Supreme Court imposed no ‘categorical limits’ on the wording of § 1782, it stated that the receptivity of the foreign tribunal to court assistance (the third *Intel* factor) should be taken into account.¹¹¹² This central requirement has been acknowledged in a number of cases, with requests under § 1782 often denied because they had not been approved by the arbitral tribunal.¹¹¹³ It is therefore unsurprising that authors who favour the use of § 1782 in international arbitration consider the approval of the arbitral tribunal to be a key prerequisite.¹¹¹⁴

What is more, the approval of the arbitral tribunal addresses in part the second and fourth *Intel* factors, taking into account the ‘character of the proceedings underway abroad’ by examining whether the request under § 1782 is an attempt to circumvent foreign evidence-gathering restrictions.¹¹¹⁵ As previously discussed (*see p. 96 et seqq. supra*), many institutional arbitration rules as well as the IBA Rules require the arbitral tribunal’s consent on evidentiary matters such as court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹¹¹⁶ The arbitral tribunal, as opposed to the respective state court, is therefore best placed to decide whether and to what extent assistance should be granted.¹¹¹⁷ Within these boundaries, the arbitral tribunal is unlikely to risk violating the right to be heard by deciding what is best for the respective arbitration. This

¹¹¹⁰ *See p. 189 et seq. supra.*

¹¹¹¹ GODFREY, 510; CONLEY, 66; ROTHSTEIN, 64 et seq.

¹¹¹² *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 255 et seq., 264 (2004).

¹¹¹³ *Application of Technostroyexport*, 853 F. Supp. 695, 697 (S.D.N.Y. 1994); *Hallmark Capital Corporation*, 534 F. Supp. 2d 951, 957 (D. Minn. 2007); *In re Babcock Borsig AG*, 583 F. Supp. 2d 233, 241 (D. Mass 2008; 1st Cir.); *see also In re Roz Trading Ltd.*, 469 F. Supp. 2d 1221, 1229 (N.D. Ga. 2006); Instead of seeking the approval of the arbitral tribunal in charge, the district court in Georgia assumed receptivity merely on the grounds that the rules applicable to the arbitral proceedings under the Arbitral Center of the Austrian Federal Economic Chamber in Vienna allowed for foreign court assistance in the taking of evidence (BEALE et al., 97 et seq.).

¹¹¹⁴ MALAMENT, 1241; BEALE et al., 97 et seqq.; SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 8 et seq.; NYC Bar Committee Report (2010), 30 et seqq.; KRAAYVANGER et al., 164; ILLMER/STEIN-BRÜCK, 341 et seq.; BORN, *Law and Practice*, ch. 9 n. 30.

¹¹¹⁵ *See p. 196 supra*; BEALE et al., 100 et seq., 102.

¹¹¹⁶ *See e.g.* Art. 27(4) UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 25(7) Swiss Rules; Art. 25(3) ICC Rules; Art. 3(9) IBA Rules.

¹¹¹⁷ NYC Committee Report (2010), 31.

would be the case only if the evidence sought were absolutely relevant to the case and the arbitral tribunal's refusal would therefore be disproportionate and unnecessary.

Intel further suggests that the foreign arbitration need not be pending, but only in 'reasonable contemplation'.¹¹¹⁸ Applied to arbitral proceedings, it follows that §1782 can be used even before the constitution of the arbitral tribunal. As the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted, one might ask how a state court should deal with the receptivity factor in such situations. As already demonstrated, many institutional arbitration rules provide for the appointment of emergency arbitrators in such situations (*see* p. 80 *supra*).¹¹¹⁹ Thus, if the arbitration is governed by an institution which provides for the appointment of an emergency arbitrator, the consent of that emergency arbitrator should be sought first. By contrast, if there is no emergency arbitrator available, a request under §1782 should generally be denied.¹¹²⁰ Still, in circumstances where evidence might be lost or destroyed and assistance under §1782 is sought *ex parte*, the respective state court should exercise its discretion in favour of arbitration. The arbitral tribunal which will subsequently be constituted can still refuse to introduce the evidence taken under §1782 into the proceedings when assessing the evidence.¹¹²¹

2. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

Both the plain wording of §1782 and the discretionary factors set out in *Intel* support a conclusion that the parties can exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence pursuant to §1782. This may be done in the arbitration agreement either explicitly or by reference to a set of institutional arbitration rules and/or the IBA Rules. While the former possibility might be used from time to time, the latter scenario is much more common.¹¹²² At the outset of a dispute, it can be difficult to predict where evidence might be sought in the subsequent proceedings. Thus, the exclusion of §1782 is usually not addressed directly in the arbitration agreement, but rather in arbitration rules in relation to court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹¹²³ Taking the second

¹¹¹⁸ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 258 et seq. (2004); *see also In re Letter of Request from the Crown Prosecution Service of the United Kingdom*, 870 F.2d 868, 687, 691 (D.C. Cir. 1989), a decision also rendered by Justice Ginsburg, who at this time worked as a circuit judge.

¹¹¹⁹ *See e.g.* Art. 29 ICC Rules; Rules 30 SIAC Rules; Art. 43 Swiss Rules.

¹¹²⁰ ROTHSTEIN, 79.

¹¹²¹ *Ibid.*, 80; *see e.g.* Art. 9 (1) IBA Rules.

¹¹²² MARTINEZ-FRAGA, 87 et seqq.

¹¹²³ *See e.g.* Art. 22.2 LCIA Rules; Arts. 3(9) and 4(9) IBA Rules.

Intel factor into account—that is, the nature of the proceedings underway abroad—it follows that state courts should respect the parties' choice to exclude § 1782 altogether.¹¹²⁴ As a result, such a renunciation should not be at odds with the right to minimum legal protection.

D. Spectrum of Evidence and its Target

1. Evidence According to a Party Agreement

Like the exclusion of § 1782 as a whole, a state court whose assistance is sought under § 1782 should consider whether the parties excluded certain types of evidence in the arbitration agreement or by reference to arbitration rules (third *Intel* factor). Thus, the state court should consider whether the parties have agreed on certain evidentiary mechanisms, such as those stated in the IBA Rules. Here again, the fourth *Intel* factor addresses the issue when discussing the circumvention of foreign evidence-gathering restrictions. As an example, in *Caratube International Oil Company*, the District Court of Columbia denied discovery because the requesting party tried to circumvent not only the agreed ICSID Convention, but also the IBA Rules.¹¹²⁵ Besides arbitration rules, the fourth *Intel* factor also addresses laws that forbid discovery.¹¹²⁶ Even if the respective state court grants discovery despite a divergent agreement between the parties, this will serve as a reason to annul the arbitral award.¹¹²⁷ Usually, however, the arbitral tribunal will not even introduce evidence into the arbitral proceeding which was gathered without authorisation under § 1782.

2. Evidence According to 28 USC § 1782

In the process of taking evidence, either state courts (i.e. federal courts in the US) will follow the foreign 'practice and procedure' (*see* p. 186 *supra*) or, if the order does not prescribe otherwise, the FRCP USA (Rules 26 et seqq. FRCP USA) will apply.¹¹²⁸ Thus, one might ask to what extent they will do so. Reading § 1782, it is evident that it mentions only two types of evidence—witness testimony and document production:

"The district court ... may order him to give his testimony or statement or to produce a document or other thing for use in a proceeding ..."

¹¹²⁴ *See* p. 196 *supra*.

¹¹²⁵ *Caratube International Oil Company, Llp.*, 730 F. Supp. 2d 101, 107 et seqq. (D.D.C. 2010); Art. 43 ICSID Convention; Art. 3(9) IBA Rules.

¹¹²⁶ *See e.g.* § 1050(2) CCP DE.

¹¹²⁷ S.10(a)(4) FAA USA; Art. V(1)(c) NYC; *see also* p. 213 *infra*.

¹¹²⁸ § 1782(a).

Distinguishing between testimony and statements, Congress intended that district courts could also order that parties and other individuals whose statements would not be considered ‘testimony’ under foreign law be heard.¹¹²⁹ In addition, because § 1782 primarily serves to obtain evidence from third parties, interrogatories (Rule 33 FRCP USA) and admissions (Rule 36 FRCP USA), which are specifically tailored to preparations for trial, are not usually available through § 1782.¹¹³⁰ ‘Testimony’ therefore refers to classical depositions—that is, a witness examination before a court-authorised person to ask certain questions relevant to the case.¹¹³¹ Regarding document production, § 1782 distinguishes between documents and ‘other things’. According to Rule 34 FRCP USA, this includes not only documents in the common sense, but also electronically stored information. In addition, it remains unclear what is meant by the term ‘other things’. In the absence of any indication in § 1782, it would seem that this does not refer to inspections in the sense of Rule 34(a)(2) FRCP USA, but rather to objects in one’s possession which may be subject to inspection and tests, such as machines or motors.¹¹³²

3. Foreign Types of Evidence

While in most cases a court whose assistance is sought under § 1782 will proceed according to the FRCP USA, it might also take into account the foreign practice and procedure.¹¹³³ As a consequence, US courts can take evidence according to the rules agreed in the arbitration. Nevertheless, whether a US court will in fact take evidence according to foreign law depends mostly on the discretion of the respective state court.¹¹³⁴ As seen in other *leges arbitri*, state courts usually take evidence according to their own law only.¹¹³⁵ Therefore, this provision illustrates the very open US approach to international court assistance.

This notwithstanding, it is unsurprising that evidence is usually taken according to the FRCP USA. Often, parties deliberately choose to initiate a request under § 1782 precisely because US discovery is much broader than

1129 SMIT, Section 1782 Revisited, 1026.

1130 *In re Order for Labor Court of Brazil*, 466 F. Supp. 2d 1020, 1033 (N.D. Ill. 2006); *In re Ishiara Chemical Co., Ltd.*, 121 F. Supp. 2d 209, 224 et seq. (E.D.N.Y. 2000).

1131 Rule 27 et seqq. FRCP USA.

1132 Advisory Committee FRCP USA (1970).

1133 § 1782: ‘The order may prescribe the practice and procedure, which may be in whole or part the practice and procedure of the foreign country of the international tribunal, for taking the testimony or statement or producing the document or other thing.’

1134 SMIT, *International Litigation*, 1028.

1135 See e.g. as regards Germany; p. 140 et seqq. *supra*.

that available under most laws. If the request is made with the consent of the arbitral tribunal and the statutory requirements and the other discretionary factors are fulfilled, discovery will most likely be granted. In contrast, if a request under § 1782 is sought *ex parte*, usually to circumvent foreign evidence-gathering restrictions (fourth Intel factor), the request should be denied, in order to uphold the parties' agreement whereby evidentiary issues should be governed by the arbitral tribunal. Consequently, there is no 'foreign discoverability' rule, based on either § 1782 or its legislative history, according to which requests must also be permissible under foreign law.¹¹³⁶ It may be summarised that although § 1782 allows for evidence to be taken according to foreign law, this is seldom done because requests under § 1782 are usually made in an attempt to avail of the broad discovery foreseen in the FRCP USA.

4. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence

Instead of choosing § 1782 to obtain evidence located in the USA, the parties may also choose to use the HEC as a time-tested tool.¹¹³⁷ Indeed, it has been argued that since the USA is a Member Party to the HEC, the only way to obtain evidence through international court assistance is via this convention. Even though the HEC does indeed serve as a relevant convention in this field, it would be sub-optimal if this were the only way to obtain evidence in the USA. Fortunately, the Supreme Court has shed light on this issue by making clear that the HEC is only one alternative to the FRCP USA, rather than the exclusive procedure through which court assistance in international arbitration may be obtained.¹¹³⁸ This follows not only from the Supreme Court's decision, but also from the text of the HEC itself.¹¹³⁹ Among other reasons, this seems to be justified given the often lengthy and costly process involved in obtaining evidence through the HEC, compared to that under the FRCP USA.¹¹⁴⁰ In sum, through the lens of an arbitration practitioner, it is welcome that the HEC route is just one, and not the only, way to obtain evidence in the USA.¹¹⁴¹

¹¹³⁶ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 259 et seqq. (2004): 'A foreign nation may limit discovery within its domain for reasons peculiar to its own legal practices, culture, or traditions—reasons that do not necessarily signal objection to aid from United States Federal Courts' (261); *see also Bayer*, 146 F.3d 188, 193 et seq. (3d Cir. 1998).

¹¹³⁷ In the USA, the HEC entered into force in 1972; *see the current status*.

¹¹³⁸ *Société Nationale Industrielle Aérospatiale v. U.S. Dist. Court*, 482 U.S. 522 (1987).

¹¹³⁹ Art. 27(c) HEC: 'The provisions of the present Convention shall not prevent a Contracting State from... c) permitting, by internal law or practice, methods of taking evidence other than those provided for in this Convention.'

¹¹⁴⁰ *Société Nationale Industrielle Aérospatiale v. U.S. Dist. Court*, 482 U.S. 522, 543 (1987); *Schindler Elevator Corp. v. Otis Elevator Co.*, 657 F. Sup. 2d 525, 530 (D.N.J. 2009); *ABDOLLAHI*, 778 et seqq.

¹¹⁴¹ *Ibid.*, 800.

5. Target of Evidence

As regards the target of evidence, evidence can be taken only from a ‘person’ who ‘resides or is found’ in a certain district. This person need not necessarily be domiciled there; it seems to suffice if he or she is staying in the district temporarily.¹¹⁴² If the target of evidence is a legal entity, the party requesting assistance under § 1782 must show that this entity undertakes ‘systematic and continuous local activities’ in the district.¹¹⁴³ In *Intel*, an important difference was made between the parties to the arbitration and third parties.¹¹⁴⁴ Because the foreign or international tribunal has jurisdiction over the parties—as opposed to third parties—discovery requests against a party to the ongoing proceedings will most likely be denied (first *Intel* factor).¹¹⁴⁵ Applied to arbitral proceedings, if certain evidence could be produced by a party but it refuses to do so, the arbitral tribunal can respond by drawing an adverse inference or allocating the costs accordingly.¹¹⁴⁶ By granting requests under § 1782 mainly in cases where evidence lies outside the reach of the parties to the arbitration, the risk of misuse of this section by a party to the arbitration is dramatically reduced.¹¹⁴⁷ In addition, US courts will provide assistance where arbitral tribunals cannot obtain evidence because of their lack of *imperium*.¹¹⁴⁸

Irrespective of whether the target of evidence is a party to the arbitration or a third party, § 1782 makes it clear that privileges apply at all times:

“A person may not be compelled to give his testimony or statement or to produce a document or other thing in violation of any legally applicable privilege.”

While the legislative history does not further explain which privileges under which law apply, US courts seem to respect them under both US and foreign law, as long as there is ‘authoritative proof’ that privilege exists

¹¹⁴² SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 9 et seq.; *In re Edelmann*, 295 F.3d 171, 179 et seqq. (2d Cir. 2002). Regarding the requirement that a person can be forced to attend a hearing only within 100 miles of where he or she resides or regularly transacts business, see Rule 45(c)(1)(A) FRCP USA); *In re Edelmann*, 295 F.3d 171, 181 (2d Cir. 2002).

¹¹⁴³ SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 10; ELUL/MOSQUERA, n. 398; *Kleiman N.V.*, 220 F. Supp. 3d 517, 521 (S.D.N.Y. 2016); *In Re Godfrey*, 526 F. Supp. 2d 417, 422 (S.D.N.Y. 2007); *Qualcomm Inc.*, 162 F. Supp. 3d 1029, 1035 (N.D. Cal. 2016). Regarding the non-extraterritorial scope of § 1782, see also SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 10 et seqq.

¹¹⁴⁴ *Ibid.*, 264.

¹¹⁴⁵ *Ibid.*; BEALE et al., 99 et seq.; MALAMENT, 1240. 2.

¹¹⁴⁶ See p. 56 et seqq. *supra*.

¹¹⁴⁷ BEALE et al., 99 et seq.

¹¹⁴⁸ *Ibid.*

under foreign law.¹¹⁴⁹ According to the FRCP USA, the scope of discovery is as follows:

“Parties may obtain discovery regarding any nonprivileged matter that is relevant to any party’s claim or defense and proportional to the needs of the case, considering the importance of the issues at stake in the action, the amount in controversy, the parties’ relative access to relevant information, the parties’ resources, the importance of the discovery in resolving the issues, and whether the burden or expense of the proposed discovery outweighs its likely benefit.”¹¹⁵⁰

A person faced with a request to produce evidence pursuant to § 1782 can initiate a motion to quash or modify a discovery order (“protective order”) by showing that discovery would force that person to reveal ‘a trade secret or other confidential research, development, or commercial information’.¹¹⁵¹ If the person fails to obey the discovery order without sufficient reason, the court can, for instance, draw an adverse inference and treat the non-compliance as contempt of court.¹¹⁵² In addition, the disobedient party can be forced to pay the expenses caused by the failure to produce evidence.¹¹⁵³

In addition to the statutory factors, the fifth *Intel* factor states that unduly intrusive or burdensome requests pursuant to § 1782 should be rejected or restricted.¹¹⁵⁴ As a consequence, fishing expeditions—such as requests for extensive categories of documents, for documents which are sought in bad faith for the purpose of harassment or for irrelevant material—will be denied.¹¹⁵⁵ In this regard, a little ‘inconvenience alone will not justify an order to quash a subpoena that seeks potentially relevant testimony’.¹¹⁵⁶ In order to maximize the chances that a court will grant discovery under § 1782, parties would be well advised to narrow their discovery requests accordingly.

¹¹⁴⁹ *In re Veiga*, 746 F. Sup. 2d 8, 26 (D.D.C. 2010); *Metallgesellschaft AG v. Hodapp*, 121 F.3d 77, 80 (2d Cir. 1997).

¹¹⁵⁰ Rule 26 (b)(1) FRCP USA.

¹¹⁵¹ Rule 26 (c)(1)(g) FRCP USA; Rule 45(d)(3)(iii) FRCP USA.

¹¹⁵² Rule 37(b)(2)(A) FRCP USA.

¹¹⁵³ Rule 37(b)(2)(B) FRCP USA.

¹¹⁵⁴ *Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.*, 542 U.S. 241, 265 (2004).

¹¹⁵⁵ *In re Petition for Asia Mar. Pac. Ltd.*, 253 F. Supp. 3d 701, 705 (S.D.N.Y. 2015); *Bran-di-Dohrn v. IKB Deutsche Industriebank AG*, 673 F.3d 76, 81 (2d Cir. 2012); *Euromepa S.A. v. R. Esmerian, Inc.*, 51 F.3d 1095, 1101 (2d Cir. 1995).

¹¹⁵⁶ *Anwar v. Fairfield Greenwich Ltd.*, 297 F.R.D. 223, 226 (S.D.N.Y. 2013).

E. Competence of the *Juge d'Appui*

1. Scope of Discretion

The previous discussion has shown that the use of § 1782 is always discretionary. This follows not only from the discretionary *Intel* factors, but also from § 1782 itself.¹¹⁵⁷ When this section is supplemented by the discretionary factors, the concerns raised in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan* can be largely eliminated. In this regard, the arbitral tribunal's consent to a § 1782 request plays a central role.¹¹⁵⁸ Further, the fear of excessive discovery in international arbitration seems to be unfounded, given that the discretionary factors ensure that discovery is granted only in limited circumstances.¹¹⁵⁹ Moreover, one should bear in mind that discretion is the byword not only before the state courts, but also before the arbitral tribunal, which will carefully weigh whether and how to introduce and assess evidence gathered under § 1782. For instance, if the parties agreed to proceed according to the IBA Rules, there are several requirements regarding whether and under what circumstances evidence can be introduced into the arbitral proceedings (*see* p. 36 et seqq., p. 42 et seqq. *supra*).¹¹⁶⁰

2. Principle of Subsidiarity

§ 1782 is silent regarding whether a foreign or international tribunal can take the requested evidence itself. *Intel* states only that discovery will most likely be denied if it is sought against a party over which the foreign or international tribunal has jurisdiction, as opposed to third parties which are out of reach. Because there is no 'exhaustion requirement' to seek discovery under § 1782, it is left to the discretion of the state court in charge to 'consider a party's failure first to attempt discovery measures in the foreign jurisdiction'.¹¹⁶¹ In *Malev Hungarian Airlines*, the Court of Appeals of the 2d Cir. stated that any 'exhaustion requirement' would be in conflict with the purpose of § 1782:

¹¹⁵⁷ The word 'may' is found six times in § 1782; SMIT, *Section 1782 Revisited*, 15.

¹¹⁵⁸ *In re Babcock Borsig AG*, 583 F. Supp. 2d 233, 241 (D. Mass. 2008): 'In a situation where the foreign tribunal restricts discovery, granting the application could undermine the statute's objective.'

¹¹⁵⁹ BEALE et al., 96.

¹¹⁶⁰ *See e.g.* *Grupo Unidos Por El Canal, S.A.*, No. 14-mc-00226-MSK-KMT, 23 (D.C. Colo. 2015).

¹¹⁶¹ ELUL/MOSQUERA, n. 406; *In re Roz Trading Ltd.*, 469 F. Supp. 2d 1221, 1229 et seq. (N.D. Ga. 2006); *In re Babcock Borsig AG*, 583 F. Supp. 2d 233, 241 (D.C. Mass. 2008); *Euromepa S.A. v. R. Esmerian, Inc.*, 51 F.3d 1095, 1098 (2d Cir. 1995); *Malev Hungarian Airlines*, 964 F.2d 97, 100 (2d Cir. 1992).

namely, to improve international court assistance and to prompt foreign jurisdictions to introduce similar provisions based on the US model.¹¹⁶² This again demonstrates the very liberal approach taken by the USA.

3. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement

Aside from the need to verify what the arbitration agreement says about the applicable arbitration rules, there is little debate in US legal doctrine regarding the examination of the arbitration agreement.¹¹⁶³ As it is still controversial whether § 1782 actually applies to arbitral proceedings, the examination of the arbitration agreement plays a crucial role—albeit mainly with the aim of distinguishing between arbitral proceedings and state court litigation. State courts whose assistance is sought under § 1782 will therefore take a closer look at the second *Intel* factor by examining the nature of the foreign tribunal as a first-instance decision maker whose decisions are subject to review. Because of the vast divergence among US circuits, a prior study of decisions on § 1782 is crucial to test the receptivity of US courts to requests for assistance in arbitral tribunals. Moreover, the arbitration agreement can of course be examined in the context of the recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award under the NYC.¹¹⁶⁴

F. Appellate Remedies

As previously discussed (*see p. 210 *supra**), the target of evidence under § 1782 can initiate a motion to quash or modify the discovery request.¹¹⁶⁵ If it is granted nevertheless, the parties can appeal the ‘judgment’ within 30 days of entry of the decision with the respective court of appeals in the circuit in which the relevant district court is based.¹¹⁶⁶ The review mainly involves questions of law and not findings of fact (unless they were ‘clearly erroneous’).¹¹⁶⁷ The court of appeals may either deny the appeal or reverse and remand the case to the district court with instructions in the sense of its decision.¹¹⁶⁸

¹¹⁶² *Ibid.*

¹¹⁶³ BEALE et al., 104 et seqq.

¹¹⁶⁴ Arts. III(3) and V(1)(a) NYC.

¹¹⁶⁵ Rule 26(c)(1)(g) FRCP USA; Rule 45(d)(3)(iii) FRCP USA.

¹¹⁶⁶ Rule 54 FRCP USA; 28 USC § 1291 and § 1294(1); Rule 4(a)(1)(A) FRAP USA.

¹¹⁶⁷ Rule 52(a)(6) FRCP USA; HAY, n. 211.

¹¹⁶⁸ *Ibid.*

The question of how to vacate an arbitral award based on the taking of evidence pursuant to § 1782 is different. In the USA, this process is regulated by the **FAA USA**.¹¹⁶⁹ Accordingly, an international arbitral award rendered in the USA can be vacated upon the application of any party by the district court at the place where the arbitral award was rendered within three months of the date on which it was rendered.¹¹⁷⁰ This might be the case where the arbitral tribunal allowed a request under § 1782 despite an explicit agreement to the contrary between the parties. If the taking of evidence had a significant influence on the arbitral award, this could serve as a reason to vacate the arbitral award because the arbitrator(s) violated due process or exceeded their powers.¹¹⁷¹ In this regard, US courts usually establish a high bar for such applications, acknowledging the broad discretion of arbitrators in relation to evidentiary matters.¹¹⁷²

G. Summary

The foregoing examination of court assistance in the taking of evidence in the USA is the most complex so far, with regard to both the legal bases and the extent to which evidence can be taken. First, the question of the legal bases for assistance of international arbitral tribunals is very ambiguous; the ongoing dispute as to whether § 1782 applies to international arbitration will therefore most likely continue. In this regard, a clear answer from the Supreme Court would be highly desirable.¹¹⁷³ In the meantime, considering the second *Intel* factor—that is, to examine the nature of the foreign tribunal as a first-instance decision maker—US courts whose assistance is sought under § 1782 are equipped with guidelines to assess whether such assistance should be granted. As an alternative, one might ask whether this question should rather be answered at the legislative level by explicitly mentioning arbitral tribunals in § 1782.¹¹⁷⁴ Until then, as the previous overview of case law has demonstrated, it is crucial to understand which circuits are more likely to grant a request under § 1782 for assistance in international arbitral proceedings. Finally, it is

¹¹⁶⁹ ORLOWSKI, n. 506; for the dispute in legal doctrine as to whether § 10 FAA USA also applies to international arbitration, *see ibid.*, 507 et seqq.

¹¹⁷⁰ § 10(a) and § 12 FAA USA.

¹¹⁷¹ § 10(a)(4) FAA USA; ORLOWSKI, n. 521 et seqq.

¹¹⁷² *Ibid.*; *see e.g.* *Kolel Beth Yechiel Mechil of Tartikov, Inc. v. YLL Irrevocable Trust*, 729 F.3d 99, 107 (2d Cir. 2013).

¹¹⁷³ TIMÁR/KRAAYVANGER, 71.

¹¹⁷⁴ ROTHSTEIN, 79.

important to bear in mind that without §1782, international arbitral tribunals would have to take the lengthy and burdensome route of seeking international court assistance through the HEC.¹¹⁷⁵

Second, the competence to make a request pursuant to §1782 has been one of the main arguments against its use in international arbitration.¹¹⁷⁶ In contrast to the arbitral tribunal, which can initiate a request according to §1782 in certain circuits, the ability for ‘any interested person’ to do likewise is problematic. §1782, as it stands today, should thus be read together with the third *Intel* factor, taking into account the receptivity of the arbitral tribunal. Although practice shows that §1782 is almost always sought *ex parte*, such requests should be granted only in exceptional urgent cases. At the legislative level, in order to avoid delaying tactics, §1782 could be amended by allowing the parties to arbitration to make such requests only with the prior consent of the arbitral tribunal.¹¹⁷⁷ Moreover, the parties are at liberty to exclude discovery under §1782 altogether.

Third, the scope of evidence is limited to document production, witness testimony and inspection of objects. In most cases, evidence is obtained under the FRCP USA or, as an alternative, in accordance with foreign law. However, usually the person seeking discovery under §1782 does so to make use of broad discovery rights which are mostly unavailable in other jurisdictions. Regarding the target of evidence, evidence can be gathered from natural persons or legal entities. If the target is a party to the arbitration (as opposed to a third party), assistance should be denied, since the arbitral tribunal has jurisdiction over that party and thus has means to address any non-compliance in evidentiary matters (first *Intel* factor). Still, if discovery is ordered against a third party, privileges may apply to shield that person from giving evidence. This is not only foreseen in §1782, but also addressed in the fifth *Intel* factor, which prohibits unduly intrusive or burdensome requests.

Fourth, even more so than under English law (*see* p. 177 et seqq. *supra*), the US courts enjoy wide discretion to grant or deny assistance in the taking of evidence. This is obvious not only from an examination of §1782, but first and foremost from an examination of the *Intel* factors, which provide guide-

¹¹⁷⁵ As an exception to this, *see* the rare cases in which court assistance in the taking of evidence has been granted under §7 FAA USA (p. 183 *supra*). This problem was even acknowledged in NBC, but ultimately considered less significant in light of the trouble which would arise from the applicability of §1782 to international arbitration (*National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV*, 165 F.3d 184, fn 8 (2d Cir.1999); Y.B. Comm. Arb. 1999, 890).

¹¹⁷⁶ *See* p. 190 *supra*.

¹¹⁷⁷ ROTHSTEIN, 79.

lines for the exercise of this discretion. The *Intel* factors address crucial aspects such as the consent of the arbitral tribunal to request discovery and the autonomy of the parties to determine how the arbitration should be conducted. Furthermore, delaying tactics are avoided by paying attention to the reason for requesting discovery under § 1782 and considering whether the request is an attempted ‘fishing expedition’. Moreover, there is no ‘exhaustion requirement’, obliging state courts to consider whether the requested evidence could have been obtained in the foreign proceedings. Finally, because the applicability of § 1782 to arbitral proceedings remains unclear to date, a state court will examine the arbitration agreement to determine whether arbitration is underway and, if so, what the parties have agreed in their arbitration agreement.

Finally, a decision under § 1782 granting or denying discovery can be challenged by either party before the respective court of appeals. However, as assistance under § 1782 is often sought *ex parte*, the battle between parties before the respective district court can take quite a long time. What is more, if the assistance is granted under § 1782 contrary to an explicit agreement between the parties and influences the arbitral award, the arbitral award may even be vacated before the district court where the arbitral award was rendered. In this regard, the bar is set high, since the US courts respect the discretion of the parties, arbitrators and arbitration itself as an alternative dispute settlement mechanism.

In contrast to the *leges arbitri* previously examined in this chapter, the US approach is in many ways different and more complex. Regarding US discovery, although the approach to international arbitration (with justification) appears largely hands-off, it has been shown that if § 1782 is read and applied together with the *Intel* factors, its use will not endanger the arbitral proceedings, but will rather be highly beneficial. Hitherto, the fears expressed in *NBC* and *Republic of Kazakhstan* have remained unjustified. Not least, this is evident from the relatively few cases in which § 1782 has been applied to arbitral proceedings.¹¹⁷⁸ Still, given the ambiguity regarding § 1782 and its use in international arbitration, further guidance from the Supreme Court—or, even better, the amendment of this section—would be highly welcome.

¹¹⁷⁸ BEALE et al., 109.

§ 6 Conclusion

Under the previous comparative analysis, court assistance in the taking of evidence has been addressed from various angles. In this regard, several findings are of major importance for the subsequent examination and evaluation of the situation in Switzerland. First, as regards the subject of direct assistance, all examined *leges arbitri* allow for the provision of assistance irrespective of additional requirements, such as the location of the seat of arbitration or the nationality of the parties. Evidence located in these countries can therefore be obtained within a shorter timeframe than under international treaties such as the HEC. However, in the USA, it remains doubtful whether a request under § 1782 will in fact be granted; the result will depend mainly on how the district courts interpret § 1782 and the *Intel* factors.¹¹⁷⁹

Second, as regards the competence to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence, the approaches diverge. While under German and French law, the arbitral tribunal's approval must be obtained before seeking assistance, this does not apply in England and the USA. Under the EAA 1996, assistance can be granted if—as an alternative to the arbitral tribunal's consent—both parties agree to the request. The approach under § 1782 is quite different: court assistance may be sought by 'any interested person'. As previously discussed, this section should always be read together with the third *Intel* factor, concerning the receptivity of the arbitral tribunal to the request for assistance.¹¹⁸⁰ All in all, while the arbitral tribunal's approval is central, there may be cases in which *ex parte* requests are granted due to exceptional circumstances, such as the imminent loss of evidence, both prior to and after constitution of the arbitral tribunal. Finally, with regard to the parties' discretion to tailor the arbitral proceedings, court assistance in the taking of evidence can in most cases be excluded. One exception to this is in England, where the attendance of witnesses (S. 43 EAA 1996) cannot be waived due to its mandatory nature.¹¹⁸¹

Third, court assistance in the taking of evidence will be granted either strictly, according to the law at the place where the evidence is sought, or even pursuant to the law and procedure of the requesting foreign arbitral tribunal. While the former situation applies under German and French law, the latter is possible in England and the USA. What is common in all four jurisdictions is that at times, evidence will be taken not only according to the

¹¹⁷⁹ See p. 202 *supra*.

¹¹⁸⁰ See p. 203 *supra*.

¹¹⁸¹ See p. 170 *supra*.

respective *lex arbitri*, but also pursuant to national rules of civil procedure. Specifically, in the USA, the availability of the broad discovery rights under the FRCP USA in international arbitration has led to heated debates. However, if discovery is granted after taking into account the *Intel* factors, discovery will be much narrower.¹¹⁸² Concerning the target of evidence, evidence can mainly be obtained from third parties over whom the arbitral tribunal has no jurisdiction. This is best illustrated in France, where the arbitral tribunal is vested with the power to impose *astreintes* on non-compliant parties.¹¹⁸³

Fourth, state courts requested to assist in the taking of evidence enjoy wide discretion. Except in Germany, where this discretion seems limited, if the respective conditions are fulfilled, the courts in all other examined jurisdictions are at liberty to grant or deny assistance. This is particularly clear in the USA, where court discretion plays a key role in applying the *Intel* factors. Furthermore, while in some jurisdictions, such as Germany and England, evidence will be taken only if the arbitral tribunal itself is unable to do so, this view has been explicitly rejected by the US courts.¹¹⁸⁴ Finally, the arbitration agreement should not be examined. Accordingly, in a first step, state courts will explore whether the evidence request stems from an arbitral tribunal, before analysing in a second step whether the agreement includes any provisions on evidentiary matters.

Finally, all examined jurisdictions provide for appellate proceedings against a decision of a state court granting or denying court assistance. Moreover, if court assistance in the taking of evidence is in any way a violation of the procedural rules as agreed by the parties, this can serve as a reason to annul the arbitral award. In this regard, the appellate procedure under English law is unique. Accordingly, to limit the role of the court and ensure a high degree of finality, the approval of the state court that rendered the decision is necessary to challenge an arbitral award.

1182 See p. 203 *supra*.

1183 See p. 153 *supra*.

1184 See p. 211 *supra*.

Chapter 8:

Swiss Perspective

§ 1 Introduction

A. Preliminary Remarks

The preceding comparative analysis has laid the foundations for an examination of the Swiss status quo. Thus, where appropriate, the findings of the previous chapter will be considered in assessing how Switzerland deals with court assistance in the taking of evidence. After a general introduction to Switzerland as a forum for arbitration and the dualistic nature of its *lex arbitri*, the subject will be examined in detail according to the structure followed in the preceding comparative analysis. In doing so, some tactical insights will be presented on how best to increase the chances of successfully obtaining court assistance in the taking of evidence.

B. Popularity of Switzerland as a Seat of Arbitration

International arbitration in Switzerland enjoys a long tradition dating back to the 19th century, when Geneva was named as the seat of arbitration in a dispute between the US and the UK arising from the American Civil War.¹¹⁸⁵ Ever since, Geneva has enjoyed a sterling reputation as a forum for interstate dispute settlement—not least thanks to the presence of the WTO Dispute Settlement Body and the OSCE Court of Conciliation and Arbitration.¹¹⁸⁶

International arbitration has also become increasingly influential in the private sector and today Switzerland is one of the most important forums for international arbitration worldwide.¹¹⁸⁷ This is evident in the increasing

¹¹⁸⁵ FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7168; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 1.105; Arroyo-HOFBAUER, n. 1.; For an extensive overview of arbitration in Switzerland, see the Swiss Historical Dictionary.

¹¹⁸⁶ See the recent decisions of the WTO dispute settlement body and the OSCE Court of Conciliation and Arbitration; regarding other arbitral tribunals and similar bodies, see KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 1.109.

¹¹⁸⁷ Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017), 22; EU Study (2014), 181; FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7167 et seq.; SCHERER, 3; Arroyo-HOFBAUER, n. 10.

number of international arbitrations held in Switzerland under both the ICC and the Swiss Rules.¹¹⁸⁸ For instance, in 2017 a total of 810 new ICC cases were filed, involving parties from more than 142 countries; Geneva and Zurich were among those cities most frequently selected as seats of arbitration.¹¹⁸⁹ In addition to arbitrators from England and France, Swiss arbitrators are frequently chosen as a highly professionalised and sophisticated group of practitioners.¹¹⁹⁰ Moreover, in 2008, several cantonal chambers of commerce founded the Swiss Chambers' Arbitration Institution (SCAI), which governs domestic and international arbitration under the Swiss Rules.¹¹⁹¹ The SCAI's caseload is consistently high and is usually dominated by international arbitration.¹¹⁹² In addition to arbitration under the ICC and the Swiss Rules, several specialist arbitration institutions are active in the area of sports and intellectual property.¹¹⁹³

Several key factors underpin Switzerland's popularity as a forum for arbitration.¹¹⁹⁴ The country's traditional neutrality and political stability are crucial in this regard¹¹⁹⁵—especially when parties to arbitration may fear the partiality of the courts in their home countries. The aim is to settle disputes in a stable country, with both a clear and easily intelligible *lex arbitri* and arbitration-friendly case law.

The PILA CH, which entered into force in 1987, governs international arbitration and currently consists of just 19 articles.¹¹⁹⁶ It is available in several languages and is commonly considered concise and modern. As an overall approach, the PILA CH emphasises the autonomy of the parties and limits inference by state courts.¹¹⁹⁷ For instance, the parties are free to

¹¹⁸⁸ KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 1.110 et seqq.; Arroyo-HOFBAUER, n. 1.

¹¹⁸⁹ ICC Dispute Resolution Bulletin 2018, 52, 60; EU Study (2014), 181; Queen Mary Survey (2018), 9 et seq.

¹¹⁹⁰ ICC Dispute Resolution Bulletin 2018, 58 et seq.

¹¹⁹¹ This institution, originally named the Swiss Chamber Court of Arbitration and Mediation was renamed as the SCAI in 2012; see the historical overview.

¹¹⁹² SCAI Statistics (2018), 4.

¹¹⁹³ See FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7182 et seq.; the Court of Arbitration for Sport (CAS), headquartered in Lausanne and established in 1983; the Basketball Arbitral Tribunal (BAT), headquartered in Geneva and established in 2006; the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), headquartered in Geneva and established in 1994.

¹¹⁹⁴ Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017), 22 et seq.

¹¹⁹⁵ Arroyo-HOFBAUER, n. 30.

¹¹⁹⁶ Arts. 176-194 PILA CH.

¹¹⁹⁷ Arts. 182 (1) and 183-185 PILA CH.

choose the applicable procedural rules (e.g. by referring to a set of institutional arbitration rules).¹¹⁹⁸ Moreover, the SFT, as a ‘one-stop shop’, is the only court with competence to set aside arbitral awards, and then usually only within a six-month period.¹¹⁹⁹ Because of the very restrictive grounds on which arbitral awards may be challenged, fewer than 10% of such attempts generally succeed.¹²⁰⁰ Finally, Switzerland’s geographical location at the heart of Europe and its sophisticated infrastructure (e.g. hotels, conference venues) cannot be underestimated.¹²⁰¹

C. Open Dualism of the Lex Arbitri

Switzerland has adopted a dualistic system in its *lex arbitri*.¹²⁰² Consequently, unlike in countries such as Germany and England, which have monistic *leges arbitri*, there are separate sets of rules for domestic and international arbitration. While domestic arbitration is governed by the third part of the CCP CH (Arts. 353-399; entered into force in 2011), the 12th chapter of the PILA CH sets out the rules for international arbitration (Arts. 176-194; entered into force in 1987).¹²⁰³ This chapter of the PILA CH exclusively governs international arbitration, except where it refers directly to the CCP CH (e.g. regarding the taking of evidence).¹²⁰⁴ Thus, in general, in the absence of any reference in this regard, the analogous application of the CCP CH is excluded.¹²⁰⁵ Nevertheless, the parties are free to opt out of the 12th chapter of the PILA CH and instead apply the third part of the CCP CH (and vice versa).¹²⁰⁶ In this regard, the ‘open dualism’ between the PILA CH and

1198 Art. 182 (1) PILA CH.

1199 Art. 191 PILA CH; DASSER/WÓJTOWICZ, 282.

1200 *Ibid.*, 280; EU Study (2014), 183.

1201 Arroyo-HOFBAUER, n. 35; regarding the recent data on the influence of international arbitration on the Swiss market, see Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017), 33 et seq.

1202 AMBAUEN, n. 9, 24 et seqq.; Arroyo-JERMINI/BERNARDONI, ch. I, pt. II, n. 1.

1203 The rules on arbitration served as a model in the drafting of the domestic arbitration rules of the CCP CH (FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7392).

1204 Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; CR-BUCHER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 37; DUTOIT, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 14; see also the effort under the revised PILA CH to provide a comprehensive *lex arbitri* (FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7173).

1205 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 2, 116; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 88; Arroyo-ORELLI, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 3; BSK-PFIFFNER/HOCHSTRASSER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 4.

1206 Art. 176 (2) PILA CH; Art. 353 (2) CCP CH; for the strict requirements of such an opt-out, see DFT 4A_256/2013 of 19 Nov. 2013, cons. 1.2.3 et seq.; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 97 et seqq.; Arroyo-ORELLI, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 28 et seqq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 107 et seqq.; BSK-PFIFFNER/HOCHSTRASSER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 40 et seqq.

CCP CH undermines the broad discretion of the parties to tailor the arbitral proceedings according to their needs.¹²⁰⁷

According to Art. 176 PILA CH, the rules of international arbitration apply to all arbitrations if the seat of arbitration is in Switzerland and if (at the time the arbitration agreement is concluded)¹²⁰⁸ at least one of the parties does not have its domicile, its registered office or its habitual residence in Switzerland.¹²⁰⁹ The applicability of the 12th chapter of the PILA CH therefore depends on a formal requirement, rather than on a substantive requirement such as an international connection (i.e. the ‘internationality’ of the dispute).¹²¹⁰ Since the requirement of Art. 176 PILA CH is not geographical, the arbitral proceedings can be conducted elsewhere (i.e. outside Switzerland).¹²¹¹ The approach here is therefore in line with the general stance adopted under German, English and US law, and does not go as far as the very liberal French approach, which requires only that ‘international trade interests are at stake’.¹²¹²

In this regard, the UNCITRAL ML goes further too. Its rules apply in general to ‘international commercial arbitration’, giving the terms ‘international’ and ‘commercial’ very broad definitions.¹²¹³ Still, as regards assistance in the taking of evidence (Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML), this will be granted only if the seat of arbitration is within the territory in which the UNCITRAL ML is enacted.¹²¹⁴ Although the UNCITRAL ML was established in 1985, two years before the PILA CH entered into force, it initially had no significant direct influence on the Swiss *lex arbitri*.¹²¹⁵ However, in light of the success of the UNCITRAL ML and its influence on many *leges arbitri*, the Swiss legislature recently decided to modernise the PILA CH to align it with the latest in-

¹²⁰⁷ In the ongoing revision of the PILA CH, the idea of a monistic *Code unique* was proposed, but ultimately rejected (see FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7175 et seq.); for a historical overview and criticism of the open dualism, see AMBAUEN, n. 24 et seqq., 570 et seqq.

¹²⁰⁸ See Art. 176(1) Draft-PILA CH.

¹²⁰⁹ For the definition of domicile and habitual residence of a natural person, see Art. 20 PILA; for corporate bodies, see Art. 21 PILA CH.

¹²¹⁰ DFT 4P.115/2003 of 16 Oct. 2003, cons. 2.1; Arroyo-ORELLI, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 21; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 96; DUTOIT, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 3; CR-BUCHER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 11; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 2.28 et seqq.; AMBAUEN, n. 40 et seqq.

¹²¹¹ KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 2.11; BSK-PFIFFNER/HOCHSTRASSER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 19.

¹²¹² §1025(1) CCP DE; S.2(1) EAA 1996; Art. 1504 CCP FR; §7 FAA USA; AMBAUEN, n. 12 et seqq.

¹²¹³ Art. 1(3) UNCITRAL ML; Digest of Case Law (2012), Art. 1 UNCITRAL ML, n. 1.

¹²¹⁴ Art. 1(2) UNCITRAL ML.

¹²¹⁵ AMBAUEN, n. 38.

ternational standards.¹²¹⁶ The UNCITRAL ML has therefore had a certain impact on the Swiss *lex arbitri*. At the time of the publication of this book (2020), the revision of the PILA CH is completed and the date of the entry into force will most likely be the 1 January 2020.¹²¹⁷

§ 2 Legal Bases

A. Overview

The PILA CH provides for assistance in arbitration on multiple levels and in various forms. At the beginning of the proceedings, court assistance might be needed with regard to the constitution of the arbitral tribunal and the appointment of the arbitrator(s) (Arts. 179 and 180 PILA CH).¹²¹⁸ During the arbitral proceedings, assistance may be sought in relation to the taking of evidence (Art. 184 PILA CH), but also in respect of interim measures to preserve evidence (Art. 183 PILA CH) and other forms of court assistance (Art. 185 PILA CH). Once the arbitral award has been rendered, state courts can provide assistance regarding recognition and enforcement of the arbitral award (Art. 194 PILA CH) and the certificate of enforceability (Art. 193 PILA CH).

B. Court Assistance in Taking Evidence (Art. 184 PILA CH)

1. Jurisdiction

Regarding the taking of evidence, Art. 184 PILA CH reads as follows:

- “(1) The arbitral tribunal shall itself conduct the taking of evidence.
- “(2) If the assistance of state judiciary authorities is necessary for the taking of evidence, the arbitral tribunal or a party with the consent of the arbitral tribunal may request the assistance of the state judge at the seat of the arbitral tribunal.”

The official French version of section 2 will be amended too, as it erroneously states that the parties (plural), and not a single party can request assistance (see fn 1274). In addition, according to the revision, a proposed new para. (3) states:

- “(3) The state court shall apply its own law. On request, it can apply or consider different procedural forms.”

¹²¹⁶ FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7185; Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017), 51; EU Study (2014), 181.

¹²¹⁷ For an overview of the amendments, see FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7171 et seqq.

¹²¹⁸ GÖKSU, n. 293.

Art. 184 (2) PILA CH provides that the state court ‘at the seat of the arbitral tribunal’ is competent to render assistance (territorial jurisdiction). Subject-matter jurisdiction is determined by cantonal law, which usually falls within the competence of a regional or cantonal supreme court.¹²¹⁹ In this regard, Lalive et al. argue that in addition to state courts, recourse may be had to other judicial or administrative authorities, such as the Federal Department of Justice and Police or a Swiss embassy.¹²²⁰ Although Art. 184 (2) PILA CH indeed refers to the ‘assistance of state judiciary authorities’, such assistance must in fact be sought from a judge. Therefore, most authors in legal doctrine argue that the competent *juge d'appui* alone is obliged to render assistance if the respective requirements are fulfilled.¹²²¹ As a consequence, if assistance is rendered by a state judicial authority other than the state courts, this is done on a completely voluntary basis.¹²²²

2. Centralised *Juge d'Appui*?

During the revision of the PILA CH, the potential establishment of a single competent authority with responsibility for handling requests for court assistance in arbitration was discussed. The few proponents of this view suggested that such a centralised, specialised authority would enhance the efficiency of arbitration.¹²²³ Instead of having to identify the competent *juge d'appui* in each canton, such requests would be handled by a single authority, most certainly affiliated to the SFT.¹²²⁴ As an alternative, it was proposed that each of the 26 cantons should determine a single authority, instead of multiple competent courts within each canton.¹²²⁵ Due to the few requests issued

¹²¹⁹ Art. 3 CCP CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 70; Art. 356 (2) (c) CCP CH; GÖKSU, n. 306; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 14; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1363; *see e.g.* for the Canton of Basle (§ 93 (1) (4) Court Organisation Act BS; Cantonal Supreme Court), Berne (Art. 8 (1) Introductory Act BE; District Court), Geneva (Art. 86 (1) Judiciary Organisation Act GE; District Court) and Zurich (§ 32 Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH; District Court).

¹²²⁰ *See also* RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 266.

¹²²¹ Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 73; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 72; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 n. 59 et seq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1364; STACHER, n. 338; GÖKSU, n. 307; SCHNEIDER, 67 et seq.; WALTER et al., 162 et seq.

¹²²² SCHNEIDER, 67; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 n. 60.

¹²²³ Expl. Rep. Revision PILA CH (2017), 15.

¹²²⁴ *See e.g.* Opinions Revision PILA CH (2017), ICC CH (3).

¹²²⁵ *Ibid.*: Bar Association of the Canton of Fribourg (132), SCAI (189), University of St. Gallen (278 et seqq.). Prof. Sester of the University of St. Gallen even proposed that common ‘judiciary administrative activities’ in relation with the formation of the arbitral tribunal and the appointment of arbitrators should be governed by one single authority, while assistance in relation with interim measures and the taking of evidence should be left to Cantonal Courts.

for court assistance in the taking of evidence, the federalist structure of Switzerland and the questionable feasibility of such an authority, this idea of a centralised *juge d'appui* was rejected at the outset of the debate.¹²²⁶ Indeed, given how few such requests are issued, it would seem disproportionate to establish such an authority at this point in time.¹²²⁷ However, it remains to be seen whether this situation will change significantly in the future, since the Swiss legislature intends to open up the possibility for foreign arbitral tribunals to seek court assistance directly in Switzerland.¹²²⁸ If this happens, it would make sense to establish an additional chamber in the SFT to handle requests for court assistance.

This idea of a centralised *juge d'appui* does not seem to have been discussed in relation to the previously examined *leges arbitri*. This might be due to the different geographical sizes of these countries; in fact, a central authority might further complicate the process rather than simplifying it.

3. Restricted Assistance for Foreign Arbitral Tribunals

As previously discussed, court assistance under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH is rendered only if the seat of arbitration is located in Switzerland and if at least one of the parties does not have its domicile, its registered office or its habitual residence in Switzerland.¹²²⁹ From the perspective of an arbitration practitioner, this implies that an arbitral tribunal with its seat in a foreign country will seek court assistance only in very limited situations, which is far from satisfactory. Understandably, the delay this would cause to the respective proceedings and the costs of initiating a request for court assistance through a state court at the seat of arbitration, which would then transfer it to the Swiss court, would be most unwelcome.¹²³⁰ As seen under the previously examined *leges arbitri*, the need for assistance of foreign arbitral tribunals is considered self-evident. It is thus time to scrutinise the situation more closely.

a. Situation *de lege lata*

Hitherto, it was not considered possible for foreign arbitral tribunals to obtain court assistance in the taking of evidence, due to the clear wording of Art. 176 (1) read with Art. 184 (2) PILA CH. However, in situations where it is not

1226 *Ibid.*, ASA (7), Prof. Bucher (86), Swiss Bar Association (183), University of Lucerne (273); Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017), 41; Expl. Rep. Revision PILA CH (2017), 15; FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7178 et seq.

1227 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 176 PILA CH n. 119.

1228 FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7198 et seq.

1229 See p. 222 *supra*; Art. 176 (1) PILA CH; Arroyo-VEIT, Art 184 PILA CH n. 74.

1230 *Ibid.*

possible to obtain court assistance in the foreign country, Art. 3 PILA CH provides for so-called ‘emergency jurisdiction’:

“If this Code does not provide for jurisdiction in Switzerland and if proceedings abroad are impossible or cannot reasonably be required to be brought, the Swiss judicial or administrative authorities at the place with which the facts of the case are sufficiently connected shall have jurisdiction.”

This article embodies an ‘absolute subsidiary’ rule of jurisdiction, aimed at avoiding a denial of justice. Because of its exceptional nature, it applies only under strict conditions.¹²³¹ First, the PILA CH must offer no other jurisdiction in Switzerland, whether based on the PILA CH itself or on any international treaty.¹²³² Second, there must be a sufficient connection to Switzerland—for example, because a witness is domiciled or documents are located in Switzerland. Third, proceedings abroad must be ‘impossible or cannot reasonably be required to be brought’. Given that most countries provide for court assistance in the taking of evidence,¹²³³ situations in which it is in fact impossible to establish jurisdiction are thus very rare; this will be the case only if there is in fact a denial of justice.

The emergency jurisdiction under Art. 3 PILA CH has seldom been discussed and, as far as can be seen, there are no reported cases in which this article has been invoked to justify jurisdiction in Switzerland to support a foreign arbitration directly. Nonetheless, inspired by a decision of the Paris Court of First Instance, in which emergency jurisdiction was established in France as regards the appointment of an arbitrator, Arfazadeh has suggested that in theory, Art. 3 PILA CH could also be used in aid of arbitration in Switzerland.¹²³⁴

One might further ask whether this is also possible with regard to the taking of evidence. Indeed, Steinbrück proposes that in order to ensure effective access to justice, the Swiss courts can use Art. 3 PILA CH to directly support foreign arbitral tribunals.¹²³⁵ As an example, he mentions the examination of a witness based in Switzerland whose testimony is crucial to an arbitration held abroad.¹²³⁶ In such a scenario, it is clear that the PILA CH offers

¹²³¹ DFT 4C_379/2006 of 22. May 2007, cons. 3.4; BSK-BERTI/DROESE, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 2a, 7; ZK-MÜLLER-CHEN, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 3.

¹²³² Art. 1(2) PILA CH; OTHENIN-GIRARD, 261.

¹²³³ See e.g. S. 43 and 44 EAA 1996; § 1050 CCP DE; Art. 1449 and 1469 CCP FR.

¹²³⁴ ARFAZADEH, 328; see also FOUCHEARD, note on Paris High Court, 11 May 1987, in: Rev. Arb. 1988, 699 et seqq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 820.

¹²³⁵ STEINBRÜCK, 131 et seqq.

¹²³⁶ *Ibid.*, 132.

no jurisdiction in Switzerland (first requirement); and because the witness is located in Switzerland, there is a sufficient connection (second requirement).¹²³⁷ Quite obviously, the problem lies in the third requirement—that is, that proceedings abroad are impossible or cannot reasonably be required to be brought. As seen in the comparative analysis, most countries provide for court assistance in the taking of evidence. Therefore, court assistance will usually be possible, except in rare cases of a denial of justice.

It is questionable whether the lengthy and cumbersome process of obtaining court assistance from the respective Swiss court via a foreign state court would in fact fall within the ‘cannot reasonably be required to be brought’ standard. With regard to court assistance in the taking of evidence in arbitration, this question has not been asked or answered in Swiss legal doctrine or case law. In general, however, in the case of overly long proceedings or corrupt justice systems, Art. 3 PILA CH provides for emergency jurisdiction.¹²³⁸ In conclusion, it is conceivable that the Swiss courts may support foreign arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence based on Art. 3 PILA CH in case of a denial of justice or if the potential duration of the procedure abroad would be unreasonable. The potential application of Art. 3 PILA CH must therefore be decided on a case-by-case basis and lies within the discretion of the respective state court judge.¹²³⁹ While this discussion is interesting from a theoretical point of view, it seems superfluous in light of the current developments regarding the ongoing revision of the PILA CH.

b. Situation *de lege ferenda*

Since its establishment in 1987, Art. 184 (2) PILA CH has gone mostly unnoticed and has had little significance in practice.¹²⁴⁰ Most likely, this is because foreign arbitral tribunals cannot approach the Swiss courts directly to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹²⁴¹ Thus, parties have seldom opted for a cumbersome detour, via the state courts at the place of the seat of arbitration, to the jurisdiction in which the evidence is located. This dilemma has

¹²³⁷ Art. 176 (1) i.c.w. 184 (2) PILA CH; BSK-BERTI/DROESE, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 10; ZK-MÜLLER-CHEN, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 6, 24.

¹²³⁸ ZK-MÜLLER-CHEN, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 21; *see e.g.* the recent data about the length of proceedings within the EU: 2019 EUJustice Scoreboard, 12 et seqq.; for a more global view, *see the* Swiss country index on judicial assistance.

¹²³⁹ BSK-BERTI/DROESE, Art. 3 PILA CH n. 8.

¹²⁴⁰ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 56.

¹²⁴¹ Art. 176 (1) i.c.w. Art. 184 (2) PILA CH. As discussed previously, Art. 3 PILA CH could serve to provide an emergency jurisdiction in exceptional cases (*see* p. 225 et seqq. *supra*).

been criticised in legal doctrine and came up for discussion in relation to the revision of the PILA CH.¹²⁴² Subsequently—and as under German, French and English law—the new Art. 185a (2) PILA CH provides for the direct provision of court assistance in the taking of evidence to foreign arbitral tribunals:¹²⁴³

“An arbitral tribunal with its seat abroad or a party of a foreign arbitral proceeding can, with the consent of the arbitral tribunal, request the assistance of the state court at the place where the taking of evidence will take place. Art. 184 (2) and (3) apply by analogy.”

As a result, it is clear that the Swiss legislature intends to allow foreign arbitral tribunals to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence directly from the respective competent Swiss court.¹²⁴⁴ Furthermore, it is intended that this will also apply to court assistance regarding interim measures.¹²⁴⁵ At this point in time, the consequences of this amendment are not fully apparent. However, it is clear that this should make the PILA CH more user friendly and should be warmly welcomed by international arbitration practitioners. This modification is also in line with the position taken under German, French, English and US law. In future, if evidence is located in Switzerland, a foreign arbitral tribunal will thus be more likely to agree to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence. It remains to be seen whether a dramatic increase in the number of requests submitted to the Swiss courts will lead to discussions on the potential establishment of a centralised authority to handle such requests.¹²⁴⁶

C. Interim Measures (Art. 183 PILA CH)

1. In General

The distinction between the taking of evidence and interim measures for the preservation of evidence is not always clear.¹²⁴⁷ In general, it is possible to distinguish between taking evidence (i.e. establishing facts) and interim

¹²⁴² ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 87; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1370; WIRTH/HOFMANN-NOWOTNY, 71; Rep. Consultation Procedure PILA CH (2018), 11; *see also* Opinions Revision PILA CH (2017): ASA (19 et seq.), ICC CH (165), University of Lausanne (242).

¹²⁴³ §1025 (2) CCP DE; S. 2 (3) EAA 1996; Art. 1504 CCP FR.

¹²⁴⁴ FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7199.

¹²⁴⁵ Art. 185a (1) PILA CH.

¹²⁴⁶ *See* p. 224 et seq. *supra*.

¹²⁴⁷ BOOG, n. 30; *see also* Art. 374 CCP CH, which applies to Swiss domestic arbitration. Unlike in Art. 183 PILA CH, measures to protect evidence fall explicitly under interim measures (BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 374 CCP CH n. 12).

measures aimed at temporarily protecting the parties' rights from possible harm during an arbitration. As previously discussed (*see p. 87 supra*), measures for the preservation of evidence can be considered as falling somewhere between measures for the taking of evidence and interim measures: they help to establish the facts of the case, but only for a limited period.¹²⁴⁸ Arts. 183 (1) and (2) PILA CH state as follows:

- “(1) Unless the parties have otherwise agreed, the arbitral tribunal may, on motion of one party, order provisional or conservatory measures.
- (2) If the party concerned does not voluntarily comply with these measures, the arbitral tribunal may request the assistance of the state court; it shall apply its own law.”

It is undisputed that the arbitral tribunal and state courts have parallel competence to order interim measures.¹²⁴⁹ The state courts are usually approached either where the arbitral tribunal has not yet been constituted and there is no emergency arbitrator, or where a party does not comply voluntarily with an interim measure ordered by the arbitral tribunal. Alternatively, state courts will assist where the parties have excluded the arbitral tribunal's competence to order interim measures.¹²⁵⁰ Prior to the revision of the PILA CH, foreign arbitral tribunals could not directly seek court assistance from Swiss courts. As with the taking of evidence (Art. 184 PILA CH), the new Art. 185a (1) PILA CH would introduce a welcome change in this respect:

“An arbitral tribunal with its seat abroad or a party of a foreign arbitral proceeding can, with the consent of the arbitral tribunal, request the assistance of the state court at the place where the provisional or conservatory measure ought to be executed. Art. 183 (2) and (3) apply by analogy.”

The local jurisdiction is determined by cantonal law, which usually provides for the competence of a regional or cantonal supreme court.¹²⁵¹

1248 BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1247; LALIVE et al., Art. 183 PILA CH n. 6; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 253; *contra* WALTER et al., 135 et seq.

1249 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 4; BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 5; *see also* p. 87 *supra*.

1250 BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 5; CHK-FURRER et al., Art. 182-186 PILA CH n. 12.

1251 Art. 3 CCP CH; *see e.g.* for the Canton of Basle (§ 93 (1)(4) Court Organisation Act BS; Cantonal Supreme Court), Berne (Art. 8 (1) Introductory Act BE; District Court), Geneva (Art. 86 (1) Judiciary Organisation Act GE; District Court) and Zurich (§ 32 Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH; District Court).

2. Precautionary Taking of Evidence (Art. 158 CCP CH)

The precautionary taking of evidence and its importance to arbitration must also be considered in this regard. This is a special procedure under Swiss law, as it allows for evidence to be taken even before the arbitral proceedings have started. Art. 158 CCP CH reads as follows:

- “(1) The court shall take evidence at any time if: (a) the law grants the right to do so; (b) the applicant shows credibly that the evidence is at risk or that it has a legitimate interest.
- (2) The provisions regarding interim measures apply.”

In addition to the enforcement of a legal right, Art. 158 CCP CH has two main goals: to protect evidence which is likely to be lost or destroyed, or to help the parties to weigh their chances of success in future court proceedings.¹²⁵² It is therefore quite similar to the independent evidentiary proceeding under German law, under which evidence that might be lost or destroyed may be gathered.¹²⁵³

Measures to preserve evidence lie somewhere between interim measures (i.e. measures to protect a party's rights for a limited period) on the one hand and measures for the taking of evidence (i.e. establishing the facts of a case) on the other.¹²⁵⁴ This is illustrated by Art. 158 CCP CH: while it refers to the taking of evidence, the ‘provisions regarding interim measures’ apply simultaneously. Consequently, the provisions on summary proceedings (Arts. 248 et seqq. CCP CH) and those on interim measures (Arts. 261 et seqq. CCP CH) apply simultaneously.

In addition, in Swiss domestic arbitration, Art. 374 (1) CCP CH explicitly includes measures for the protection of evidence under the title of interim measures.¹²⁵⁵ Unsurprisingly, the prevailing view in Swiss legal doctrine is that measures for the protection of evidence fall within the scope of interim measures in the sense of Art. 183 PILA CH.¹²⁵⁶ Nevertheless, it remains doubt-

¹²⁵² DFT 138 III 76, cons. 2.4.2; SUTTER-SOMM ET AL.-FELLMANN, Art. 158 CCP CH n. 17.

¹²⁵³ See p. 139 et seq. *supra*.

¹²⁵⁴ See p. 87 *supra*.

¹²⁵⁵ BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 374 CCP CH n. 12. HABEGGER argues, without further explanation, that the precautionary taking of evidence is excluded from interim measures, at least in Swiss domestic arbitration.

¹²⁵⁶ ARROYO-BOOG, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 10; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 35; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1247; DUTOIT, Art. 183 PILA CH n. 5; LALIVE ET AL., Art. 183 PILA CH n. 6; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 253; *contra* BOOG, n. 30; WALTER ET AL., 135; for Swiss domestic arbitration see BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 374 CCP CH n. 12.

ful whether Art. 158 CCP CH could be used to assess one's chances of success in advance of arbitration, where evidence is not in danger and in need of protection and preservation.¹²⁵⁷ This question has been subject to limited discussion in Swiss legal doctrine.¹²⁵⁸

WYSS considers the precautionary taking of evidence as an extension of the measures available under Art. 183 PILA CH.¹²⁵⁹ He argues that since the state courts and the arbitral tribunal have parallel competence to order interim measures, the possibility to weigh one's chances of success under Art. 158 CCP CH should also be available in the case of international arbitration. He therefore argues for an extensive interpretation of Art. 183 PILA CH, emphasising that international arbitral tribunals are not limited to interim measures according to the CCP CH, and that the power to assess evidence rests with the arbitral tribunal alone.¹²⁶⁰

On the other hand, as Schweizer rightly points out, the precautionary taking of evidence to weigh the chances of success in future proceedings goes beyond the mere protection and preservation of evidence; thus, Art. 158 CCP CH is not captured within the parameters of Art. 183 PILA CH.¹²⁶¹ As the arbitral tribunal is the competent authority to take evidence, the possibility to use Art. 158 CCP CH to obtain interim measures pursuant to Art. 183 PILA CH would undermine the arbitral tribunal's competence to take evidence.¹²⁶²

Indeed, a clear distinction must be drawn between the goals and intentions of the precautionary taking of evidence (Art. 158 CCP CH), interim measures and the taking of evidence in international arbitration (Arts. 183 and 184 PILA CH). As previously discussed, Art. 183 PILA CH provides for the possibility to protect and preserve evidence (*see p. 228 supra*). In this sense, protecting evidence under Art. 158 CCP CH is congruent with Art. 183 PILA CH. This does not apply to that part of Art. 158 CCP CH mentioning 'a legitimate interest', which hints at the possibility to assess one's chances of success in future proceedings. The precautionary taking of evidence in this sense clearly falls within the competence of the arbitral tribunal alone (Art. 184 (1) PILA CH). The possibility to assess one's chances in future proceedings under Art. 158 CCP CH should therefore be excluded in the case of both domestic and international arbitration.

1257 WYSS, 201.

1258 *Ibid.*; SCHWEIZER, 23.

1259 WYSS, 202.

1260 *Ibid.*

1261 SCHWEIZER, 24; *see also* BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 374 CCP CH n. 12.

1262 SCHWEIZER, 24.

As a result, requests submitted to state courts under Art. 158 CCP CH with the sole goal of assessing one's chances of success in a future arbitration, where no evidence is in danger, should be denied; and the parties' decision to settle their dispute through arbitration rather than before state courts should be respected and maintained.¹²⁶³

D. Other Court Assistance (Art. 185 PILA CH)

For the sake of completeness, Art. 185 PILA CH is noteworthy as it serves as a catch-all provision, ensuring the smooth progress of the arbitration through the availability of comprehensive assistance throughout the proceedings in cases where the arbitral tribunal's powers are insufficient:¹²⁶⁴

“Where further judicial assistance is necessary, the judge at the arbitral tribunal's seat shall have jurisdiction.”

These may include situations where a state court whose assistance is sought under Art. 185 PILA CH reminds the arbitral tribunal to render its award in the manner agreed by the parties (Art. 189 PILA CH), or where a party makes a complaint because of a denial of justice by the arbitral tribunal.¹²⁶⁵ With regard to the taking of evidence, Art. 185 PILA CH applies only if Arts. 183 and 184 PILA CH are less suitable to the situation. Since these two articles mainly cover assistance in the taking of evidence, there is little scope for Art. 185 PILA CH to apply; it thus plays a subordinate role, as mentioned in the examples above. Unlike the two other provisions governing court assistance, Art. 185 PILA CH is available only for arbitration seated in Switzerland and the Art. 185a PILA CH introduces no improvements in this regard. Finally, according to cantonal law, the competent courts to handle requests pursuant to Art. 185 PILA CH are either regional or cantonal supreme courts.¹²⁶⁶

¹²⁶³ SCHWEIZER, 24; *contra* BSK-SCHNEIDER / SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 56; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 22; WYSS, 202; *see also* Cantonal Commercial Court of Zurich, HE180200-O of 9 Aug. 2018, cons. 4.3 et seqq., in: ZR 2018, 230 et seqq.; Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich, LB120081 of 31 Oct. 2012, cons. 3.3, in: ZR 2013, 149 et seqq.

¹²⁶⁴ Arroyo-KNOLL, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 1; DUTOIT, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 1; BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 1; CR-BUCHER, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 1; WALTER et al., 170. For the respective provision in Swiss domestic arbitration, *see* Art. 375(2) CCP CH.

¹²⁶⁵ Arroyo-KNOLL, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 19 et seq.; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 4; BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 7 et seqq.; CR-BUCHER, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 8 et seqq.; WALTER et al., 171 et seqq.; LALIVE et al., Art. 185 PILA CH n. 5.

¹²⁶⁶ Canton of Basle (§ 93(1)(4) Court Organisation Act BS; Cantonal Supreme Court), Berne (Art. 8(1) Introductory Act BE; District Court), Geneva (Art. 86(1) Judiciary Organisation Act GE; District Court) and Zurich (§ 32 Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH; District Court).

§ 3 Applicable Procedural Law

Before the revision of the PILA CH, there was some doubt about the applicable procedural law in cases where state courts provide assistance to arbitral tribunals.¹²⁶⁷ However, according to the prevailing view in Swiss legal doctrine, summary proceedings pursuant to Arts. 248 et seqq. CCP CH apply.¹²⁶⁸ According to the new Art. 251a(c) CCP CH, these proceedings are explicitly applicable to the taking of evidence pursuant to Art. 184 (2) PILA CH.¹²⁶⁹ Consequently, an application under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH must take the form of a signed application; in simple or urgent cases, it may even be filed orally on record.¹²⁷⁰ In most cases, the respective state court will not hold a hearing, but will rather decide on the basis of the case files.¹²⁷¹ Unless the request does not seem obviously inadmissible or unfounded, the opposing party (i.e. the target of evidence) has the opportunity to comment on the application orally or in writing.¹²⁷²

§ 4 Competence to Seek Court Assistance

A. Primacy of the Arbitral Tribunal

Unsurprisingly, and as under most other examined *leges arbitrii*, the approval of the arbitral tribunal must first be obtained before seeking the assistance of the Swiss courts.¹²⁷³ The request can be made either by the arbitral tribunal itself or by a party with the consent of the arbitral tribunal.¹²⁷⁴ However, a request based on an agreement between the parties alone, as under English

1267 Before the enactment of the PILA CH in 1989, Art. 45 of the Intercantonal Arbitration Convention CH of 1969 expressly referred to the summary proceedings as regards the constitution of the arbitral tribunal; GÖKSU, n. 313.

1268 *Ibid.*; THORENS-ALADJEM, 531; BSK-WEBER-STECHER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 5.

1269 FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7206.

1270 Art. 252 i.c.w. Art. 130 CCP CH.

1271 Art. 256 (1) CCP CH.

1272 Art. 253 CCP CH.

1273 See e.g. Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML; § 1050 (1) CCP DE; Art. 1469 i.c.w. Art. 1506 CCP FR; Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 70.

1274 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 73; GÖKSU, n. 330. The official French version of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH is misleading, since it allows only *both* parties (*les parties*) to seek court assistance. The prevailing view therefore suggests that the official German and Italian versions mentioning only ‘a party’ deserve priority and thus no agreement between the parties is necessary (BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1361 fn 89; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 58; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 12; SCHNEIDER, 57; LALIVE et al., Art. 184 PILA CH n. 8).

law, is not possible.¹²⁷⁵ Since the arbitral tribunal itself is competent to seek court assistance on its own motion, it should also be entitled to participate in the taking of evidence.¹²⁷⁶ Although this option is expressly stated in Swiss domestic arbitration law, there is no urgent need to amend Art. 184 (2) PILA CH. As previously explained (*see p. 223 supra*), this follows from the fact that Art. 184 (2) PILA CH expressly entitles the arbitral tribunal itself to seek court assistance.¹²⁷⁷ As a result, and to ensure the parties' right to be heard, the arbitral tribunal should be allowed to be present during the taking of evidence. In addition, if one party alone is seeking court assistance, state courts will most likely demand that a written order be presented in order to verify the respective arbitral tribunal's consent.¹²⁷⁸

As previously discussed (*see p. 27 et seqq. supra*), the arbitral tribunal is vested with significant discretion to determine whether court assistance is in fact necessary or whether the relevant facts of the case have already been proven. From the perspective of the arbitral tribunal, a request for court assistance is therefore a right rather than a duty.¹²⁷⁹ In several cases, a party claimed that the arbitral tribunal had violated its right to be heard by denying a request to seek court assistance. In this respect, the SFT made it clear that this right had not been violated simply because the arbitral tribunal had not requested court assistance on its own initiative without being invited to do so by one of the parties. Rather, this would be the case only if the request were denied without valid reason (e.g. where the possible evidence would be relevant to the outcome of the respective case).¹²⁸⁰ More recently, in a case in which the arbitral tribunal refused to hear a witness, the SFT confirmed its previous case law stating that the refusal to hear a certain witness does not violate the right to be heard if the tribunal considers the testimony improper to demonstrate the relevant facts or insufficient to change its opinion.¹²⁸¹

SCHNEIDER/SCHERER argue that where an arbitral tribunal refuses a request for court assistance without sufficient reason (and violates the right to be heard), a party can nonetheless challenge this violation before a state

¹²⁷⁵ *See p. 169 supra.*

¹²⁷⁶ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 62.

¹²⁷⁷ *Contra Ibid.* with reference to Art. 375(3) CCP CH; *see also* the nearly identical provision in § 1050(3) CCP DE.

¹²⁷⁸ WALTER et al., 165; SCHNEIDER, 56 et seq.

¹²⁷⁹ *See e.g.* the case cited in ASA Bull. 2005, 469 et seqq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1362; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 70.

¹²⁸⁰ DFT 4P.217/1992 of 15 Mar. 1993, cons. 7b, in: ASA Bull. 1993, 408.

¹²⁸¹ DFT 4A_335/2012 of 30 Jan. 2013, cons. 2 with reference to DFT 134 I 140, cons. 5.3; DFT 131 I 153, cons. 3.

court.¹²⁸² However, as the two authors acknowledge, since state courts will not examine the relevance, usefulness or appropriateness of the evidence requested, a state court is unlikely to grant court assistance where the arbitral tribunal has not approved such request.¹²⁸³ Even if it does so, the arbitral tribunal will have total liberty to decide whether to introduce the evidence into the arbitral proceedings.¹²⁸⁴

B. Exclusion of Court Assistance in Taking Evidence

1. Current Opinions in Legal Doctrine

Thus far, because court assistance in the taking of evidence in arbitrations held in Switzerland (Art. 184 PILA CH) has seldom been sought, its exclusion has not been discussed extensively in Swiss legal doctrine.¹²⁸⁵ By contrast, the topic has been the subject of vigorous debate under German and, less extensively, English law.¹²⁸⁶ As regards the PILA CH, AMBAUEN argues that because the parties have a right to participate in the taking of evidence (as part of the right to be heard), the advance exclusion of this right is not possible.¹²⁸⁷ Or, to put it differently, parties cannot deprive themselves of the possibility to play an active role in the taking of evidence. In contrast, AMBAUEN does not mention the possibility of excluding court assistance during the arbitral proceedings. However, the following discussion will show that under certain circumstances, this is possible—both prior to and during the arbitral proceedings.

2. Right of Minimum Legal Protection

To begin, one must be aware that the freedom of the parties to tailor the applicable procedural rules at their (almost) full discretion (Art. 182 (1) PILA CH)

1282 BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 58; *contra* SCHNEIDER, 57.

1283 BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 58; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1365; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; BUCHER, n. 217; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 266; WALTER et al., 166.

1284 CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 22.

1285 Regarding Art. 185 PILA CH (other court assistance), MABILLARD argues, without further explanation, that the parties cannot renounce this sort of court assistance—*see* BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 21; for the exclusion of interim measures ordered by state courts (Art. 183 (2) PILA CH), *see also* HAAS, 347 et seqq.; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 6.105 et seqq.; WALTER et al., 146.

1286 *See* p. 137 et seqq. and p. 170 et seq. *supra*.

1287 AMBAUEN, n. 284 and 244 with reference to DFT 124 I 241, cons. 2; DFT 4A_528/2011 of 23 Jan. 2012, cons. 2.1; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 263; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 47 et seqq.

is limited by Art. 182 (3) PILA CH, which states that the arbitral tribunal must ensure the equal treatment of the parties and their right to be heard. As previously discussed (*see* p. 106 et seqq. *supra*), these procedural guarantees must be considered within the context of their constitutional background, enshrined in Art. 29 (2) Const. CH. Therefore, parties cannot completely waive their right to legal protection, even if they wish to do so. By contrast, by tailoring the arbitral proceedings at their discretion, they can exclude certain types of evidence. One option is to agree to apply the IBA Rules or, more specifically, to resolve the dispute based on documentary evidence only.¹²⁸⁸ The parties can also agree to exclude expert opinions or to exclude admissions made in settlement discussions.¹²⁸⁹ But does the fact that different types of evidence may be excluded automatically lead to a conclusion that this also applies to court assistance in the taking of evidence? Or to put it another way, can the parties agree to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence by not waiving their right to minimum legal protection completely? Although there is no clear indication either in the PILA CH itself or in legal doctrine, there are several arguments in favour of such an exclusion.

3. Reasons in Favour of an Exclusion of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH

First of all, if the issue is considered within the context of the main objective of arbitration—that is, to allow parties with comparable negotiating power to voluntarily decide to settle their disputes in large part without the help or interference of state courts—there are good reasons to believe that the parties can completely waive assistance under Art. 184 PILA CH. However, in some situations, the party will not have voluntarily entered into the arbitration agreement. For example, many sportspeople and athletes have no option—short of stopping playing their sport—but to agree to the dispute settlement mechanisms of their respective organisation if a dispute arises.¹²⁹⁰ While it makes sense to have a single forum in such situations, it is important to ask whether this provides a similar level of minimum legal protection—in terms of both equivalence and effectiveness—compared to the state courts.¹²⁹¹

¹²⁸⁸ Art. 42 (1) (c) Swiss Rules; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 14, 34.

¹²⁸⁹ Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 14; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1318; RÜEDE/HADEN-FELDT, 262 et seq.

¹²⁹⁰ See e.g. Art. 37 (3) CAS Code: ‘In agreeing to submit any dispute subject to the ordinary arbitration procedure or to the appeal arbitration procedure to these Procedural Rules, the parties expressly waive their rights to request any such measures from state authorities or tribunals ...’; HAAS, 358; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 6.106 et seqq.; BSK-PATOCCHI/JERMINI, Art. 192 PILA CH n. 3b; DFT 133 III 235, cons. 4.3.2.2.

¹²⁹¹ HAAS, 359.

Quite obviously, the answer to this question must be determined on a case-by-case basis. The issue is even more delicate prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal. If there is no emergency arbitrator competent to take evidence, the right to minimum legal protection will certainly be violated;¹²⁹² but just because the respective arbitration institution provides for an emergency arbitrator (equivalence), this will not necessarily be as effective as a state court (effectiveness). Here, other elements—such as the types of evidence sought and the speed of the proceeding—come into play.¹²⁹³ Regarding the former issue, the possible measures available to emergency arbitrators and/or arbitral tribunals tend to be even broader than those available to state courts (as long as the parties have not excluded certain types of evidence). In addition, given the speed with which emergency arbitrators operate and the expedited procedures available under the rules of many arbitration institutions, there is no disadvantage in choosing arbitration in this regard.¹²⁹⁴ Furthermore, arbitral tribunals lack coercive power to enforce their orders—for instance, where a recalcitrant witness refuses to appear for examination; but HAAS argues that the impact of state court orders is often similarly limited, especially in international cases.¹²⁹⁵

To summarise, given both the similarities and differences between the taking of evidence by arbitral tribunals and state courts respectively, one may conclude that—depending on the respective case—arbitral tribunals and emergency arbitrators alone can provide a similar level of minimum legal protection in terms of equivalence and effectiveness. As a result, the parties can only partially waive their right to minimum legal protection by excluding the possibility of court assistance in the taking of evidence under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH.

Second, if there is only a very loose connection to Switzerland—that is, if none of the parties has its domicile, habitual residence or business establishment in Switzerland—the possibility to make such an exclusion should be even greater. One may argue by analogy that if the parties, by virtue of Art. 192 (1) PILA CH, can almost fully waive the action for annulment or limit the grounds to challenge an arbitral award, the exclusion of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH—which

¹²⁹² KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 6.108; HAAS, 360; *see e.g.* Art. 29 ICC Rules; Art. 9B LCIA Rules; Art. 6 ICDR Rules; Rule 30 SIAC Rules; Art. 43 Swiss Rules.

¹²⁹³ HAAS, 362.

¹²⁹⁴ For emergency arbitrator and expedited proceedings, *see e.g.* Appendix V and VI ICC Rules.

¹²⁹⁵ HAAS, 363; BOOG, n. 106 et seqq.

merely concerns a procedural question—should also be possible.¹²⁹⁶ Art. 192 (1) PILA CH aims to make arbitration more efficient, providing that if the arbitration has no real connection to Switzerland, the parties can waive the possibility of judicial review.¹²⁹⁷ In addition, Swiss courts should not be preoccupied by dilatory actions with no real connection to Switzerland.¹²⁹⁸ The SFT has held that in the interests of efficiency and to respect the autonomy of the parties, such an exclusion does not violate any public interest.¹²⁹⁹ By and large, the ECtHR has confirmed the SFT's position and stated that as long as such an exclusion is 'free, permissible and unambiguous', there is no violation of Art. 6 (1) ECHR.¹³⁰⁰ This reasoning may also be applied to the exclusion of court assistance in the taking of evidence. In sum, parties with only a loose connection to Switzerland should be able to exclude court assistance in the taking of evidence by applying Art. 192 (1) PILA CH by analogy. This can benefit the arbitration in terms of both equivalence and effectiveness.

Finally, it should be remembered that this exclusion is only temporary. If the parties subsequently wish to resort to state courts, they can easily change their minds by entering into a separate agreement during the arbitration regarding the possibility to seek assistance from state courts in the taking of evidence.¹³⁰¹ Consequently, their waiver of legal minimum protection is likewise partial. Of course, the situation is different if one party refuses to conclude a separate agreement contrary to the first one. In such circumstances, the parties' prior agreement to voluntarily exclude the assistance of state courts must be respected.

4. Conclusion

In summary, it is clear that the question of whether the parties can exclude Art. 184 (2) PILA CH must be answered individually for each and every case. If the parties have entered into arbitration voluntarily, the exclusion should be considered valid in order to respect the parties' choice. By contrast, if one of the parties was *de facto* forced to settle the dispute through arbitration, one must consider whether the arbitral tribunal (or the emergency arbitrator)

¹²⁹⁶ Art. 192 (1) PILA CH. However, the parties cannot exclude so-called 'revision', which aims to correct an arbitral award in cases of newly discovered significant facts or decisive evidence, or if the decision was influenced to the detriment of a party concerned by a felony or misdemeanour (FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7201 et seq.).

¹²⁹⁷ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 192 PILA CH n. 1; Arroyo-BAIZEAU, Art. 192 PILA CH n. 2.

¹²⁹⁸ BSK-PATOCCHI/JERMINI, Art. 192 PILA CH n. 1.

¹²⁹⁹ DFT 4A_238/2011 of 4 January 2012, cons. 3.2.

¹³⁰⁰ *Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland*, ECtHR, App no. 41069/12, n. 26 et seq., 1 Mar. 2016.

¹³⁰¹ STEINBRÜCK, 412.

can provide an equivalent level of legal protection to state courts. If so, there is only a partial waiver of minimum legal protection and thus the exclusion of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH is valid. As sports-related arbitral proceedings remain a minority in the sphere of international commercial arbitration, it is expected that in most cases, the parties will be free to exclude court assistance pursuant to Art. 184 (2) PILA CH. In addition, where the parties have only a loose connection to Switzerland, the exclusion of court assistance in the taking of evidence is even more justified, provided that the arbitration is also voluntary. Finally, the waiver of minimum legal protection is mostly partial, since the parties can include this assistance in a subsequent separate agreement.

§ 5 Spectrum of Evidence and its Target

A. Evidence According to a Party Agreement

The discretion of the parties to tailor the arbitral proceedings is a key hallmark of international arbitration.¹³⁰² In the absence of such a choice, the arbitral tribunal will determine the procedure to be followed by the parties.¹³⁰³ Regardless of which procedural rules are chosen, the arbitral tribunal must ensure the equal treatment of the parties and their right to be heard.¹³⁰⁴ The parties are therefore at liberty to exclude certain types of evidence, such as witness testimony, and to agree to settle their dispute solely based on documentary evidence. This agreement binds not only the parties themselves, but also the arbitrators.¹³⁰⁵ In contrast to the other examined *leges arbitri*, the fact that an arbitral tribunal takes evidence contrary to an explicit agreement between the parties does not serve as grounds to annul the arbitral award under the PILA CH.¹³⁰⁶ Nonetheless, the arbitral award may be annulled if a party can show that the arbitral tribunal somehow violated the right to equal treatment, the right to be heard or even public policy.¹³⁰⁷

¹³⁰² Art. 182 (1) PILA CH; Arroyo-KNOLL, Art. 182 PILA CH n.1; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 182 PILA CH n.1.

¹³⁰³ Art. 182 (2) PILA CH.

¹³⁰⁴ Art. 182 (3) PILA CH.

¹³⁰⁵ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 182 PILA CH n.10.

¹³⁰⁶ §1059 (2) (i.) (d) CCP DE; Art. 1520 (3) CCP FR; S. 68 (2) (c) EAA 1996; S. 10 (a) (4) FAA USA; DFT 4P.23/2006 of 27 Mar. 2006, cons. 4.2; DFT 117 II 346, cons. 1a; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 61.

¹³⁰⁷ Art. 190 (2) (d and e) PILA CH; *see also* p. 266 et seqq. *infra*.

B. Evidence According to the PILA CH

Art. 184 (2) PILA CH remains silent on the different types of evidence, stating only that ‘the judge shall apply his own law’. It follows, therefore, that the respective court will take evidence according to the CCP CH.¹³⁰⁸ In addition, by virtue of Art. 11a PILA CH, the respective state court may take into account foreign procedures (*see* p. 242 et seqq. *infra*) or take evidence in accordance with international treaties.¹³⁰⁹ In most cases, however, evidence will be taken according to the CCP CH. Art. 168 (1) CCP CH designates the following evidence as admissible: testimony (lit. a), physical records (lit. b), inspections (lit. c), expert opinions (lit. d), written statements (lit. e) and questioning and statements of the parties (lit. f). In order to ensure a fair procedure and legal certainty, this list is exhaustive.¹³¹⁰ Unlike under French law, for example, neither the PILA CH nor the CCP CH distinguishes between the evidence which can be sought prior to or after constitution of the arbitral tribunal.¹³¹¹

Prior to the taking of evidence, in order to uphold the parties’ right to be heard, they should be informed of the time and place of the hearing.¹³¹² This allows them to participate and experience the proceedings first hand.¹³¹³ In addition, by analogy from Art. 375 (3) CCP CH, the parties should be allowed to ask questions during the taking of evidence.¹³¹⁴ This also applies to the arbitral tribunal, which has the right (but not the duty) to take an active part in the taking of evidence, especially in cases where the arbitral tribunal has an interest in hearing the (chief) witnesses’ examination first hand.¹³¹⁵

Hitherto, Art. 184 (2) PILA CH has primarily been invoked in order to force a recalcitrant witness to give testimony. However, such cases remain rare. In a recent case from 2015, albeit on a purely domestic level, two wit-

¹³⁰⁸ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 75; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 61; SCHNEIDER, 60 et seqq.; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 15; GÖKSU, n. 308.

¹³⁰⁹ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 64; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 20; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 83. In this respect, *see* e.g. the European Convention on Information on Foreign Law (1968) (entered into force in Switzerland in 1970).

¹³¹⁰ FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7320; DFT 141 III 433, cons. 2.5.1.

¹³¹¹ *See* p. 151 et seqq. *supra*.

¹³¹² Art. 182 (3) PILA CH; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1369; ARROYO-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 79; WALTER et al., 168; SCHNEIDER, 65.

¹³¹³ CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 16; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 264; BUCHER, n. 218.

¹³¹⁴ GÖKSU, n. 321, 1554; SCHNEIDER, 65.

¹³¹⁵ *Ibid.*, n. 340; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 84; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 267; SCHNEIDER, 65 et seq.; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 84; SCHNEIDER, 66; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 267.

nesses were obliged to appear directly before the respective arbitral tribunal in Geneva to give testimony.¹³¹⁶ Not only was the request answered within less than a week, but the witnesses were also ordered to appear directly before the arbitral tribunal.¹³¹⁷ In this regard, Art. 184 (2) PILA CH does not express itself on the technical details of the taking of evidence (i.e. how exactly this should take place). While SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, LALIVE et al. and RÜEDE/HADENFELDT suggest that the evidence will always be taken before the requested state court, BERGER/KELLERHALS, OETIKER and GÖKSU suggest that, depending on the situation, the evidence may be taken before either the arbitral tribunal or the respective state court.¹³¹⁸

This opinion deserves approval. If the arbitral proceedings are being conducted in Switzerland, the taking of evidence directly before the arbitral tribunal is the most convenient option, since the arbitrators are already familiar with the respective case and in particular with the applicable procedural rules.¹³¹⁹ In addition, this saves the respective state court judge from having to take evidence in a way to which he or she is not normally accustomed.¹³²⁰ Moreover, the translation costs can also be significantly reduced.¹³²¹

However, in an international arbitration with its seat outside Switzerland, evidence will most likely be taken before a state court. In this case, it would be disproportionate to relocate the arbitration to Switzerland for the taking of evidence. If the evidence is taken by a state court, the results will be forwarded to the arbitral tribunal and the parties (at best in the form of the minutes from the witness examination or site inspection).¹³²² From a comparative point of view, the place where the evidence is taken is of no importance under German law, since § 1050 (3) CCP DE explicitly states that arbitrators can participate in the taking of evidence. The same seems to apply under French, English and US law, although this is not explicit.¹³²³

¹³¹⁶ THORENS-ALADJEM, 547 et seq.; VITTOZ, 921 et seqq.

¹³¹⁷ See also S. 43 (1) EAA 1996: A party to arbitral proceedings may use the same court procedures as are available in relation to legal proceedings to secure the attendance *before the tribunal* of a witness in order to give oral testimony or to produce documents or other material evidence (emphasis added).

¹³¹⁸ BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 62; LALIVE et al., Art. 184 PILA CH n. 7; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 267; contra BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1367; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 78 et seq.; GÖKSU, n. 321.

¹³¹⁹ This seems to be a constant practice in Geneva; see ASA Bull. 1990, 283 et seqq.

¹³²⁰ SCHMIDT-AHRENDTS/DE JONG, 286.

¹³²¹ *Ibid.*

¹³²² BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1369; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 62; SCHNEIDER, 66; WALTER et al., 169.

¹³²³ Arts. 1449 and 1469 CCP FR; Ss. 43 and 44 EAA 1996; § 1782.

C. Foreign Types of Evidence

The possibilities for the parties to tailor the taking of evidence according to their discretion are limited when state courts come into play. Faced with a request for court assistance in the taking of evidence pursuant to Art. 184 (2) PILA CH, the respective state court will normally apply its own law, irrespective of what the parties have agreed in the arbitration agreement.¹³²⁴ In Switzerland, therefore, it follows that foreign types of evidence such as affidavits and cross-examination will usually be excluded.¹³²⁵ Still, one may consider Arts. 11a (2) and (3) PILA CH:

- “(2) Upon petition of the requesting authority, foreign legal procedures may also be observed or taken into account, if necessary, for the enforcement of a claim abroad unless there are important reasons pertaining to the affected party not to do so.
- (3) The Swiss judicial or administrative authorities may issue documents or take an affidavit from an applicant in accordance with a form of foreign law if the Swiss form is not recognized abroad and if a claim meriting protection could not be asserted there.”

The prevailing view in Swiss legal doctrine suggests that this provision may be applied to international arbitration by analogy.¹³²⁶ It therefore allows a Swiss court to recognise foreign forms of evidence (e.g. from the place of enforcement of the arbitral award).¹³²⁷ More recently, the Swiss legislature considered this fact in the drafting process of the revised PILA CH by proposing explicitly that a state court will usually apply its own law but, on request, will take into account foreign procedures (Art. 184 (3) PILA CH).¹³²⁸ This represents a certain harmonisation with US law, explicitly allowing for evidence to be taken according to foreign law.¹³²⁹ However, this is not the case as regards German, French and English law.¹³³⁰

¹³²⁴ Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 77.

¹³²⁵ See e.g. a recent unpublished decision of the District Court of Zurich, FR160295-L/U of 27. May 2016, cited in BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 375 PILA CH n. 76a.

¹³²⁶ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 77; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 61; BERGER/KELLERHALS, 1366; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 15; GÖKSU, n. 308; DUTOIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 3; LALIVE et al., Art. 184 PILA CH n. 7; BUCHER, n. 218; WALTER et al., 167; SCHNEIDER, 62 et seq.

¹³²⁷ Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 77.

¹³²⁸ FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7198.

¹³²⁹ See p. 207 et seqq. *supra*.

¹³³⁰ See p. 140 et seqq., p. 159 and p. 174 et seq. *supra*.

For instance, if cross-examination of a witness is requested, the examination must be recorded on video or the witness must be sworn in in a certain manner, the respective state court has broad discretion to grant such a request.¹³³¹ Nevertheless, Arts. 11a (2) and (3) apply only where there is no international treaty such as the HEC and the scope of application is not broader than that under such treaties.¹³³² In such case, as regards the taking of evidence, the Hague Convention on Civil Procedure (HCP) must be considered at all times.¹³³³ However, since the HEC deals specifically with the taking of evidence and replaces the HCP's respective provisions, the HCP's scope of application has become increasingly limited.¹³³⁴

Besides the petition of the requesting authority (either a foreign state court or a foreign arbitral tribunal (Art. 185a PILA CH), the consideration of a foreign procedure may be necessary to enforce a claim abroad. For instance, this applies to situations where the evidence must be taken in a specific form in order to have full evidentiary force abroad (e.g. a witness examination under oath).¹³³⁵ Lastly, a state court will consider foreign types of evidence only if there are no important reasons not to do so, such as personal privacy or the right to refuse testimony.¹³³⁶

Because the consideration of foreign types of evidence is fully in the hands of the respective state court, there is no right thereto.¹³³⁷ There have been few reported cases in this regard and the Swiss courts tend to be reluctant to consider foreign types of evidence in aid of arbitration.¹³³⁸ Regarding the new possibility foreseen in Art. 185a PILA CH to directly approach a Swiss court for assistance in the taking of evidence in arbitration, it remains to be seen whether requests to consider foreign types of evidence will be made more frequently.

1331 ZK-RODRIGUEZ/VOLKEN, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 9, 12, 15 et seqq.; CR-BUCHER, Art. 11-11a PILA CH n. 21; BSK-BERTI/DROESE, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 6.

1332 Art. 9 HEC; Art. 14 (2) HCP; ZK-RODRIGUEZ/VOLKEN, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 10; CR-BUCHER, Art. 11-11a PILA CH n. 22.

1333 Art. 11a (4) PILA CH; Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 33.

1334 Art. 29 HEC; ZK-RODRIGUEZ/VOLKEN, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 22; DUTOIT, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 8; DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.

1335 ZK-RODRIGUEZ/VOLKEN, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 11.

1336 *Ibid.*; see also Art. 11 HEC; Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 25 et seq.

1337 DUTOIT, Art. 11a PILA CH n. 3; GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 427.

1338 See e.g. an unpublished decision of the District Court of Zurich, FR160295-L/U of 27. May 2016, cited in BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 375 PILA CH n. 76a.

D. Availability of Pre-trial Discovery of Documents?

While it is undoubtedly hard to predict the degree to which the Swiss courts will consider foreign types of evidence, it seems clear that there are some reservations regarding US-style pre-trial discovery. However, because it is foreseen that foreign arbitral tribunals will be able to approach the Swiss courts directly (Art. 185a (2) PILA CH), such requests may be made more frequently in the future. If they concern US-style pre-trial discovery, the respective state court will most likely orient itself according to the practice under Art. 23 HEC. Accordingly, a Member State of the HEC may declare that it will not execute ‘letters of request for the purpose of obtaining pre-trial discovery of documents as known in Common Law countries’.¹³³⁹ Switzerland made use of this possibility in the form of a partial reservation:¹³⁴⁰

“6. In accordance with Article 23, Switzerland declares that Letters of Request issued for the purpose of obtaining pre-trial discovery of documents will not be executed if:

- a) the request has no direct and necessary link with the proceedings in question; or
- b) a person is required to indicate what documents relating to the case are or were in his/her possession or keeping or at his/her disposal; or
- c) a person is required to produce documents other than those mentioned in the request for legal assistance, which are probably in his/her possession or keeping or at his/her disposal; or
- d) interests worthy of protection of the concerned persons are endangered.”

Generally speaking, the aim of this reservation is to avoid ‘fishing expeditions’.¹³⁴¹ Therefore, any requests regarding documents with no connection to the case or non-specified classes of documents over an unlimited time-frame will be denied.¹³⁴² These include, for instance, requests to a Swiss bank to provide evidence of all connections (e.g. foundations, trusts, corporations) with correspondence and records of a certain person (directly or

¹³³⁹ This article was initiated by England and many Member States made use of their right (see the various reservations); GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 696; MüKo-PABST, Art. 23 HECn. 4.

¹³⁴⁰ No. 6 of Switzerland’s reservation.

¹³⁴¹ Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 27; DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1; GAUTHEY/MARKUS, n. 696; KLAUS, 308.

¹³⁴² *Ibid.*

indirectly, and with no regard to the exact reason) held with that bank.¹³⁴³ Since Art. 23 HEC speaks only of ‘documents’, witness examination may not be requested, except where it relates to the existence, power of disposition or extent of the requested document(s).¹³⁴⁴ Regarding witnesses, the respective provisions on privilege and the right to refuse testimony apply according to the law of the state of execution, the state of origin of the request or even another state, by virtue of a separate declaration.¹³⁴⁵

Lit. a-c impose no new requirements as regards the relevance of document production in Swiss civil procedure, but merely repeat that ‘evidence is required to prove facts that are legally relevant and disputed’ (Art. 150 (1) CCP CH).¹³⁴⁶ These limitations seem to be in line with the reservations of numerous other Member States.¹³⁴⁷ Thus, as the Cantonal Court of Zurich has held, it does not matter whether a specific request actually originated from a common law country (Art. 23 HEC).¹³⁴⁸ Only lit. d represents a Swiss speciality and serves as a general clause which does not refer to the Swiss *ordrepublic*, but instead aims to protect the interests of the relevant person.¹³⁴⁹ This applies, for instance, to the protection of commercial and technical confidentiality.¹³⁵⁰

In sum, the Swiss courts will be rather hesitant when faced with requests for pre-trial discovery of documents. However, Switzerland has only partially excluded the possibility of granting requests for pre-trial discovery. In this respect, requesting parties would be well advised to consider the grounds listed in No. 6 (a-d) of Switzerland’s reservation to Art. 23 HEC. In a case in which a US court requested a Swiss bank to produce certain documents from one of its clients, the SFT granted the request and reasoned that a direct and

¹³⁴³ Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich, RU160027-O/U of 6 Dec. 2016, cons. 5.4.

¹³⁴⁴ FCDisp HEC CH (1993), 1301; Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 23 HEC n. 10; MüKo-PABST, Art. 23 HEC n. 7.

¹³⁴⁵ Art. 11 HEC; for the parties’ and third parties’ right to refuse to give testimony in Switzerland, *see* Arts. 156 and 163 et seqq. CCP CH.

¹³⁴⁶ DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1; KLAUS, 308.

¹³⁴⁷ *See fn 1339 supra*; DFT 4A_315/2017 of 17 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.3.1; FCDisp HEC CH (1993), 1301.

¹³⁴⁸ *Ibid.*; Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich, RU160027-O/U of 6 Dec. 2016, cons. 5.3; *see also* Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich, decree of 23 Oct. 2001, cons. 4, in: ZR 2002, 262 et seqq.; *contra* Geimer/Schütze-KNÖFEL, Art. 23 HEC, n. 11.

¹³⁴⁹ DFT 4A_315/2017 of 17 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.3.1; DFT 4A_399/2007 of 4 Dec. 2007, cons. 5.3; DFT 132 III 291, cons. 2.1; FCDisp HEC CH (1993), 1301.

¹³⁵⁰ Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013), 27; in this respect, *see also* Art. 56 CCP CH: The court shall take appropriate measures to ensure that taking evidence does not infringe the legitimate interests of any parties or third party, such as business secrets; BSK-GUYAN, Art. 156 CCP CH n. 2.

necessary link with the proceedings in question had been shown (lit. a).¹³⁵¹ Moreover, it argued that lit. d does not prevent a Swiss court from forcing a Swiss bank to deny banking secrecy to a certain client, as long as the various interests of the concerned person are considered sufficiently protected.¹³⁵²

E. International Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence

In cases where evidence is not located in Switzerland, the Swiss courts may themselves be requested to seek international court assistance (e.g. by means of the HEC or other international treaties such as the European Convention on Information on Foreign Law).¹³⁵³ As the previous comparative analysis of several *leges arbitri* has shown, arbitral tribunals can often directly approach state courts at the place where the evidence is located. This strongly suggests that in order to save time and costs, the Swiss courts will most likely not be approached to initiate a request to a foreign state court at the place where the evidence is located.

F. Target of Evidence

1. Parties to the Arbitration

The classic distinction between the parties to the arbitration and third parties must also be drawn here. While state courts can force recalcitrant third parties to give testimony, this is not possible in the case of the parties to the arbitration. This is made clear by the first *Intel* factor, which suggests that requests for evidence from a party to the arbitration, over which the respective arbitral tribunal already has jurisdiction, will be denied.¹³⁵⁴ Thus, the prevailing view in Switzerland is that the arbitral tribunal should consider the behaviour of a non-compliant party when assessing the evidence.¹³⁵⁵ This could involve drawing an adverse inference under the conditions previously

1351 DFT 4A_399/2007 of 4 Dec. 2007, cons. 5.2.

1352 *Ibid.*, cons. 5.3.

1353 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 76; DUTOIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 4; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 63; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1368; GÖKSU, n. 322; LALIVE et al., Art. 184 PILA CH n. 6; BUCHER, n. 219; for mutual assistance between Swiss Courts see Arts. 194-196 CCP CH.

1354 See p. 196 *supra*.

1355 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 80; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1367; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 62; SCHNEIDER, 53; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 265; BUCHER, n. 216; *contra* LALIVE et al., Art. 184 PILA CH n. 6; WALTER et al., 164. The last two groups of authors suggest that besides third parties, Art. 184 (2) PILA CH serves to force recalcitrant parties to give testimony or produce documents too.

discussed (*see* p. 56 et seqq. *supra*). In this regard, the French approach is somewhat different, as it expressly empowers the arbitral tribunal to impose an *astreinte* in case of non-compliance.¹³⁵⁶

In an arbitration in the Canton of Ticino in 1998, a party refused to allow the inspection of a machine in its possession.¹³⁵⁷ Consequently, the arbitral tribunal sought court assistance in order to force that party to allow the inspection, under threat of criminal sanctions according to Art. 292 SCC CH. The Supreme Cantonal Court of Ticino stated that there is no legal basis to force a recalcitrant party to comply with an evidentiary order. Rather, this fact should be considered by the arbitral tribunal in assessing the evidence.¹³⁵⁸ In another (ad hoc) arbitration in Geneva, an attempt to force a party to give testimony was halted by the arbitral tribunal.¹³⁵⁹ As the relevant party had refused to testify before the arbitral tribunal, the adverse party requested the arbitral tribunal to send a letter rogatory to a Spanish state court at the place where the recalcitrant party was domiciled. However, the arbitral tribunal denied the request, stating that a state court cannot force a party to testify based on either cantonal or federal law.¹³⁶⁰

The situation is similar in state court proceedings. Based on Art. 160 (1) CCP CH, the parties have a duty to cooperate in the taking of evidence—that is, to give testimony, produce documentary evidence (except legal correspondence with lawyers) and allow expert examinations of their person or property. The right to refuse to cooperate in the taking of evidence is limited to cases in which the disclosure of a secret would breach professional confidentiality (Art. 321 SCC CH), or where the taking of evidence would expose a close associate to criminal prosecution or civil liability (Art. 165 CCP CH).¹³⁶¹ However, according to Art. 164 CCP CH, ‘if a party refuses to cooperate without valid reasons, the court shall take this into account when appraising the evidence’. For instance, if a party refuses to reveal a document in its possession, the court may assume that the document’s contents are as claimed by the adverse party.¹³⁶² That said, however, the respective state court will assess the evidence freely (Art. 157 CCP CH), and the mere refusal of a party to produce evidence will not automatically lead to a reversal of the burden of

¹³⁵⁶ Art. 1467(3) CCP FR; *see also* p. 73 *supra*.

¹³⁵⁷ KNOEPFLER, 599 et seqq.

¹³⁵⁸ *Ibid.*, 600.

¹³⁵⁹ ASA Bull. 2005, 469 et seqq.

¹³⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, 473.

¹³⁶¹ Art. 163 CCP CH;

¹³⁶² BSK-SCHMID, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 2; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 5.

proof.¹³⁶³ This will apply only in case of an abuse of rights, where a recalcitrant party refers to the lack of evidence of the adverse party (for which it in fact is responsible).¹³⁶⁴

2. Third Parties

In contrast to the parties to the arbitration, third parties have a comprehensive right to refuse to cooperate in the taking of evidence. This holds true not only under Swiss law, but also under the other examined *lex arbitri*.¹³⁶⁵ Although third parties have a certain duty to cooperate in the taking of evidence, there are many possible conflicts, such as within families or professions.¹³⁶⁶ In Switzerland, third parties have both an absolute right to refuse and a limited right to refuse.¹³⁶⁷ In the former case, the third party may refuse to cooperate altogether; this is not the case in the latter. According to Art. 165 CCP CH, individuals with a close relationship to a party (e.g. through marriage, cohabitation, shared parenthood, fostering or a parental or sibling relationship) can completely refuse to cooperate. In order to protect family and partnership, the Swiss legislature allows such individuals to avoid a severe conflict of loyalty.¹³⁶⁸

In contrast, Art. 166 CCP CH lists certain cases in which a third party must demonstrate the existence of a moral conflict in order to justify a refusal to cooperate. These include situations where the taking of evidence would expose that individual or a close associate to criminal prosecution or civil liability (lit. a), or would cause a breach of professional confidentiality (lit. b).¹³⁶⁹ Unlike under Art. 165 CCP CH, where the third party need show only the fulfilment of one of the conditions listed in this article, without further explanation, Art. 166 CCP CH is stricter in terms of substantiation.¹³⁷⁰ Thus, the third party must ‘show credibly’ why one of the grounds listed in this article applies. It is only natural that elaborations in this respect are rather vague, since the respective third party wishes to prevent disclosure of the fact in question.¹³⁷¹

¹³⁶³ DFT 140 III 264, cons. 2.3; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 7; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASEN-BÖHLER, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 5 et seq.; BSK-SCHMID, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 2.

¹³⁶⁴ BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 164 CCP CH n. 7.

¹³⁶⁵ See p. 142 et seq., p. 160 et seq., p. 175 et seq. *supra* and p. 209 et seq. *supra*.

¹³⁶⁶ Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Vorbemerkungen Arts. 165-167 CCP CH n. 10.

¹³⁶⁷ Arts. 165 and 166 CCP CH.

¹³⁶⁸ DFT 2A.599/2006 of 5 Apr. 2007, cons. 4.2; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Vorbemerkungen zu den Arts. 165-167 CCP CH n. 4; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 165 CCP CH n. 2.

¹³⁶⁹ This applies, for instance, to lawyers, notaries, doctors, dentists etc. (Art. 321(1) SCCCH); see also BSK-SCHMID, Art. 166 CCP CH n. 5 et seqq.

¹³⁷⁰ Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 165 CCP CH n. 23.

¹³⁷¹ BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 166 CCP CH n. 3.

Because third parties *per se* are not part of the ongoing arbitration, the usual measures that may be taken against recalcitrant parties that refuse to cooperate in the assessment of evidence are useless.¹³⁷² The CCP CH thus sets out a broad spectrum of measures that may be implemented against a recalcitrant third party.¹³⁷³ However, if the respective refusal is justified based on grounds foreseen in Arts. 165 and 166 CCP CH, the state courts cannot consider a certain alleged fact as proven (Art. 162 CCP CH). This article thus limits the principle of free assessment of evidence according to Art. 157 CCP CH.¹³⁷⁴ Otherwise, the right of third parties to refuse to cooperate would be pointless.¹³⁷⁵ In contrast, if the refusal is indeed unjustified, the respective state court can impose one or more of the following sanctions (Art. 167 CCP CH):

- “(1) If a third party refuses to cooperate without justification, the court may:
 - a. impose a disciplinary fine up to 1,000 Swiss francs;
 - b. threaten sanctions under Article 292 SCC;
 - c. order the use of compulsory measures;
 - d. charge the third party the costs caused by the refusal.
- (2) The default of a third party has the same consequences as refusing to cooperate without a valid reason.
- (3) The third party may challenge the court’s order by way of objection.”

In sanctioning a party, the respective state court must consider the principle of proportionality.¹³⁷⁶ Therefore, depending on the case, a state court will usually begin by imposing indirect coercive measures (lit. a and b)—for example, the threat to impose a disciplinary fine—and will enforce it only if the third party continues to refuse to comply.¹³⁷⁷ The same applies with regard to the threat of sanctions under Art. 292 SCC CH (“contempt of official orders”), according to which a penal sanction in the form of a fine of up to CHF 10,000 may be imposed.¹³⁷⁸ In terms of proportionality, a state court should first test whether a disciplinary fine (lit. a) is effective enough before making a criminal complaint and handing the matter over to the criminal authorities.¹³⁷⁹

1372 Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 9.

1373 Art. 167 CCP CH; *see also* the two cases cited in THORENS-ALADJEM, 546 et seq.

1374 BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 162 CCP CH n. 1.

1375 BSK-SCHMID, Art. 162 CCP CH n. 2; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 162 CCP CH n. 4.

1376 *Ibid.*, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 23; in case of a default of a party and its consequences, *see* Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 25b et seq.

1377 DIKE-HIGI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 11; BSK-SCHMID, Art. 162 CCP CH n. 3a; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 162 CCP CH n. 5.

1378 Art. 292 i.c.w. 106 (1) SCC CH; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 14.

1379 BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 8; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 17.

Moreover, according to lit. c, a state court order can be enforced by means of a direct coercive measure. For instance, third parties can be forced to reveal specific documents in their possession, although ‘fishing expeditions’ are prohibited.¹³⁸⁰ Regarding the inspection of property, assistance from the police may become necessary to enforce a court order. With regard to witnesses, practice shows that in most situations it does not make sense to enforce their appearance through police assistance, since the value of their evidence will be questionable at best.¹³⁸¹ The mere threat that a recalcitrant third party may be charged with any costs ensuing from its refusal (lit. c) may be more effective in increasing the pressure to appear.¹³⁸² The costs-by-cause principle applies, for instance, in circumstances where a court hearing or inspection must be rescheduled due to the non-appearance of the respective third party.¹³⁸³

Finally, Art. 167(3) CCP CH states that the third party may challenge the court’s order by way of objection. While this holds true for Swiss civil proceedings in general, it seems questionable whether this also applies to court assistance in the taking of evidence under Art. 184(2) PILA CH. This question is examined in further detail below.¹³⁸⁴

§ 6 Competence of the *Juge d’Appui*

A. Scope of Discretion

Although Art. 184(2) PILA CH is not formulated as a facultative provision (*Kann-Vorschrift*), the state courts still have a wide discretion in deciding whether and how to grant court assistance in the taking of evidence. The admissibility of the request will therefore be examined in various ways.¹³⁸⁵ The same applies under French, English and US law.¹³⁸⁶ In this regard, the English approach—with its ‘appropriateness threshold’ set out in S. 2(3) EAA 1996—and the *Intel* factors under US law should be emphasised. However, the discretion under Swiss law appears to be broader than that under German law, where assistance must be granted if the requirements of § 1050 CCP DE

1380 *Ibid.*; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 12.

1381 *Ibid.*

1382 Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 19.

1383 *Ibid.*

1384 See p. 259 et seqq. *infra*.

1385 See e.g. Art. 27 UNCITRAL ML (... The court *may* execute the request ...) (emphasis added); § 1782(a) (‘The district court ... *may* order him to give his testimony ... (emphasis added)).

1386 See p. 161, p. 177 et seqq. and p. 211 *supra*.

are met.¹³⁸⁷ Accordingly, Swiss state courts will analyse procedural requirements such as a legitimate interest; the jurisdiction of the court; the capacity to be a party and to take legal action; that the case is not subject to proceedings elsewhere or the subject of a legally binding decision; and that the advance and security for costs have been paid.¹³⁸⁸ In addition to the state court's jurisdiction and the admissibility of the evidence request itself, the principle of subsidiarity and the examination of the arbitration agreement deserve a closer look.

First, with regard to the respective territorial and subject-matter jurisdiction, it has previously been shown (*see* p. 224 *supra*) that, depending on the cantonal law, the 'state court at the seat of the arbitral tribunal' is in most cases a district court (first instance) or cantonal supreme court (second instance).¹³⁸⁹ This also applies to the alternative jurisdiction based on the new Art. 185a (2) PILA CH—that is, where a foreign arbitral tribunal directly seeks court assistance at the place where the evidence will be taken. If the relevant state court considers itself competent, it will examine the evidence request more specifically.

In this second step, the court will consider whether the evidence request complies with the procedural rules determined by the parties.¹³⁹⁰ For instance, if the parties have agreed to settle their dispute based on documentary evidence only, a request to examine a witness should be denied in order to respect the parties' choice.¹³⁹¹ Likewise, faced with a request involving a foreign type of evidence, the respective judge cannot deviate from this, as long as it is compatible with Swiss law.¹³⁹² Consequently, if the examination of a witness has been requested, a state court cannot order the witness to make a written statement only.¹³⁹³ The same applies to a witness examination under oath: the state court cannot skip administration of the oath on the grounds that it already considers the witness's testimony to be credible.¹³⁹⁴ Finally, the taking of evidence itself is a separate process from the assessment of evidence.

1387 *See* p. 143 *supra*.

1388 Art. 59 CCP CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; SCHNEIDER, 60.

1389 Art. 3 CCP CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 70; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1365: *see e.g.* for the Canton of Basle (§ 93 (1) (4) Court Organisation Act BS; Cantonal Supreme Court), Berne (Art. 8 (1) Introductory Act BE; District Court), Geneva (Art. 86 (1) Judiciary Organisation Act GE; District Court) and Zurich (§ 32 Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH; District Court).

1390 Art. 182 PILA CH; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 76; WALTER et al., 165.

1391 *See e.g.* the standard Swiss Rules arbitration clause.

1392 CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 15; *see also* the new possibility to consider foreign forms of evidence (Art. 184 (3) PILA CH); p. 242 *supra*.

1393 Art. 190 (2) CCP CH; GÖKSU, n. 339.

1394 SCHNEIDER, 60, 65; WALTER et al., 168.

State courts therefore should not examine the admissibility, relevance, materiality and weight of evidence, which falls within the exclusive competence of the arbitral tribunal.¹³⁹⁵

B. Principle of Subsidiarity

As a basic principle of civil procedure, court assistance will be granted only if the party that submits the request has a legitimate interest.¹³⁹⁶ Thus, in addition to considering jurisdictional matters and the taking of evidence itself, the respective state court must examine whether court assistance is indeed ‘necessary’.¹³⁹⁷ Although the mere fact that an arbitral tribunal (or a party with the arbitral tribunal’s consent) has requested court assistance in the taking of evidence seems to indicate that assistance is indeed necessary, the respective state court must nonetheless examine this requirement. It seems clear that state courts cannot be approached merely because the arbitral tribunal considers that the taking of evidence would be inconvenient and burdensome for it.¹³⁹⁸

By contrast, it remains doubtful whether court assistance in the taking of evidence will be considered ‘necessary’ if the arbitral tribunal could take the evidence itself, but only with disproportionately high effort. On the one hand, there is no similar provision to S. 44 (5) EAA 1996, describing scenarios in which the arbitral tribunal ‘has no power or is unable for the time being to act effectively’.¹³⁹⁹ On the other hand, no statute or case law expressly mentions an ‘exhaustion requirement’, such as that set out in *Malev Hungarian Airlines*.¹⁴⁰⁰ In some situations where a witness or expert witness is located in a foreign jurisdiction, it may seem unlikely from the outset that this person will testify. In order to be certain, the arbitral tribunal must at least attempt to summon the witness. In Swiss legal doctrine, this issue is not undisputed. WALTER et al. and GÖKSU argue that as long as it is ‘legally’ possible to take evidence, the arbitral tribunal cannot resort to state courts for assistance.¹⁴⁰¹

¹³⁹⁵ Art. 9 (1) IBA Rules; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; GÖKSU, n. 337; VITTOZ, 921 et seq.; WALTER et al., 166; *see also* p. 107 *supra*.

¹³⁹⁶ Art. 59 (2) (a) CCP CH.

¹³⁹⁷ ‘If the assistance of state judiciary authorities is *necessary* for the taking of evidence ...’ (emphasis added) (Art. 184 (2) PILA CH).

¹³⁹⁸ GÖKSU, n. 298.

¹³⁹⁹ *See* p. 178 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁴⁰⁰ *Malev Hungarian Airlines*, 964 F.2d 97, 100 (2d Cir. 1992).

¹⁴⁰¹ WALTER et al., 161. They are arguing nonetheless for a ‘reasonable interpretation’, admitting that seeking court assistance is already justified if the arbitral tribunal ‘might fail’ to take the evidence; *see also* GÖKSU, 298 et seq.

Consequently, if there is a way for the arbitral tribunal to obtain the evidence itself, court assistance must be denied. By contrast, the majority of authors take the view that significant hurdles in the taking of evidence will justify a request for the assistance of state courts.¹⁴⁰² This view deserves approval, for the following reasons.

Put simply, the overall aim of Art. 184 (2) PILA CH is to assist in the taking of evidence in arbitration.¹⁴⁰³ This has been reinforced by the new Art. 185a PILA CH, which aims to assist even foreign arbitral tribunals in this regard. Therefore, one may conclude that the threshold for such assistance should not be set too high. In particular, as already seen under US law, there is no strict ‘exhaustion requirement’; it is merely at the discretion of the respective state court to grant or deny assistance.¹⁴⁰⁴ However, this does not preclude the respective state court from examining whether the arbitral tribunal could not otherwise gather the evidence in question. This applies in particular prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal, when the emergency arbitrator may be unable to provide sufficient support in gathering evidence.¹⁴⁰⁵ In addition, in order to prove that court assistance in the taking of evidence is in fact necessary, the request should include an explanation of why the assistance is sought and what the arbitral tribunal has already done in an attempt to gather it.¹⁴⁰⁶ In doing so, court assistance under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH is limited to cases in which this is indeed necessary.

C. Examination of the Arbitration Agreement

Since Art. 184 (2) PILA CH serves only to assist in the taking of evidence in arbitration, one might ask whether the state courts must examine the validity of the arbitration agreement. In this regard, WALTER et al. suggest that the arbitration agreement should be examined in order to avoid inadvertently supporting an ‘unlawful arbitral proceeding’.¹⁴⁰⁷ This should take place through a summary examination, irrespective how hard or time consuming

1402 BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 57; Arroyo-VEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 72; VITTOZ, 922; SCHNEIDER, 53, 56; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 265.

1403 See also the state court’s assistance regarding interim measures (Art. 183 (2) PILA CH) and other assistance (Art. 185 PILA CH).

1404 *Malev Hungarian Airlines*, 964 F.3d 97, 100 (2d Cir. 1992).

1405 See e.g. Art. 29 ICC Rules; Art. 43 Swiss Rules; Rule 30 SIAC Rules.

1406 See also the suggestion for Swiss domestic arbitration of DIKE-BRUNNER/STEININGER, Art. 375 CCP CH n. 7.

1407 WALTER et al., 165.

this might be.¹⁴⁰⁸ By contrast, the prevailing view in Swiss legal doctrine is that when assisting in arbitration in accordance with Art. 184 (2) PILA CH, the state court should not examine the arbitration agreement.¹⁴⁰⁹ Art. 179 (3) PILA CH provides that a state court presented with a request to appoint an arbitrator must proceed as requested, ‘unless a summary examination shows that no arbitration agreement exists between the parties’.¹⁴¹⁰

The prevailing opinion deserves thus approval. As regards proceedings in which the *juge d'appui* comes into play, Art. 179 (3) PILA CH is the only provision that expressly states that the arbitration agreement can be examined on a *prima facie* basis. As under German, French and English law, this provision emphasises the so-called ‘competence-competence’ principle, according to which the arbitral tribunal shall itself decide on its jurisdiction.¹⁴¹¹ Since the respective *juge d'appui* examines the arbitration agreement on a purely *prima facie* basis—that is, without expressing any opinion on the validity or consequence of the arbitration agreement—Art. 179 (3) PILA CH serves to prevent a party from engaging in arbitration only if there is not even the slightest suggestion of the existence of an arbitration agreement.¹⁴¹² Consequently, if the Swiss legislature had wanted to equip the *juge d'appui* with the same powers as regards court assistance in the taking of evidence (Art. 184 (2) PILA CH), it would have done so expressly.

Finally, one cannot speak of ‘unlawful arbitral proceedings’ if court assistance has been requested with the consent of the arbitral tribunal and there has been no plea of lack of jurisdiction.¹⁴¹³ The situation is different regarding § 1782, which arguably may not apply to international arbitration at all.¹⁴¹⁴ Special scrutiny will therefore be paid to the second *Intel* factor, taking into account the nature of the foreign tribunal as a first-instance decision maker whose decisions are subject to review.¹⁴¹⁵

1408 *Ibid.*

1409 BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1365; Arroyo-Veit, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 71; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 62; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 13; GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 1045; GÖKSU, n. 336; RÜEDE/HADENFELDT, 266; BUCHER, n. 217; SCHNEIDER, 59.

1410 Art. 173 (3) PILA CH; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1365; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 186 PILA CH n. 116 et seq.

1411 Art. 186 (1) PILA CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 179 PILA CH n. 71; for the German, French and English approach *see also* p. 145 et seq., 162 et seq. and 179 et seq. *supra*.

1412 DFT 118 Ia 20, cons. 5b; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 179 PILA CH n. 71.

1413 Art. 184 (2) and 186 (2) PILA CH; SCHNEIDER, 59; *contra* WALTER et al., 165.

1414 *See* p. 209 *supra*.

1415 *See* p. 196 *supra*.

In sum, a state court whose assistance is sought under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH should not examine the arbitration agreement. This examination forms part of a separate procedure, in which a party can raise a plea of lack of jurisdiction prior to any defence on the merits.¹⁴¹⁶ A detailed examination can also be conducted at the recognition and enforcement stage.¹⁴¹⁷

D. Decision on Costs

According to the CCP CH, procedural costs include the court costs and the parties' costs.¹⁴¹⁸ Court costs include the expenses of taking evidence; while the parties' costs cover legal representation.¹⁴¹⁹ Procedural costs are determined by the cantons, which set the tariffs.¹⁴²⁰ As a general rule, the court will decide on the procedural costs in the final decision; the costs are normally charged to the unsuccessful party. However, the CCP CH remains silent on the issue of the costs of court assistance in the taking of evidence, where neither party is successful or unsuccessful.

It therefore seems appropriate that the Swiss courts will charge the requesting party with the costs of taking evidence. This will either be the arbitral tribunal itself or a party to the arbitration. In the former case, the arbitral tribunal will pay the costs and can allocate them accordingly in the arbitral proceedings.¹⁴²¹ In the latter case, the parties will most likely be charged with the costs subject to the definitive decision of the costs by the arbitral tribunal.¹⁴²²

The PILA CH includes no provisions on an advance on costs, as in domestic arbitration pursuant to Art. 378 CCP CH. Nevertheless, the arbitral tribunal commonly orders an advance on the presumed costs of the arbitration and, for instance, assistance proceedings before state courts.¹⁴²³ Even in the absence of any institutional arbitration rule in this respect,¹⁴²⁴ the arbitral tribunal has the authority to order an advance on costs based on its right to

1416 Art. 186 (2) PILA CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 186 PILA CH n. 55 et seqq.; BSK-SCHOTT/COUR-VOISIER, Art. 186 PILA CH n. 88 et seqq.

1417 See p. 276 et seq. *infra*.

1418 Art. 95 (1) CCP CH.

1419 Arts. 95 (2) (c) and (3) (b) CCP CH.

1420 Art. 96 CCP CH.

1421 BSK-MABILLARD, Art. 185 PILA CH n. 18; GÖKSU, n. 325; BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 375 CCP CH n. 81; BK-BOOG/STARK-TRABER, Art. 375 CCP CH n. 133.

1422 BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 375 CCP CH n. 81 with reference to an unpublished decision of the District Court of Zurich, FR160295-L/U of 27. May 2016.

1423 BERGER/KELLERHALS, 1564; BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 378 CCP CH n. 2.

1424 See e.g. Art. 43 UNCITRAL Rules; Art. 41 Swiss Rules; Art. 37 ICC Rules.

determine the arbitral procedure (Art. 182 (2) PILA CH), or more generally from the legal relationship between the parties and the arbitral tribunal.¹⁴²⁵ If the advance is not paid, it may be appropriate to suspend the proceedings and, upon informing the parties of the consequences of non-payment, order their termination.¹⁴²⁶

§ 7 Appellate Remedies, Recognition and Enforcement

A. Introduction

With regard to whether the parties to arbitration and third parties can appeal a decision to grant or deny a request pursuant to Art. 184 (2) PILA CH, a clear distinction must be drawn between the state court proceeding according to Art. 184 (2) PILA (i.e. the taking of evidence itself) and the challenge to the arbitral award. First off, the issue should be treated by examining the appellate remedies against a state court order. Both the parties and concerned third parties (and even the arbitral tribunal itself) may have an interest in directly appealing this order. This might happen if a third party invokes a privilege and the respective state court either allows or denies it.

Second, one might ask whether the parties could also challenge a state court order indirectly by challenging the arbitral award—for instance, based on alleged violation of procedural rules during court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹⁴²⁷ Finally, it remains to be seen whether this can be addressed during the recognition and enforcement stage.

B. Challenge of the Decision of the *Juge d'Appui*

In both Swiss domestic and international arbitration, it remains questionable whether decisions concerning court assistance in the taking of evidence may be appealed.¹⁴²⁸ This question has been answered differently in different countries. Although the CCP DE provides that a remedy cannot be sought

1425 BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1565.

1426 See e.g. Art. 43(4) UNCITRAL Rules; BERGER/KELLERHALS, 1569 et seqq.

1427 Regarding the situation where parties claim a violation of the right to be heard because the arbitral tribunal has refused to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence, see DFT 4P.217/1992 of 15 Mar. 1993, cons. 7b, in: ASA Bull. 1993, 408.

1428 For an overview regarding the situation in Swiss domestic arbitration, see BK-PFISTERER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 19 et seqq.

against an order pursuant to §1050 CCP DE, this nevertheless appears to be possible if a request is denied.¹⁴²⁹ The same applies under French law: depending on the proceeding and the point at which an evidence request is granted, remedies are possible either against a decision denying an evidence request only or against a decision granting or denying such request.¹⁴³⁰ By comparison, according to S. 44 EAA 1996, the leave of the court is required to appeal any order under S. 44 and (most certainly) S. 43 EAA 1996. This provision, which is unique in international arbitration, aims to ensure a high degree of finality and sets strict boundaries to any intervention by state courts.¹⁴³¹

Under Swiss law, however, it is doubtful whether possible appellate remedies may be sought. Although it has been shown that a state court whose assistance is sought under Art. 184 (2) PILA CH will proceed according to the CCP CH, the CCP CH does not apply with regard to appellate procedures. This is because the decision to grant or deny court assistance in the taking of evidence is rendered by a sole (cantonal) instance, by either a district court (first instance) or a cantonal supreme court (second instance).¹⁴³² As a result, its decision is not subject to review by a higher cantonal instance. However, one might ask whether the parties can appeal to the SFT under the Federal Supreme Court Act (FSCA CH).¹⁴³³ In such case the objection would have to be filed within 30 days of notification of the state court's decision.¹⁴³⁴ Subject to a different ruling of the instructing judge, an objection in civil matters has no suspensive effect.¹⁴³⁵ Moreover, as there is no specific statutory basis for this, the minimum threshold of CHF 30,000 as the value in dispute does not apply to arbitration; otherwise, the parties could be deprived of their right to challenge an arbitral award in cases where this threshold is not reached.¹⁴³⁶

¹⁴²⁹ See p. 146 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁴³⁰ See p. 163 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁴³¹ See p. 180 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁴³² Art. 356 (2)(c) CCP CH; FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7377; BSK-WEBER/STECHER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 13; GÖKSU, n. 306; CR-BUCHER, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 14; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1363; Arroyo-VIEIT, Art. 184 PILA CH n. 73; see e.g. for the Canton of Basle (§ 93 (1) (4) Court Organisation Act BS; Cantonal Supreme Court), Berne (Art. 8 (1) Introductory Act BE; District Court), Geneva (Art. 86 (1) Judiciary Organisation Act GE; District Court) and Zurich (§ 32 Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH; District Court).

¹⁴³³ GÖKSU, n. 316.

¹⁴³⁴ Art. 100 (1) FSCA CH; for the formal requirements see Art. 42 FSCA CH; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.35.

¹⁴³⁵ Art. 103 (1) and (3) FSCA CH; but see as regards third parties p. 260 *infra*; BRACHER, n. 529.

¹⁴³⁶ Left open by the SFT in DFT 142 III 521, cons. 2.3.5; DFT 4A_576/2012 of 28 Feb. 2013, cons. 2; DFT 4A_110/2012 of 9 Oct. 2012, cons. 1; but see the new Art. 77(1) FSCA CH; FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7204; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 10; CR-BUCHER, Art. 191 PILA CH n. 17; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.44.

As far as can be seen, however, this question has not been answered clearly in Swiss statutory law, in case law or in legal doctrine.¹⁴³⁷ Although the *juge d'appui* can support the arbitral proceedings in various ways, only Art. 180 (3) PILA CH refers to the finality of a decision to challenge an arbitrator. Accordingly, the *juge d'appui* can make a final decision as long as the parties have not made provisions for this challenge procedure.¹⁴³⁸ The SFT has reasoned that the finality of this provision can be explained by the fact that the Swiss legislature limited the possibility to make such a challenge, to ensure the effectiveness of arbitration.¹⁴³⁹ Similarly, regarding the appointment of an arbitrator, the SFT held that if a state court refuses to appoint an arbitrator, the parties can object directly to the SFT, because the decision is final and *de facto* makes arbitration impossible.¹⁴⁴⁰ However, if an arbitrator has been appointed, no objection is possible. The SFT justified this by stating that there is limited opportunity to appeal in arbitration, to ensure its independence and effectiveness.¹⁴⁴¹ Rather, the parties can challenge the arbitrator's jurisdiction in the subsequent arbitration.

Apart from that, no provision of the PILA CH provides further guidance about a possible appeal. However, since Art. 184 (2) PILA CH states that the state court shall 'apply its own law'—that is, the CCP CH—the respective provisions of the CCP CH regarding domestic arbitration can (largely) be applied by analogy.¹⁴⁴²

As regards the taking of evidence, an unpublished decision of the SFT in Swiss domestic arbitration provides some insight on the finality of state court decisions.¹⁴⁴³ In this case, a party to the arbitration requested the production of certain documents held by a third party, the Federal Roads Office. The

¹⁴³⁷ But see MARKUS, 504 et seqq; DIKE-STACHER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 14; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 21.

¹⁴³⁸ DFT 138 III 270, cons. 2.2.1.

¹⁴³⁹ *Ibid.*; DFT 128 III 330, cons. 2.2; MARKUS, 514. However, in cases of a violation of equal treatment or the right to be heard as well as if there is a denial of access to justice, OETIKER suggests allowing an objection in civil matters to the SFT (Arts. 72 et seqq. FSCA CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 180 PILA CH n. 41; *see also* BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 915; BSK-PETER/BRUNNER, Art. 180 PILA CH n. 35; GIRSBERGER/VOSER, n. 775).

¹⁴⁴⁰ DFT 4A_215/2008 of 23 Sept. 2008, cons. 1.1; DFT 121 I 81, cons. 1; DFT 118 Ia 20, cons. 2; *see also* for domestic arbitration DFT 141 III 444, cons. 2.3; HURNI, 299 et seqq.

¹⁴⁴¹ DFT 115 II 294, cons. 2 et seq.; *contra* MARKUS, 506 et seqq.; for domestic arbitration, *see also* DFT 142 III 230, cons. 1.4.4. This decision states that an objection against the appointment of an arbitrator by a state court is possible only where a state court decides at the same time about the appointment of the arbitrator and the request to challenge it (with reference to DFT 5P.362/2005 of 19 May 2006, cons. 1).

¹⁴⁴² This is expressly stated in Art. 179 (2) PILA CH.

¹⁴⁴³ DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013; ASA Bull. 2017, 616 et seq.

Federal Roads Office refused the request, based on professional confidentiality; so the arbitral tribunal requested court assistance in the taking of evidence. The Cantonal Supreme Court of Ticino granted the arbitral tribunal's request and ordered the production of the documents. After the Federal Roads Office appealed, the SFT stated that since the Cantonal Supreme Court of Ticino has decided as the sole instance, its decision was final and binding, and an objection in civil matters to the SFT thus was not possible. In its very short reasoning, the SFT did not elaborate further on why it refused the objection; however, this may be because the Federal Roads Office is only part of a federal department, with no independent right to object.¹⁴⁴⁴ In any case, this decision has various implications—first and foremost for third parties, but also for the parties to arbitration.

1. Third Parties

Unsurprisingly, the decision was criticised soon after it was rendered.¹⁴⁴⁵ In particular, its critics pointed out that it deprived third parties of the right to object based only on the fact that the request arose from arbitral proceedings and not state court proceedings. In contrast, the following discussion will show that in theory, there is nothing to prevent a third party from resorting directly to the SFT by means of an objection in civil matters against a state court order forcing it to assist an arbitral tribunal in the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁴⁶

a. Legitimate Interest

First, the third party must show that it is particularly affected by the state court order and that there is a legitimate interest to amend or quash it. As previously discussed (*see* p. 250 *supra*), Art. 167(3) CCP CH provides for the possibility to challenge a court order forcing a third party to cooperate in the taking of evidence by way of objection. This immediate objection is justified by the fact that the sanctions provided in Art. 167(1) CCP CH to force a third party to reveal evidence are a strong intrusion into its legal status.¹⁴⁴⁷ This is even more so the case since the third party *per se* does not participate in the ongoing proceedings between the parties to the arbitration, and an objection in civil matters is its only possibility to object. In order to avoid any delay to

¹⁴⁴⁴ Art. 76(2) FSCA CH *e contrario*; DFT 142 II 324, cons. 1.3.1.

¹⁴⁴⁵ BEYELER, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013; GÖKSU, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013, 376.

¹⁴⁴⁶ Arts. 72 FSCA CH et seqq.

¹⁴⁴⁷ BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 20.

the proceedings, a third party can object only to the sanctions imposed on it and not merely to an order to assist in the taking of evidence without the threat of sanctions pursuant to Art. 167 (1) CCP CH.¹⁴⁴⁸

As previously discussed, an objection in civil matters has no suspensive effect, unless the instructing judge rules otherwise.¹⁴⁴⁹ In this particular context, it seems that such suspensive effect should be affirmed; otherwise, the third party's right to refuse to cooperate would be undermined.¹⁴⁵⁰

More generally, the legitimate interest to object also follows from Art. 29a Const. CH, according to which every person has the right to have their case determined by a judicial authority, subject only to certain exceptions set out in federal or cantonal law. As discussed below, there seems to be no exception regarding third parties. Thus, if the conditions for making an objection in civil matters to the SFT are met, the possibility to object should also be allowed, against the background of the right of access to justice.¹⁴⁵¹ If the parties to the arbitration have expressly excluded any intervention by state courts, this can nonetheless be ignored, since third parties are not bound by any agreement between the parties.

b. Objection Against an Interim Decision

Second, an objection in civil matters is possible only against certain kinds of decisions. As regards arbitral proceedings, this objection can usually be made only directly against the arbitral award, based on the very limited grounds set out in Arts. 190-192 PILA CH.¹⁴⁵² Since a state court decision on assistance in the taking of evidence is not an arbitral award, it cannot be challenged based on Art. 77 (1) (a) FSCA CH. Thus, the question arises as to whether this could be qualified as a final or interim decision. The distinction is important, since interim decisions are usually challenged only along with the final decision.¹⁴⁵³ According to the SFT's broad interpretation of final decisions, it is sufficient that a proceeding has come to an end in a purely formal way, irrespective if this has happened for procedural or material reasons.¹⁴⁵⁴ One might think that this might apply to the situation in question, where assistance is sought in

¹⁴⁴⁸ *Ibid.*, 21; BRACHER, n. 468.

¹⁴⁴⁹ See p. 257 *supra*; Art. 103 (1) and (3) FSCA CH; BRACHER, n. 529.

¹⁴⁵⁰ *Ibid.*

¹⁴⁵¹ GÖKSU, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013, 376.

¹⁴⁵² Art. 77 (1) (a) FSCA CH.

¹⁴⁵³ BSK-UHLMANN, Art. 90 FSCA CH n. 1.

¹⁴⁵⁴ DFT 141 III 395, cons. 2.2; DFT 133 III 629, cons. 2.2.

a separate (state court) proceeding.¹⁴⁵⁵ However, because court assistance in the taking of evidence is merely one procedural stage of the arbitration, the state court decision may be qualified as an interim decision.¹⁴⁵⁶ Accordingly, such decisions can be challenged only along with the final decision, except where the interim decision has been independently notified.¹⁴⁵⁷ If so, it can be challenged if, for instance, ‘it threatens to cause irreparable harm’.¹⁴⁵⁸ This would be the case, for example, if someone were ordered to reveal documents which are protected by professional confidentiality.¹⁴⁵⁹

c. Requirement of the Lower Court

Third, a closer look at the cantonal instance that assisted in the taking of evidence (i.e. the lower court) is required. According to Art. 75(2) FSCA CH, an objection in civil matters is possible only against decisions of higher cantonal courts, which decide as appeal authorities, except in cases where a federal act appoints a single cantonal instance (lit. a). As a consequence, it remains questionable whether decisions of lower cantonal courts can also be challenged before the SFT when those courts act as the sole cantonal instance.¹⁴⁶⁰ Indeed, in most of Switzerland’s 26 cantons, cantonal law appoints lower cantonal courts to act as the sole instance to assist in the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁶¹ In DFT 141 III 444, this question was answered in the affirmative.¹⁴⁶² Therefore, at least with regard to a third party’s right to object, one may conclude that this should also apply to court assistance in the taking of evidence in international arbitration which is ordered by a sole lower cantonal court.¹⁴⁶³ This is even more so the case because the intention behind Art. 75(2) FSCA CH could not have been to allow objections to be made to the SFT only within the ten cantons in which higher cantonal courts assist in the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁶⁴

¹⁴⁵⁵ BSK-KLETT/LEEMANN, Art. 77 FSCA CH n. 1c; *contra* MARKUS, 517.

¹⁴⁵⁶ DFT 5A_171/2009 of 15 Oct. 2009, cons. 1.5; BRACHER, n. 526; BSK-KLETT/LEEMANN, Art. 77 FSCA CH n. 1c.

¹⁴⁵⁷ Art. 93 (1) FSCA CH.

¹⁴⁵⁸ Art. 93 (1)(a) FSCA CH.

¹⁴⁵⁹ DFT 4A_64/2011 of 1 Sept. 2011, cons. 3.1; DFT 129 II 183, cons. 3.2.2.

¹⁴⁶⁰ DFT 141 III 444, cons. 2.2.5.

¹⁴⁶¹ DFT 141 III 444, cons. 2.2.4.1.

¹⁴⁶² *Ibid.*, cons. 2.3.

¹⁴⁶³ GÖKSU, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013, 376.

¹⁴⁶⁴ For an overview of the competent authorities see BSK-WEBER-STECHER, Art. 356 CCP CH n. 21; *see also* the database of Swiss localities and courts. In this respect, it is noteworthy that the vast majority only appoints the competent court to assist in the taking of evidence within domestic arbitration. Against this background, there is no distinction made between domestic and international arbitration (GÖKSU, n. 306).

d. Result

To sum up, there is no reason why third parties faced with an order to assist in arbitral proceedings cannot make an objection in civil matters to the SFT.¹⁴⁶⁵ If there is a legitimate reason and a threat of irreparable harm can be shown, an objection can be initiated even if the order was rendered by a (sole) lower cantonal instance. However, in light of the previous discussion, it remains highly doubtful whether this would also be the case in international arbitration.¹⁴⁶⁶ Thus far, the question has not been confirmed in either domestic arbitration or international arbitration. There are good reasons to believe that the SFT's decision will have little influence in practice, as it is unpublished (i.e. it is not considered a decision of 'fundamental importance').¹⁴⁶⁷ It is therefore hoped that the SFT will change its mind and allow objections in civil matters in this context. In this regard, a glimmer of hope may be seen in a recent decision of the District Court of Zurich, in which explicit reference was made to the possibility to make an objection in civil matters to the SFT.¹⁴⁶⁸ However, it is still doubtful whether the SFT would consider such objections admissible.

2. Parties

The situation is different as regards the parties to the arbitration and whether they can object to a state court order. They might seek to do so if the respective state court refuses to take evidence because privilege applies or if there was a violation of the agreed procedural rules during the taking of evidence (e.g. if a state court allowed cross-examination where this was excluded by the parties).

As previously discussed (*see* p. 261 *supra*), the fact that court assistance might be granted by a lower cantonal court (Art. 75 (2) FSCA CH) is not problematic. One might therefore ask whether the foregoing discussion in relation to third parties may also apply to the parties themselves. In this regard, the case law of the SFT and other conditions, such as the existence of a legitimate interest and the conditions to object to interim decisions, are of particular interest.

a. Case Law of the SFT

First, it is worth examining whether the case law of the SFT provides further guidance. In this regard, the aforementioned decision of the SFT regarding

¹⁴⁶⁵ *Contra* BSK-KLETT/LEEMANN, Art. 77 FSCA CH n. 1b.

¹⁴⁶⁶ DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013.

¹⁴⁶⁷ The fact that the decision is formulated in the form of 'that'-sentences (*Dass-Entscheid*) strengthens this assumption; Art. 58 (1) Federal Supreme Court Regulations.

¹⁴⁶⁸ Unpublished decision of the District Court of Zurich, FR160295-L/U of 27. May 2016, cited in BSK-HABEGGER, Art. 375 PILA CH n. 76a.

the Canton of Ticino states only that it is final and that an objection to the SFT is therefore excluded.¹⁴⁶⁹ Unfortunately, the SFT has not further examined the party's authorisation to appeal.¹⁴⁷⁰ With regard to the appointment and challenge of arbitrators, it has further been shown that the SFT usually allows an objection only if the state court has refused the respective request.¹⁴⁷¹ Otherwise, this would undermine the parties' original choice to settle their dispute through arbitration rather than through state court litigation.

At this point, one might ask whether the case law regarding the appointment and challenge of arbitrators could be applied to court assistance in the taking of evidence. This seems to be questionable at best. The SFT allows objections to be made only in circumstances where the parties would otherwise have been forced to settle their dispute through state court litigation. In contrast, the taking of evidence is a procedural part of arbitration; if a state court refuses to assist, the arbitration continues and the arbitral tribunal can nonetheless render an arbitral award. As this is an interim result, the case law of the SFT would suggest that the parties cannot challenge a decision of the *juge d'appui* regarding the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁷²

b. Legitimate Interest

Second, the question arises as to whether the parties even have a legitimate interest (Art. 76 (1) FSCA CH) in directly objecting to the state court's decision. According to Art. 76 (1) (b) FSCA CH, a party must show that it is particularly affected by a decision and that there is a legitimate interest to amend or quash it. In this regard, it is obvious that the parties cannot have a legitimate interest if court assistance in the taking of evidence is granted as requested.

Admittedly, a party seeking to challenge a state court decision to deny assistance in the taking of evidence may be particularly affected because, for instance, that evidence may be crucial to substantiate its claims in the arbitration. As a result, this party would be disproportionately affected by the refusal.¹⁴⁷³ However, the crux concerns whether this constitutes a legitimate interest.

There are two conceivable situations in which there is a legitimate interest to amend or quash a state court decision to deny court assistance in the taking of evidence: where the arbitral tribunal either gives its consent to the

¹⁴⁶⁹ DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 Jan. 2013.

¹⁴⁷⁰ See also THORENS-ALADJEM, 536.

¹⁴⁷¹ See p. 258 *supra*.

¹⁴⁷² See also BSK-KLETT/LEEMANN, Art. 77 FSCA CH n. 1c *in fine* as regards Swiss domestic arbitration.

¹⁴⁷³ BSK-KLETT, Art. 76 FSCA CH n. 4a.

objection or denies it without a valid reason. In the former case, one must bear in mind that the arbitral tribunal is in charge of the arbitral proceedings in general and the taking of evidence in particular. This is evident from the fact that the arbitral tribunal's prior consent must be obtained in order to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁷⁴ The arbitral tribunal has full discretion to assess the importance of a piece of evidence. As a consequence, a party that wishes to challenge a state court decision regarding the taking of evidence must obtain the arbitral tribunal's consent before doing so. Otherwise, there is no legitimate interest to object. In most cases, due to procedural economy and because the arbitral tribunal can render an arbitral award without the evidence in question, the request to object will be denied. However, if the evidence is crucial to the case at hand, the arbitral tribunal may allow an objection to be made against the state court's refusal to grant assistance in the taking of evidence. In this way, the overall intention of the SFT to limit the possibility to appeal in (domestic and international) arbitration and the principle of procedural economy may be sustained.¹⁴⁷⁵

With regard to an unjustified denial of consent to object against a state court decision, the case law of the SFT merits a closer look. According to the PILA CH, the grounds to challenge an arbitral award are very limited (e.g. a violation of equal treatment or the right to be heard).¹⁴⁷⁶ The SFT has held that the right to be heard will be violated if, for instance, the arbitral tribunal denies a request to seek court assistance without a valid reason—for example, where the evidence in question is relevant to the outcome of the case.¹⁴⁷⁷ As a result, this could be applied by analogy to the question of whether parties can challenge a state court decision denying court assistance in the taking of evidence. Consequently, the SFT should allow parties to object where the importance of the evidence justifies this course of action and the arbitral tribunal's denial of consent to object is unjustified. This is also appropriate in the interests of procedural economy. It would thus seem better to try to gather crucial evidence in the arbitral proceedings themselves, rather than by subsequently challenging the arbitral award based on a violation of the right to be heard because the arbitral tribunal refused to gather that evidence itself.¹⁴⁷⁸

¹⁴⁷⁴ Art. 184 (2) PILA CH; *see also* p. 233 *supra*.

¹⁴⁷⁵ DFT 142 III 230, cons. 1.4.2.

¹⁴⁷⁶ Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH.

¹⁴⁷⁷ DFT 4P.217/1992 of 15 Mar. 1993, cons. 7b, in: ASA Bull. 1993, 408.

¹⁴⁷⁸ *See* p. 270 et seqq. *infra*.

c. Objection Against an Interim Decision

Third, reference may be made to what has previously been discussed with regard to third parties (*see* p. 260 et seq. *supra*). Accordingly, one must demonstrate the existence of a threat of irreparable harm in order to object against an interim decision (Art. 93 (1) (a) FSCA CH). Apart from this, the possibility for a party to object against an interim decision ordering a third party to produce evidence has thus far been discussed only in state court proceedings. While under Art. 167 (3) CCP CH the right of third parties to object is expressly stated, nothing is said about the parties to the arbitration. BRACHER, RÜETSCHI and HASENBÖHLER therefore argue that in general, the parties do not have an independent right to appeal a state court order on third-party cooperation in the taking of evidence.¹⁴⁷⁹ As an exception, an objection may be possible if there is a threat of irreparable harm.¹⁴⁸⁰ This might apply, for instance, where the court refuses to examine a terminally ill witness because of alleged privilege or where a decisive piece of evidence might be lost or destroyed.¹⁴⁸¹ There is no reason why this practice could not also be applied to an objection in civil matters before the SFT in arbitration.

d. Result

By analysing the case law of the SFT regarding other proceedings in which the decision of the *juge d'appui* can be challenged, the foregoing examination has shown that there seem to be no similarities that would justify this possibility in the case of court assistance in the taking of evidence. With regard to the legitimate interest to object, the parties either need the consent of the arbitral tribunal or must show that such consent was refused without a valid reason. Finally, in exceptional cases, an objection in civil matters may be initiated by showing a threat of irreparable harm if the objection were denied.

All told, it may be concluded that the SFT will usually have plausible reasons to reject an objection in civil matters against a state court decision on the taking of evidence. However, this is not always the case. Accordingly, since the SFT seems to be rather strict in this respect, the respective party—with the consent of the arbitral tribunal—must sufficiently substantiate why it considers such an objection appropriate.

¹⁴⁷⁹ BRACHER, n. 469; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 22; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 33.

¹⁴⁸⁰ For state court proceedings *see* Art. 319 (b) (2.) CCP CH.

¹⁴⁸¹ DFT 4P.335/2006 of 27 Feb. 2007, cons. 1.2.4; FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7377; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 167 CCP CH n. 22.

C. Challenge of the Arbitral Award

The parties may also consider challenging a court order on assistance in the taking of evidence indirectly, by challenging the arbitral award. This might be based on the fact that either the arbitral tribunal refused to allow such assistance to be sought or that the procedural rules agreed by the parties were violated during this process. Such matters may be categorised as either unequal treatment or violation of the right to be heard, which is a central pillar of international arbitration.¹⁴⁸² The following thus examines how parties can challenge this assessment by challenging the arbitral award.

In general, violations of due process must be addressed immediately—if possible, during the arbitral proceedings.¹⁴⁸³ It would be against good faith to challenge a violation of procedural rules only in the proceeding to set aside an arbitral award if this had been possible at an earlier stage.¹⁴⁸⁴ In particular, as regards an alleged violation of the right to be heard, it is considered abusive to invoke this only where the party is about to lose the case.¹⁴⁸⁵ For instance, the SFT rejected a party's claim that the right to be heard had been violated based on the fact that it had been unable to cross-examine a key witness.¹⁴⁸⁶ The SFT stated that the claim had not been brought up during the arbitral proceedings and the party had not tried to seek court assistance.¹⁴⁸⁷ In the ongoing revision of the PILA CH's 12th chapter, 'immediate recourse' is recognised in a new proposed para. 4 to Art. 182. Accordingly, a party which continues the arbitral proceedings without claiming a recognised violation of the procedural rules cannot invoke that violation at a later date—for example, by trying to set aside the arbitral award.¹⁴⁸⁸

1. Conditions According to the FSCA CH

To promote the efficiency and effectiveness of arbitration in Switzerland, the Swiss legislature significantly limited the grounds for appeal.¹⁴⁸⁹ Only arbitral

¹⁴⁸² DFT 4A_214/2013 of 5 Aug. 2013, cons. 4.1; DFT 4A_538/2012 of 17 Jan. 2013, cons. 5.1; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1356.

¹⁴⁸³ Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 75; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.170.

¹⁴⁸⁴ DFT 135 III 334, cons. 2.2; DFT 119 II 386, cons. 1a; CR-BUCHER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 40; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 70.

¹⁴⁸⁵ DFT 4A_438/2018 of 17 Jan. 2019, cons. 4.3; DFT 143 III 578, cons. 3.1.2; DFT 136 III 605, cons. 3.2.2.

¹⁴⁸⁶ DFT 4A_12/2017 of 19 Sept. 2019, cons. 4.2.2 (= DFT 143 III 578).

¹⁴⁸⁷ *Ibid.*

¹⁴⁸⁸ FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018), 7197; *see also* Art. 373(6) CCP CH.

¹⁴⁸⁹ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 1; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 2a; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.01.

awards rendered by an arbitral tribunal seated in Switzerland may be challenged according to Art. 190 PILA CH.¹⁴⁹⁰ In general, the arbitral award is final upon notification and enjoys full legal force, and there is no need for a separate enforcement procedure.¹⁴⁹¹ Accordingly, court intervention by the SFT is kept to an absolute minimum and the opportunity to examine the facts of the respective case is strictly curtailed.¹⁴⁹² In addition, the parties cannot claim a direct violation of the Const. CH, the ECHR or other international treaties, but may refer only to the grounds set out in Art. 190(2) PILA.¹⁴⁹³ Consequently, instead of the content of the arbitral award, the examination focuses on how it was rendered.¹⁴⁹⁴ Thus, the parties may not resort to the SFT on the grounds of a violation of the right to be heard in a bid to have the content of the arbitral award re-examined.¹⁴⁹⁵

An objection in civil matters to the SFT must be filed within 30 days of notification of the arbitral award.¹⁴⁹⁶ In the absence of any clear statutory basis, there is no minimum threshold for the value in dispute; otherwise, the parties would be deprived of their right to challenge an arbitral award in arbitrations involving small claims.¹⁴⁹⁷

The restrictive approach to appeal is evident in the SFT's status as the sole appellate court and the limited grounds on which the arbitral award can be challenged, as foreseen in the PILA CH.¹⁴⁹⁸ In this respect, Arts. 190 (2)(d) and e) PILA CH deserve a closer look:

“(2) The award may only be challenged:

- (d) if the principle of equal treatment of the parties or the right of the parties to be heard was violated;
- (e) if the award is incompatible with public policy.”

¹⁴⁹⁰ BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1674; GÖKSU, n. 1983; regarding the types of decisions (final, partial- and interim decisions) see ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 20 et seqq.; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 234 et seqq.; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 21.

¹⁴⁹¹ Art. 190(1) PILA CH; Arts. III and V(1)(e) NYC: BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 7 et seqq.; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 5 and 10 et seqq.; GÖKSU, n. 1979.

¹⁴⁹² Art. 99 (1) FSCA CH; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 4.

¹⁴⁹³ DFT 4A_178/2014 of 11 Jun. 2014, cons. 2.4; DFT 4A_198/2012 of 14 Dec. 2012, cons. 3.1.

¹⁴⁹⁴ KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.01.

¹⁴⁹⁵ DFT 4A_520/2015 of 16 Dec. 2015, cons. 3.3.1; DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.2.

¹⁴⁹⁶ Art. 100 (1) FSCA CH; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.35 et seqq.

¹⁴⁹⁷ Art. 174 and 190 PILA CH *e contrario*; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 10; CR-BUCHER, Art. 191 PILA CH n. 17; left open by the SFT in DFT 142 III 521, cons. 2.3.5; DFT 4A_576/2012 of 28 Feb. 2013, cons. 2; DFT 4A_110/2012 of 9 Oct. 2012, cons. 1.

¹⁴⁹⁸ Art. 191 PILA CH.

Lit. d represents the counterpart to what has already been discussed concerning the discretion of the parties and the arbitral tribunal to tailor the arbitral proceedings.¹⁴⁹⁹ As a consequence, regardless of what procedure is chosen, the arbitral tribunal must ensure equal treatment and the right to be heard; it follows that these two procedural guarantees may be subject to examination in an appeal. Thus, a party seeking to challenge an arbitral award must show that a violation of the right to be heard or equal treatment influenced the award.¹⁵⁰⁰

According to recently published data, international arbitral awards rendered in Switzerland were set aside in only approximately 7-10% of cases in 2016 and 2017.¹⁵⁰¹ Concerning the grounds listed in Arts. 190 (2) (d and e) PILA CH, only 5.5% (twelve out of 208 arbitral awards) of all challenges claiming a violation of equal treatment or the right to be heard were upheld.¹⁵⁰² As regards an alleged violation of the *ordre public*, only two out of 194 arbitral awards were set aside—representing a mere 1% chance of success.¹⁵⁰³

2. Equal Treatment of the Parties

The right to equal treatment requires that parties be treated equally in comparable situations—that is, in respect of all procedural matters, such as the examination of witnesses and the parties' submissions.¹⁵⁰⁴ Accordingly, the arbitral proceedings must be tailored in such a way that each party has the same opportunity to participate and present its case.¹⁵⁰⁵ Therefore, the arbitral tribunal cannot deny to one party what has been granted to the other and vice versa.¹⁵⁰⁶

The right to equal treatment is largely considered to be congruent with the right to be heard.¹⁵⁰⁷ However, it can still be invoked separately—for

¹⁴⁹⁹ See p. 235 *supra*; Art. 182(3) PILA CH; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 81; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.167.

¹⁵⁰⁰ DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1.

¹⁵⁰¹ DASSER/WÓJTOWICZ, 280; these numbers apply to decisions on the merits of non-sports-related arbitration (2017: setting aside of 23 out of 321 cases (7.37%), 2016: setting aside of 10 out of 103 cases (9.71%).

¹⁵⁰² *Ibid.*, 281.

¹⁵⁰³ *Ibid.*

¹⁵⁰⁴ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 35; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 83.

¹⁵⁰⁵ DFT 4A_424/2011 of 2 Nov. 2011, cons. 2.2.

¹⁵⁰⁶ DFT 4A_236/2017 of 24 Nov. 2017, cons. 4.1; DUTOIT, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 6; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 65; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 84.

¹⁵⁰⁷ DFT 4A_672/2012 of 23 Apr. 2013, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4P.208/2004 of 14 Dec. 2004, cons. 5.1; DFT 133 III 139, cons. 6.1; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 86.

instance, alongside claims regarding the assessment of evidence by the arbitral tribunal, which would fall under the right to be heard.¹⁵⁰⁸ This follows from the fact that the duty to treat the parties equally begins with the constitution of the arbitral tribunal and ends with the conclusion of the arbitral proceedings. However, it excludes the subsequent consultation process, during which the arbitral tribunal renders its verdict.¹⁵⁰⁹ Accordingly, the assessment of evidence or the application of law cannot be challenged under the title of equal treatment, even where this is obviously untenable.¹⁵¹⁰

As a consequence, the same action of an arbitral tribunal can lead to a violation of both the right to be heard and equal treatment. This might apply where the arbitral tribunal grants one party consent to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence while denying the same to the adverse party without a valid reason. The following discussion will show that, with regard to the assessment of evidence, it is difficult to prove a violation of the right to be heard. However, if a party can show that the arbitral tribunal treated the parties unequally in comparable situations, the SFT might set aside the arbitral award based on Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH.¹⁵¹¹

Nonetheless, it is important to note that the right of equal treatment is not absolute—a certain degree of inequality must be accepted.¹⁵¹² Consequently, the parties have no right to expect the extension of identical time-frames to both parties, for example.¹⁵¹³ Likewise, the SFT has stated that the parties cannot expect to have exactly the same amount of time to examine witnesses at the hearing.¹⁵¹⁴ Finally, the SFT has made it clear that non-consideration of a rule or a crucial allegation of fact does not constitute unequal treatment.¹⁵¹⁵ Rather, by drafting Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH narrowly, the Swiss legislature avoided the scope for objections against arbitrary conduct.¹⁵¹⁶

1508 DFT 4A_672/2012 of 23 Apr. 2013, cons. 4.1.2; DFT 4A_360/2011 of 31 Jan. 2012, cons. 4.1.

1509 *Ibid.*

1510 *Ibid.*

1511 DFT 4A_672/2012 of 23. Apr. 2013, cons. 4.2.1.

1512 ZK-OETIKER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 35; CR-BUCHER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 51; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.173.

1513 DFT 4A_450/2017 of 12 Mar. 2018, cons. 3.2.1; DFT 4A_405/2016 of 2 Mar. 2017, cons. 3.3; DFT 4A_539/2008 of 19 Feb. 2008, cons. 4; BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER, Art. 182 PILA CH n 66; DUTOIT, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 6; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 88 et seqq.

1514 In DFT 4A_407/2012 of 20 Feb. 2013, cons. 3.4., the SFT stated that equal treatment is not violated even if one party had 14 hours to examine their witnesses while the adverse party had 23 hours.

1515 DFT 4A_236/2017 of 24 Nov. 2017, cons. 4.2.2; DFT 4A_360/2011 of 31 Jan. 2012, cons. 4.1.

1516 *Ibid.*

3. Right to be heard

Looking at the second part of Art. 190 (2) (d) PILA CH, a few comparative remarks are necessary in order to assess the Swiss approach to setting aside arbitral awards based on a violation of the right to be heard. With regard to evidence, the tension between the parties' right to present evidence on the one hand and the free assessment of evidence by the arbitral tribunal on the other must be considered when examining whether the right to be heard has been violated.

a. Comparative Aspects

The comparative analysis in the previous chapter has shown that although the grounds to challenge an arbitral award may vary under the examined *leges arbitri*, the basic approach always aims to limit this possibility. For instance, under German and English law, the arbitral award may be challenged if the arbitral tribunal failed to conduct the proceedings in accordance with the procedure agreed by the parties and this had an influence on the arbitral award.¹⁵¹⁷ In this regard, S. 68(1) EAA 1996 is illustrative: it refers to the possibility to challenge an arbitral award, but only if there is a serious irregularity which affected the arbitral tribunal, the proceedings or the award. While it may be easy to prove an irregularity, it will be much more difficult to show that this was 'serious' and also to demonstrate its influence.¹⁵¹⁸ Similarly, the UNCITRAL ML states that an arbitral award may be set aside if the arbitral proceedings were not in accordance with the agreement of the parties or if the arbitral award conflicts with public policy (i.e. the *ordre public*).¹⁵¹⁹ Finally, under French and US law, the parties can challenge the arbitral award on the grounds that the arbitral tribunal violated the right to be heard or exceeded its powers.¹⁵²⁰ The rationale behind this common approach is that the arbitral tribunal acts not as a mere first instance, but rather as the sole instance; the grounds for challenging the arbitral award are thus restricted.¹⁵²¹

As a consequence, although these *leges arbitri* may vary in their scope and in the grounds on which an arbitral award may be set aside, the aim in all cases is to examine procedural aspects such as the invalidity of the arbitration

¹⁵¹⁷ §1059 (2) (1.) (d) CCP DE; S. 68 (1) (c) EAA 1996. Regarding recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards see Art. V (1)(d) NYC.

¹⁵¹⁸ MERKIN/FLANNERY, 305.

¹⁵¹⁹ Arts. 34 (2) (a) (iv) and (2) (b) (i) UNCITRAL ML.

¹⁵²⁰ Arts. 1520 (3) and (4) CCP FR; §10 (a) (4) FAA USA.

¹⁵²¹ UNCITRAL, Case Law (2012), Art. 34 UNCITRAL ML, n. 3 with reference to OLG Karlsruhe, 14 Sept. 2007, 10 Sch 01/07, cons. 2a.

agreement or the composition of the arbitral tribunal, rather than reviewing the merits of the dispute.¹⁵²² As regards court assistance in the taking of evidence, the respective appellate court should not examine whether and how the arbitral tribunal assessed the evidence or applied the correct law.¹⁵²³

b. Free Assessment of Evidence

As previously discussed (*see p. 266 *supra**), the possibility to set aside an arbitral award is similarly restrictive in Switzerland—in some ways, even more restrictive. For example, while German and English law and the UNCITRAL ML all allow for the arbitral award to be challenged on the grounds that the arbitral tribunal failed to conduct the arbitral proceedings according to the procedure agreed by the parties, there is no comparable provision under Swiss law.¹⁵²⁴ Rather, because the only procedural guarantees that bind the arbitral tribunal are equal treatment and the right to be heard, it follows that non-compliance with other procedural rules agreed by the parties (e.g. institutional arbitration rules) cannot be subject to challenge according to Art. 190(2)(d) PILA CH.¹⁵²⁵ Still, one might ask whether the assessment of evidence of the arbitral tribunal may be challenged under a violation of the right to be heard.

This right is of a formal nature, so in case of a violation, the arbitral award must be set aside irrespective of why the violation arose.¹⁵²⁶ This is why the SFT will examine this issue first. In addition, the duty to substantiate the influence that such a violation had on the arbitral award is reduced to a certain degree. However, the party must show that the arbitral tribunal did not consider certain elements of the case at hand, certain pieces of evidence or certain legal opinions of the parties, and that this could have influenced

¹⁵²² Mistelis et al.-BREKOULAKIS et al., Art. 34 UNCITRAL ML, 1; MüKo-MÜNCH, § 1059 CCP DE n. 29; HARRIS et al., S. 68 EAA 1996 n. 68B.

¹⁵²³ Mistelis et al.-BREKOULAKIS et al., Art. 34 UNCITRAL ML, 1; SHEPPARD, S. 68 n. 2 EAA 1996; HARRIS et al., S. 68 EAA 1996 n. 68I with reference to *World Trade Corporation v. C. Czarnikow Sugar Ltd* [2004] EWHC 2332 (Comm.) and *Schwebel v. Schwebel* [2010] EWHC 3280 (TCC).

¹⁵²⁴ § 1059(2)(i)(d) CCP DE; S. 68(i)(c) EAA 1996; Art. 34(2)(a)(iv) and (2)(b)(i) UNCITRAL ML.

¹⁵²⁵ DFT 117 II 346, cons. 1a; DFT 4P.23/2006 of 27 Mar. 2006, cons. 4.2; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 81; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 61; GÖKSU, n. 2069; but see Art. V(1)(d) NYC.

¹⁵²⁶ DFT 142 III 284, cons. 4.1; DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.4; DFT 4A_532/2016 of 30 May 2017, cons. 4.1 with further references; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 87; CR-BUCHER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 83; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.167; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 70; but see also the most recent case law, suggesting that if a violation of the right to be heard had no influence on the arbitral award, it does not necessarily has to be set aside (DFT 4A_424/2018 of 29 Jan. 2019, cons. 5.2.2; DFT 143 IV 380, cons. 1.4.1).

the arbitral award.¹⁵²⁷ In addition, with regard to court assistance in the taking of evidence, the SFT has stated that the right to be heard is violated if the arbitral tribunal refuses to seek court assistance without a valid reason where the evidence in question is crucial to the case.¹⁵²⁸ Otherwise, this would lead to a denial of justice.¹⁵²⁹ As a result, the arbitral tribunal enjoys wide discretion when it comes to the taking of evidence and the SFT will examine whether the right to be heard has been violated only under strict conditions.

c. Anticipated Assessment of Evidence

In this regard, the case law of the SFT merits closer scrutiny. It has repeatedly held that the right to be heard corresponds in large part to the constitutional right enshrined in Art. 29 (2) Const. CH. Regarding its content, reference can be made to what has previously been discussed in this regard.¹⁵³⁰ The right to be heard is substantiated through the right to evidence, which entitles each party to have the court accept suitable evidence that is presented to it.¹⁵³¹

In contrast to the right to evidence, the SFT has several times referred to the right of the arbitral tribunal to freely assess the evidence without violating the right to be heard or the right to evidence, respectively.¹⁵³² In this regard, mention is made of the so-called ‘anticipated assessment of evidence’, which forms part of the free assessment of evidence.¹⁵³³

According to this concept, which has been developed in Swiss case law, the arbitral tribunal is at liberty to assess the importance of evidence even before it has been taken; this might apply, for example, where a selection must be made from multiple similar pieces of evidence or where sufficient evidence has already been gathered.¹⁵³⁴ It therefore facilitates the efficient and expedient conduct of the proceedings.¹⁵³⁵ This also applies where the

¹⁵²⁷ DFT 4A_592/2017 of 5 Dec. 2017, cons. 4.1.2 with further references.

¹⁵²⁸ DFT 4P.217/1992 of 15 Mar. 1993, cons. 7b, in: ASA Bull. 1993, 408; *see also* DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 133 III 235, cons. 5.2.

¹⁵²⁹ Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 119.

¹⁵³⁰ *See* p. 106 et seqq. *supra*; DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 86.

¹⁵³¹ Art. 152 CCP CH; FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7312; DFT 4A_427/2017 of 22 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.1.1; DFT 133 III 295, cons. 7.1; DFT 114 II 289, cons. 2a.

¹⁵³² DFT 143 III 297, cons. 9.3.2.

¹⁵³³ Art. 157 CCP CH; FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7312; Arroyo-KNOLL, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 45; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 137; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 182 PILA CH n. 47 et seqq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1357; for a critical assessment of this concept, *see* HASEN-BÖHLER, 5.77 et seqq.; Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 157 CCP CH n. 38 et seqq.

¹⁵³⁴ Sutter-Somm et al.-HASENBÖHLER, Art. 157 CCP CH n. 32; BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 152 CCP CH n. 57; HASENBÖHLER, n. 5.71 et seqq.

¹⁵³⁵ BK-RÜETSCHI, Art. 152 CCP CH n. 58.

arbitral tribunal refuses to examine evidence any further because the facts have already been established or because the evidence to be presented will not suffice to persuade it to change its findings (e.g. if the arbitral tribunal refuses to examine a witness since there is already sufficient documentary evidence).¹⁵³⁶ Thus, the arbitral tribunal can establish the facts based on the evidence which it considers suitable and substantial.¹⁵³⁷ Moreover, the SFT has stated that as long as the right to be heard is not simply ignored and a denial of justice therefore ensues, even an incorrect assessment of evidence cannot be challenged.¹⁵³⁸ This underlines the common approach to avoid undue court intervention in the sphere of arbitration and ensure merely that important procedural guarantees have been respected. Therefore, the SFT has stated that the anticipated assessment of evidence can be examined only from the limited angle of a violation of the *ordre public* (i.e. public policy).¹⁵³⁹

As an intermediate result, it may be concluded that under the right to be heard, the SFT will allow a challenge against the arbitral award only if the arbitral tribunal refused to seek court assistance without a valid reason where the evidence in question was crucial to the case. Apart from that, there is little scope to challenge an arbitral award based on a violation of the right to be heard, because of the arbitral tribunal's broad discretion in terms of the anticipated assessment of evidence. Since this may be examined only on the grounds of a violation of the *ordre public*, the following will examine the extent to which this is in fact possible.

4. Violation of Public Policy

The statistical data shows that challenges to an arbitral award based on a violation of public policy fail in 99% of cases.¹⁵⁴⁰ Although such challenges seem to be popular, the SFT has set aside just two awards based on a violation of

¹⁵³⁶ FCDisp CCP CH (2006), 7312; DFT 4A_427/2017 of 22 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.1.1; DFT 4A_277/2017 of 28 Aug. 2017, cons. 3.1; DFT 4A_342/2015 of 26 Apr. 2016, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4A_246/2014 of 15 Jul. 2015, cons. 6.1; DFT 4A_386/2010 of 3 Jan. 2011, cons. 7.2; DFT 134 I 140, cons. 5.3; DFT 131 II 153, cons. 3; DFT 130 II 425, cons. 2.1 with further references; HABERBECK, 1422 et seq.

¹⁵³⁷ DFT 4A_427/2017 of 22 Jan. 2018, cons. 5.1.1; DFT 4A_178/2014 of 11 Jun. 2014, cons. 5.1; DFT 119 II 386, cons. 1b; DFT 116 II 639, cons. 4c; HASENBÖHLER, n. 5.75.

¹⁵³⁸ DFT 127 III 576, cons. 2e and 2f; DFT 121 III 331, cons. 3a.

¹⁵³⁹ Art. 190(2)(e) PILA CH; DFT 142 III 360, cons. 4.1.1; DFT 4A_544/2014 of 24 Feb. 2015, cons. 3.2.1; DFT 4A_178/2014 of 11 Jun. 2014, cons. 5.1; DFT 4P.23/2006 of 27 Mar. 2006, cons. 4.2; HABERBECK, 1423; KAUFMANN-KOHLER/RIGOZZI, n. 8.175; contra GÖKSU, n. 2087.

¹⁵⁴⁰ DASSER/WÓJTOWICZ, 280.

public policy so far.¹⁵⁴¹ The bar is thus set significantly high. While lit. a-d relate to procedural questions, Art. 190 (2) (e) PILA CH provides the only means to review the merits of the case.¹⁵⁴² According to the SFT, the grounds listed in lit. a-d take precedence over any violation of public policy pursuant to lit. e, which therefore serves as a last resort.¹⁵⁴³ Public policy can be divided into substantive and procedural public policy.¹⁵⁴⁴

With regard to the former, the SFT has adopted the following definition: ‘An award is incompatible with public policy if it disregards the essential and broadly acknowledged values which, according to prevailing views in Switzerland, should constitute the basis of any legal order.’¹⁵⁴⁵ Such values include the sanctity of contracts, compliance with the rules of good faith, and the prohibition of abuse of rights and discriminatory measures.¹⁵⁴⁶ The SFT has deliberately kept open the interpretation of substantive public policy, since it considers it a delicate—even dangerous—task to create an exhaustive list.¹⁵⁴⁷ Hitherto, the SFT has set aside a single arbitral award based on a violation of substantive public policy.¹⁵⁴⁸ The case concerned the threat of a lifelong ban from football if the respective player did not pay damages arising from a breach of contract.¹⁵⁴⁹ As this would have excessively restricted the player’s personal freedom, the SFT considered this *de facto* lifelong ban to be a violation of substantive public policy.¹⁵⁵⁰ In no other case has the high hurdle of a violation of substantive public policy been met. This has especially been the case regarding evidence-based matters, such as the burden and standard of proof¹⁵⁵¹ or the (obviously erroneous) establishment of facts.¹⁵⁵²

1541 *Ibid.*

1542 Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 160; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 72.

1543 DFT 4A_682/2011 of 31 May 2012, cons. 4.3 with further references; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 93; BKS-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 72.

1544 DFT 141 III 229, cons. 3.2.1; DFT 138 III 322, cons. 4.1.

1545 DFT 144 III 120, cons. 5.1; DFT 4A_312/2017 of 27 Nov. 2017, cons. 3.1; DFT 4A_304/2013 of 3 Mar. 2014, cons. 5.1.1; DFT 132 III 389, cons. 2.2.3.

1546 DFT 144 III 120, cons. 5.1; DFT 4A_532/2016 of 30 May 2017, cons. 3.1 et seqq.; DFT 4A_304/2013 of 3 Mar. 2014, cons. 5.1.1; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 102 et seqq.

1547 See e.g. DFT 4A_32/2016 of 20 Dec. 2016, cons. 4.1; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 103; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 173 et seqq.

1548 *Ibid.*, n. 219 et seqq.; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH 109 et seq.

1549 DFT 138 III 322; see also DFT 4A_320/2009 of 2 Jun. 2010, cons. 4.4; DFT 4A_508/2017 of 29 Jan. 2018, cons. 4.3.

1550 *Ibid.*, cons. 4.3.5.

1551 DFT 4A_32/2016 pf 20 Dec. 2016, cons. 4.1; DFT 4A_312/2017 of 27 Nov. 2017, cons. 3.1.

1552 DFT 127 III 576, cons. 2b; DFT 121 III 331, cons. 3a.

It has also proved very difficult to prove a violation of procedural public policy. According to the SFT's case law, an arbitral award violates procedural public policy if 'it infringes fundamental and generally recognized principles of procedure, the disregard of which is intolerably contrary to the sense of justice so that the award seems to be absolutely incompatible with the legal system and values applying in a state of law'.¹⁵⁵³ This includes, for instance, the principles of *res judicata* and *ne bis in indemnem*,¹⁵⁵⁴ as well as the right to a fair proceeding¹⁵⁵⁵ and the fundamental procedural guarantees of the ECHR, but only as a means of ascertainment.¹⁵⁵⁶ The only case thus far in which the SFT has found a violation of procedural public policy was another sports-related arbitration, in which the arbitral tribunal disregarded the final and binding force (*res judicata*) of a previous decision.¹⁵⁵⁷ As regards the assessment of evidence, the SFT has held that since procedural public policy has a mere 'defense function', it cannot serve to establish a 'procedural arbitration code' with which the arbitral proceedings must comply.¹⁵⁵⁸ As a consequence, even the erroneous or arbitrary application of the agreed procedural rules does not serve as grounds to invoke a violation of procedural public policy.¹⁵⁵⁹

On the whole, it is clear that although the parties can try to challenge an arbitral award based on a violation of (substantive or procedural) public policy, the SFT will almost certainly deny it. The parties will succeed only by demonstrating that either 'essential and broadly acknowledged values' or 'fundamental and generally recognized principles of procedure' have been violated.

5. Result

The previous discussion endeavoured to outline how parties can address matters regarding court assistance in the taking of evidence by trying to challenge the arbitral award. It was shown that in the case of alleged violations of both Arts. 190 (2) (d and e) PILA CH, such claims must be presented as early as possible during the arbitral proceedings. Even if a violation of equal treatment or

¹⁵⁵³ DFT 4A_236/2017 of 24 Nov. 2017, cons. 5.1; DFT 141 III 229, cons. 3.2.1; DFT 140 III 278, cons. 3.1; DFT 136 III 345, cons. 2.1; DFT 128 III 191, cons. 4a.

¹⁵⁵⁴ DFT 4A_386/2010 of 3 Jan. 2011, cons. 9.3.1.

¹⁵⁵⁵ DFT 4P.143/2001 of 18 Sept. 2001, cons. 3a.aa; ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n.

¹⁵⁵⁶ ZK-OETIKER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 116 et seqq.; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 173 et seqq.; BSK-PFISTERER, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 81 et seqq.; BERGER/KELLERHALS, n. 1780 et seqq.; GÖKSU, n. 2140 et seqq.

¹⁵⁵⁷ DFT 136 III 345; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 167 and 209 et seqq.

¹⁵⁵⁸ DFT 126 III 249, cons. 3b; Arroyo-ARROYO, Art. 190 PILA CH n. 174.

¹⁵⁵⁹ DFT 4A_438/2018 of 17 Jan. 2019, cons. 5.2.2; DFT 4A_308/2018 of 23. Nov. 2018, cons. 5.3.1; DFT 4A_392/2015 of 10 Dec. 2015, cons. 4.2; DFT 129 III 445, cons. 4.2.1.

the right to be heard is invoked, the SFT requires that the violation be sufficiently severe before it will consider setting aside an award. Unlike under other *leges arbitri*, under which an arbitral award may be challenged on the grounds that the arbitral tribunal failed to conduct the proceedings in compliance with the procedure agreed by the parties, there is no comparable provision under Swiss law. However, if a party can show that a failure of the arbitral tribunal to seek court assistance in the taking of evidence resulted in a denial of justice, the arbitral award may be set aside.

In most cases, the question of how and whether to gather evidence touches on the arbitral tribunal's discretion to assess the evidence. In this regard, it has been shown that the right to be heard is not violated if the evidence is taken in accordance with the concept of the anticipated assessment of evidence. This central pillar of international arbitration will be subject to examination only if there is a violation of substantive or procedural public policy. In this regard, the SFT's case law has demonstrated a broad reluctance to find such a violation, at least thus far. It may therefore be concluded that, in the absence of a denial of justice, indirectly attacking court assistance in the taking of evidence through challenging the arbitral award will in most cases fail.

D. Recognition and Enforcement

Finally, parties might seek to challenge the arbitral award pursuant to Art. V(1)(d) NYC, which reads as follows:

“Recognition and enforcement of the award may be refused at the request of the party against whom it is invoked, only if that party furnishes to the competent authority where the recognition and enforcement is sought, proof that:

(d) ... the arbitral procedure was not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, or, failing such agreement, was not in accordance with the law of the country where the arbitration took place.”

As is evident from the comparative analysis conducted in this book, this provision is mirrored in many *leges arbitri*.¹⁵⁶⁰ It is widely accepted that Art. V NYC always requires a certain causality—that is, that the violation of this article could have influenced the arbitral award.¹⁵⁶¹ Otherwise, recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award would be denied too easily and a new arbitration would most likely lead to the same result.¹⁵⁶²

¹⁵⁶⁰ See p. 146 et seqq., p. 163 et seq., p. 180 et seq. and p. 212 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁶¹ Kronke et al.-NACIMIENTO, Art. V(1)(d) NYC, 298 et seq.

¹⁵⁶² *Ibid.*

As an overall approach, the bar to deny recognition and enforcement under the NYC is set high and state courts enjoy wide discretion in this regard.¹⁵⁶³ At this point too, it must again be mentioned that in general, violations of due process must be addressed immediately (i.e. during the arbitral proceedings).¹⁵⁶⁴ They cannot be invoked afterwards if this would have been possible at an earlier stage.¹⁵⁶⁵

Although Art. V(1)(d) NYC is designed to protect party autonomy, the state courts generally take a very pro-arbitration stance by applying this article only rarely and thus upholding the arbitral tribunal's discretion to tailor the arbitral proceedings.¹⁵⁶⁶ As a consequence, recognition and enforcement will not usually be denied where the arbitral tribunal was at liberty to govern evidentiary matters such as whether to hold an oral hearing or whether to allow a certain witness to testify.¹⁵⁶⁷

The same applies regarding court assistance in the taking of evidence. It therefore follows that as long as the arbitral tribunal did not act directly against an explicit agreement between the parties—for instance, to allow only document production and therefore exclude witness testimony—the arbitral award will most likely be upheld under the NYC. The situation is different if the parties excluded court assistance in the taking of evidence, but the arbitral tribunal nonetheless allowed this or sought such assistance itself. Although unheard-of in practice, this should constitute a reason to deny recognition and enforcement pursuant to the NYC.

E. Summary

The foregoing examination aimed to provide an overview of possible appellate remedies, either directly against the decision of the *juge d'appui* or indirectly against the arbitral award. In the former case, the topic was considered from the perspective of third parties as well as the parties to the arbitration. With regard to the former, it was demonstrated that despite the recent SFT decision, they can still meet the requirements to make an objection in civil matters to the SFT.

¹⁵⁶³ Balthasar-SOLOMON, n. 173; PAULSSON M., 158; Mistelis et al.-MISTELIS/DI PIETRO, Art. V NYC 24.

¹⁵⁶⁴ See p. 266 *supra*.

¹⁵⁶⁵ See e.g. DFT 4A_124/2010 of 4 Oct. 2010, cons. 6.3.3.1; OLG München, 15 Mar. 2006, 34 Sch06/05; UNCITRAL NYC Guide, Art. V(1)(d) n. 51 et seqq.

¹⁵⁶⁶ PAULSSON M., 191 et seq.; Kronke et al.-NACIMIENTO, Art. V(1)(d) NYC, 282 et seq.

¹⁵⁶⁷ See e.g. OLG Köln, 6 Jul. 2012, 19 Sch 8/11, n. 41; *Stati v. Republic of Kazakhstan*, 302 F. Supp. 3d 187, 207 (D.C.C. 2018).

This stands in stark contrast to the position of the parties to the arbitration. Unfortunately, decisions in other cases in which the *juge d'appui* comes into play cannot be applied by analogy to court assistance in the taking of evidence in arbitration. In addition, with regard to the existence of a legitimate interest, the previous discussion demonstrated that this can be demonstrated only if the arbitral tribunal gives its consent to the objection or denies its consent without a valid reason. Special attention should be paid to this condition if there is crucial evidence to be gathered with the assistance of state courts. Often, however, the arbitral tribunal will find a way to avoid seeking court assistance—for example, by drawing an adverse inference.¹⁵⁶⁸ Finally, since the decision of the *juge d'appui* is an interim decision, it can be challenged only if the party can prove the existence of a threat of irreparable harm, which is rarely the case.

It was further examined whether matters relating to court assistance in the taking of evidence can be addressed by trying to set aside the arbitral award according to Arts. 190 (2) (d and e) PILA CH. Besides the fact that alleged violations of procedural rules and/or due process, as well as public policy, must be invoked immediately during the arbitral proceedings, it is also very difficult to set aside an arbitral award based on the PILA CH. Unlike other *leges arbitri*, under which parties can seek to have an arbitral award set aside if the procedural rules on which they agreed were not complied with, Swiss law does not include a comparable provision. Thus, the SFT's case law shows that in the absence of a denial of justice, arbitral tribunals enjoy wide discretion in conducting the arbitral proceedings, especially with regard to the assessment of evidence, and an arbitral award will not be set aside merely because this assessment was incorrect. This is especially true with regard to an alleged violation of public policy, which is very hard to prove and has been upheld only twice thus far.

The outcome as regards the NYC has been similar. Although recognition and enforcement can be denied based on the fact that the arbitral proceedings were not in accordance with the agreement of the parties, state courts will tend to uphold the arbitral award as far as possible, except where there has been a clear violation of the arbitration agreement.

¹⁵⁶⁸ See p. 56 et seqq. *supra*.

§ 8 Conclusion

From the foregoing analysis of the Swiss status quo, it is clear that the *lex arbitri* lays the foundations for effective and efficient domestic and international arbitration in Switzerland. In particular, the PILA CH—with its few and concise articles—provides a framework conducive to arbitration; as a result of the proposed revisions to this statute, the popularity of Switzerland as a forum for arbitration is expected to increase even further. This is evident from the following five factors.

First, as regards court assistance in the taking of evidence, under the new Art. 185a (2) PILA CH, assistance will also be granted directly to foreign arbitral tribunals. Although this is theoretically possible under Art. 3 PILA CH (emergency jurisdiction), it does not seem to have occurred with regard to court assistance in the taking of evidence. While it is too early to assess the importance and consequences of this amendment, it aligns Swiss law with the German, French and English *leges arbitri*, as previously discussed.¹⁵⁶⁹ While in all three of these jurisdictions court assistance can be granted directly to foreign arbitral tribunals, the French approach is by far the most liberal, imposing almost no requirements for the provision of court assistance other than the ‘internationality’ of the respective dispute.¹⁵⁷⁰ The stance taken under Swiss law does not go so far; but—quite similar to that under German and English law—it specifically provides for foreign arbitral tribunals to obtain direct assistance in the taking of evidence. It remains to be seen whether this will result in an increase in the number of evidence requests submitted to Swiss courts and thus whether a centralised *juge d'appui*, as suggested during the revision of the PILA CH, may become necessary. Finally, the debate on the applicability of § 1782 under US law continues—although it seems that by applying the *Intel* factors, a possible misuse of § 1782 can be significantly minimised.¹⁵⁷¹

Second, the prior consent of the arbitral tribunal to seek the assistance of state courts comes as no surprise and the PILA CH’s revision has brought no changes in this regard. Thus, as under German and French law, the arbitral tribunal has full control and decides whether the assistance of state courts is in fact necessary. It follows that the arbitral tribunal can either seek assistance itself, be persuaded by one or both of the parties to do so or refuse to follow this path. In contrast, under the EAA 1996, if both parties agree to

¹⁵⁶⁹ See p. 135, p. 154 and p. 169 *supra*.

¹⁵⁷⁰ See p. 154 *supra*.

¹⁵⁷¹ See p. 185 et seqq. *supra*.

seek court assistance in the taking of evidence, the consent of the arbitral tribunal is irrelevant. The situation under US law is even more complicated: in addition to the arbitral tribunal, ‘any interested person’ can seek court assistance. Understandably, this has caused several authors to suggest that the third *Intel* factor—that is, the receptivity of the respective arbitral tribunal—should always be taken into consideration.¹⁵⁷²

Furthermore, the possibility to exclude Art. 184 (2) PILA CH has been discussed. In this regard, a distinction must be made between arbitration that has been chosen voluntarily and that which has been imposed on a party, such as sports-related arbitration. In the latter case, special attention must be paid to the degree to which the respective arbitral tribunal can guarantee a similar level of legal protection to state courts.

Third, under the CCP CH, a broad range of evidence may be sought from the Swiss courts. Since Art. 11a PILA CH allows foreign types of evidence to be taken into consideration, a third para. will be added to Art. 184 PILA CH, expressly stating that the arbitral tribunal can consider ‘different’ (i.e. foreign) procedural types of evidence. Compared to the other examined *leges arbitri*, under which evidence must generally be taken in accordance with the respective civil procedural rules, the Swiss approach is very liberal. The US approach alone is similar, taking into consideration the ‘practice and procedure, which may be in whole or part the practice and procedure of the foreign country or the international tribunal’.¹⁵⁷³ Although it is hard to predict how far the Swiss courts will go in this regard, one may conclude with certainty that, for instance, requests for US-style pre-trial discovery will be denied.

With regard to the target of evidence, a distinction between the parties to arbitration and third parties must be drawn here too. While a party’s failure to produce evidence without a valid reason will be considered when assessing the evidence, this does not apply to third parties. Although third parties can be forced to give evidence, possible rights to refuse to do so based on the CCP CH must be respected. In comparison with the other examined *leges arbitri*, these rights seem to be rather comprehensive under Swiss law.

Fourth, as became apparent in the sixth chapter of this book, state courts are generally not forced to assist arbitral tribunals under either constitutional or international public law. Nonetheless, the Swiss courts will not only exercise their own discretion, but also consider any agreement between the parties in this regard (e.g. to allow document production only). With regard to the principle of subsidiarity and the examination of the arbitration

¹⁵⁷² See p. 203 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁷³ See § 1782(a) (3rd. para.).

agreement, it has been shown that the Swiss approach is in line with German, France, English and US law. Therefore, there is no strict exhaustion principle, allowing state courts to assist only if the respective arbitral tribunal has absolutely no possibility to take the respective evidence itself. The same applies to the examination of the arbitration agreement, which should take place in a separate proceeding and not under Art. 184 PILA CH.

Finally, in the last part of this chapter, the possibility to appeal directly against the decision of the *juge d'appui* was analysed from the perspective of both the parties to the arbitration and third parties. Third parties should have the right to object to a decision of the *juge d'appui* if they can show a threat of irreparable harm. By contrast, the parties to the arbitration can do so only if the arbitral tribunal gives its consent to object (as under English law), or if it denies such consent without a valid reason.

Furthermore, as regards the challenge of the arbitral award based on a violation of procedural rules during court assistance in the taking of evidence, the parties could claim a violation of either the right to be heard or public policy. In the former case, a party would have to show that the arbitral tribunal refused to seek court assistance without a valid reason even though the evidence was crucial to the dispute. By contrast, in the latter case, violations of public policy—although frequently claimed—have so far been admitted by the SFT in just two cases. Finally, the NYC imposes strict standards to deny recognition and enforcement of an arbitral award. Accordingly, unless the arbitral tribunal acted against an explicit agreement between the parties, the arbitral award will most likely be upheld. To sum up, as confirmed under the other *leges arbitri*, it is very difficult to have an arbitral award set aside based on what happened (or did not happen) during court assistance in the taking of evidence.

These five factors demonstrate that the Swiss approach to court assistance in the taking of evidence is becoming increasingly arbitration friendly. First and foremost, this is evident in the amendments to the PILA CH to assist foreign arbitral tribunals directly and to consider foreign types of evidence. As compared to the other *leges arbitri* analysed in this book, the openness towards foreign types of evidence in particular is remarkable; it remains to be seen whether the assistance of Swiss courts will be sought more frequently as a result.

Chapter 9: Conclusion

§ 1 Introduction

As stated in the introductory remarks, this book aims to provide a comprehensive analysis of court assistance in the taking of evidence, focusing on whether, when and how this can take place.¹⁵⁷⁴ It began with a discussion of the taking of evidence in international arbitration in general, before taking a closer look at the powers of the arbitral tribunal in this regard. Because these powers are limited in various ways, the focus then shifted to the main topic, examining it first from the perspective of constitutional and international public law. In a second step, the different approaches taken in the *leges arbitri* of various countries were scrutinised, in order to assist in assessing the current situation in Switzerland. The most important findings and possible future developments are summarised below.

§ 2 Results

A. Complex Legal Framework

Although the legal cultures of common and civil law increasingly tend to overlap, a few crucial distinctions may still be observed. While civil procedure in common law systems is far more party led and thus accusatorial in nature, its counterpart in civil law systems is largely inquisitorial (i.e. judge-led).¹⁵⁷⁵ In terms of the taking of evidence, the issue becomes more complex in international arbitration, where parties from different legal cultures meet and try to strike a balance through the respective *leges arbitri*, the arbitration agreement and arbitration rules.

Most *leges arbitri* provide only a general procedural framework and evidence is only briefly mentioned.¹⁵⁷⁶ Thus, another option is to agree on evidentiary issues in the arbitration agreement—either directly or, as in most

¹⁵⁷⁴ See p. 3 *supra*.

¹⁵⁷⁵ See p. 10 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁷⁶ See p. 17 et seqq. *supra*.

cases, by reference to a set of ad hoc or institutional arbitration rules.¹⁵⁷⁷ To some extent, institutional arbitration rules reflect the conventions of the legal culture within which they have been developed—for example, by appointing the arbitral tribunal as an active case manager and therefore reflecting an inquisitorial civil law approach.¹⁵⁷⁸ In this regard, the IBA Rules elegantly combine common and civil law elements in order to provide a fair process for the taking of evidence in international arbitration.¹⁵⁷⁹ The parties therefore enjoy unique freedom in tailoring the arbitral proceedings to their respective needs.

B. Sanctions Available to the Arbitral Tribunal

When recalcitrant parties prove unwilling to produce evidence, the arbitral tribunal is not completely helpless and has the power to impose certain sanctions. In international arbitration, adverse inference is the most effective sanction in this regard. In drawing an adverse inference where a party refuses to produce a certain piece of evidence without sufficient reason, the arbitral tribunal will consider the relevant fact as proven despite the absence of the evidence. Although some institutional rules and the IBA Rules empower arbitral tribunals to draw an adverse inference, they do not provide them with guidelines on how to do so.¹⁵⁸⁰ In this regard, the conditions of the Iran-United States Claims Tribunal can provide further guidance.¹⁵⁸¹ However, an adverse inference is not an automatic result where a party fails to produce evidence; it rather lies within the discretion of the arbitral tribunal to decide whether to draw an adverse inference.¹⁵⁸² As a result, the parties have no right to an adverse inference and the arbitral tribunal's failure to do so will not result in a violation of the right to be heard.

In addition to this main sanction, several institutional arbitration rules as well as the IBA Rules provide that the parties' conduct during the arbitral proceedings can be considered in allocating the costs.¹⁵⁸³ Instead of merely letting the costs follow the event, the winning party may be sanctioned too if, for example, it unnecessarily delayed or manipulated the arbitral proceed-

¹⁵⁷⁷ See p. 23 et seqq. and p. 26 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁷⁸ See p. 46 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁷⁹ See p. 31 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁰ See p. 58 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸¹ See p. 60 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸² See p. 63 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸³ See p. 66 et seqq. *supra*.

ings. The possibility to punish party representatives was also discussed. Although this topic has gained some attention in recent years, mainly as a result of the IBA and LCIA Guidelines from 2013 and 2014 respectively, the international arbitration community has rejected this idea almost unanimously, due to the potential risk to the arbitral tribunal's impartiality.¹⁵⁸⁴ Thus, sanctioning party representatives should rather be left to national bar councils or even a global arbitration ethics council, as suggested by the ASA.¹⁵⁸⁵

Finally, the French concept of *astreintes* was considered. Although French arbitral tribunals are competent to impose such penalties, this is not the case in Switzerland, under either statute law or the implicit consent theory.¹⁵⁸⁶ However, the situation is different if the parties have explicitly empowered the arbitral tribunal to impose such a monetary penalty.

C. Limited Power of the Arbitral Tribunal

Despite the arbitral tribunal's powers to sanction non-compliant parties, there are several limits when it comes to the taking of evidence. First, arbitral tribunals must be constituted before they can act and thus are not always 'on duty'.¹⁵⁸⁷ Emergency arbitrators—which are now available under the rules of almost all arbitration institutions—help to bridge this jurisdictional gap, so this limitation is increasingly becoming a minor issue.¹⁵⁸⁸ Second, private arbitral tribunals obviously lack coercive power—that is, they cannot enforce their orders and awards, so compliance depends exclusively on the willingness of the parties to the arbitration.¹⁵⁸⁹ Third, the most significant limitation as regards the taking of evidence is the arbitral tribunal's lack of power over third parties.¹⁵⁹⁰ While the arbitral tribunal can impose sanctions on the parties to the arbitration, this does not apply to third parties which are not participants in the arbitral proceedings. If evidence is in the possession of third parties that do not voluntarily hand it over, the only way to obtain such evidence is to resort to state courts—the main topic of this book.

¹⁵⁸⁴ See p. 68 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁵ See p. 73 *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁶ See p. 74 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁷ See p. 79 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁸ See p. 80 *supra*.

¹⁵⁸⁹ See p. 81 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁹⁰ See p. 82 et seq. *supra*.

D. Court Assistance versus Court Intervention

While state courts can provide a wide range of assistance, the main focus for the purposes of this book is on interim measures granting temporary protection of the parties' rights from possible damage during the arbitration and measures for the taking of evidence that help to establish the facts of the case.¹⁵⁹¹ Although court assistance in the taking of evidence is provided for in the IBA Rules, among others, the question arises as to whether court assistance is in the interests of the parties to the arbitration, given that they have specifically chosen arbitration instead of state court litigation.¹⁵⁹² In this regard, it has been shown that in most cases, resorting to state courts does not circumvent the arbitration agreement, but rather strengthens it. If the parties have not explicitly excluded court assistance, seeking such assistance is in the interest of the smooth functioning of the arbitral proceedings.¹⁵⁹³ This especially applies where non-compliant parties are not acting in good faith. If drawing an adverse inference is insufficient, court assistance actually helps to reinforce the role of the arbitral tribunal as the authority in charge of the arbitral proceedings.¹⁵⁹⁴ Furthermore, since state courts usually require the respective arbitral tribunal's consent before taking action, this should not be regarded as a disturbing intervention in the arbitration, but rather as helpful assistance that equips the arbitral tribunal with more information to render a fairer, more considered verdict.¹⁵⁹⁵

E. (No) Obligation to Assist in the Taking of Evidence

In a further step, the question of whether state courts are obliged to grant assistance based on Swiss constitutional or international public law was considered.¹⁵⁹⁶ Although Switzerland is one of the most arbitration-friendly countries in the world, no such obligation may be derived from either the Swiss Constitution or the case law of the SFT.¹⁵⁹⁷ This was confirmed by an analysis of international public law, which revealed that no obligation to provide court assistance may be derived from the ECHR, the NYC, the HEC or

¹⁵⁹¹ See p. 85 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁹² See p. 91 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁹³ See p. 100 *supra*.

¹⁵⁹⁴ See p. 101 *supra*.

¹⁵⁹⁵ See p. 102 *supra*.

¹⁵⁹⁶ See p. 103 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁵⁹⁷ See p. 104 et seqq. *supra*.

European law.¹⁵⁹⁸ The ECHR does not apply directly to arbitral proceedings and therefore serves only as a source of inspiration to interpret minimum procedural guarantees according to Art. 190 (2) PILA CH.¹⁵⁹⁹ In contrast, the NYC's main aim is to uphold arbitration agreements and facilitate the recognition and enforcement of arbitral awards.¹⁶⁰⁰ As a consequence, it says very little about the arbitral proceedings themselves. The same applies to European law, under which court assistance is foreseen, but nothing more is said, especially as regards any obligation to provide assistance.¹⁶⁰¹

It has been suggested that the HEC could also be applied to arbitral proceedings.¹⁶⁰² However, according to the prevailing view in legal doctrine, this convention does not apply directly to arbitral proceedings, but only indirectly (i.e. via state courts). Nevertheless, as previously discussed, the HEC could contribute significantly to the effectiveness of international arbitration. Still, this could be done only by amending the HEC as a whole or on a purely national level by amending the respective reservations of Member States.¹⁶⁰³ It remains to be seen whether they will choose to do so in the near future. The same also applies to the EER on a purely European level.¹⁶⁰⁴

F. Inconsistency Among Different Leges Arbitri

Since there is no obligation to assist arbitral tribunals in the taking of evidence, each country deals differently with the issue. To assist in assessing the Swiss status quo, the *leges arbitri* of four jurisdictions were analysed; the findings are discussed below.

1. Germany: Rising Popularity

Although Germany is not yet among the leading forums for international arbitration, its importance cannot be underestimated.¹⁶⁰⁵ In order to facilitate international arbitration, the German courts can be approached directly in order to obtain court assistance in the taking of evidence. This simple procedure could even induce parties to comply voluntarily with evidentiary

1598 See p. 109 et seqq. *supra*.

1599 See p. 112 et seq. *supra*.

1600 See p. 114 et seqq. *supra*.

1601 See p. 126 et seqq. *supra*.

1602 See p. 118 et seqq. *supra*.

1603 See p. 122 *supra*.

1604 See p. 128 et seqq. *supra*.

1605 See p. 134 et seqq. *supra*.

orders of the tribunal; hence, it is likely that Germany will gain in importance as a forum for arbitration. Although German law takes a liberal approach in providing access to the courts to assist in the taking of evidence, it limits this by allowing evidence to be taken only according to the CCP DE.¹⁶⁰⁶ In this regard, it is hard to predict the extent to which the German courts will nonetheless consider foreign types of evidence. Given the general pro-arbitration stance in Germany, it is at least conceivable that a request could be adapted until it is in line with the CCP DE.¹⁶⁰⁷

2. France: Ongoing Success

Mainly due to the presence of the ICC headquarters in Paris, France enjoys a long and successful tradition as a forum for arbitration.¹⁶⁰⁸ What distinguishes French law from other *leges arbitri* is first and foremost the fact that the CCP FR applies based on economic reasons only—that is, if international trade interests are at stake.¹⁶⁰⁹ As a consequence, arbitral tribunals can resort to the French courts based solely on the fact that evidence is located in France, which makes it much easier for foreign arbitral tribunals to gather evidence. It is also noteworthy that the CCP FR expressly provides for *ex parte* applications as a measure of surprise prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal.¹⁶¹⁰

However, two limitations regarding the taking of evidence are worth mentioning. First, once the arbitral tribunal has been constituted, only document production can be sought, which stands in stark contrast to the situation prior to constitution of the arbitral tribunal.¹⁶¹¹ Second, only evidence that accords with French law can be taken, so it does not seem possible to consider foreign types of evidence.¹⁶¹²

3. England: Keep Calm and Carry on Arbitrating in London

Recent statistics seem to indicate that England will retain its popularity as a forum for arbitration.¹⁶¹³ Its stable legal framework and pro-arbitration case law should prevail even while the Brexit discussions are ongoing. Or, to put it

1606 See p. 140 et seqq. *supra*.

1607 See p. 141 et seq. *supra*.

1608 See p. 150 *supra*.

1609 See p. 154 *supra*.

1610 See p. 157 et seqq. *supra*.

1611 See p. 158 et seq. *supra*.

1612 See p. 159 *supra*.

1613 See p. 166 *supra*.

in the words of one of the members of the LCIA Board: ‘Keep calm and carry on arbitrating in London!’¹⁶¹⁴ Irrespective of the location of the arbitral tribunal’s seat, the English courts will assist in the taking of evidence. With regard to securing the attendance of witnesses, it is not possible to exclude this possibility even by agreement between the parties.¹⁶¹⁵ What is more, the EAA 1996 offers a wide range of ‘powers exercisable in support of arbitral proceedings’, such as witness examination, preservation of evidence and inspections.¹⁶¹⁶ As regards foreign types of evidence, the English courts tend to take evidence based solely on their own law or even deny assistance because it would fall under the ‘inappropriate rule’ of S. 2 (3) EAA 1996.¹⁶¹⁷ This broad discretion thus cannot be underestimated.

Finally, the English approach to appellate remedies against the *juge d’appui* is unique.¹⁶¹⁸ In order to limit the role of the court and ensure a high degree of finality, leave of the court to appeal is always required, except in case of a lack of jurisdiction or denial of justice.

4. USA: Lasting Confusion

Court assistance in the taking of evidence in the US has become a major issue since the powerful discovery weapon of § 1782 became partially available in international arbitration.¹⁶¹⁹ The 2004 *Intel* decision caused a considerable stir—not only among the international arbitration community, but also among several district and circuit courts.¹⁶²⁰ Because whether § 1782 can be invoked in arbitral proceedings varies from state to state, a Supreme Court decision in this regard—or even an amendment of § 1782—is long overdue.¹⁶²¹ In the meantime, however, the *Intel* factors leave US courts well equipped to assess whether an arbitral tribunal should in fact be assisted.¹⁶²² By applying these factors, the risk of a potential misuse of § 1782 can be dramatically reduced. Therefore, from the point of the practitioner, it is crucial to understand which state courts are receptive to granting § 1782 requests in aid of arbitration.

¹⁶¹⁴ LCIA’s response to Brexit.

¹⁶¹⁵ See p. 170 *supra*.

¹⁶¹⁶ See p. 173 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁶¹⁷ See p. 175 and p. 177 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁶¹⁸ See p. 180 et seq. *supra*.

¹⁶¹⁹ See p. 185 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁶²⁰ See p. 190 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁶²¹ See p. 197 et seqq. *supra*.

¹⁶²² See p. 194 et seqq. *supra*.

G. Switzerland's Way Forward

Nothing suggests that the popularity of Switzerland as a forum for arbitration will wane in the near future—in fact, quite the opposite. Switzerland's neutrality and political stability, together with its pro-arbitration case law and modern legal framework, contribute to its ongoing success.¹⁶²³ More than 30 years after its enactment, the PILA CH still represents a short and concise *lex arbitri*, and the revisions to the statute are only enhancing its appeal, as is evident from the following two amendments.

First, the Swiss legislature recently decided to facilitate the taking of evidence in aid of foreign arbitration and thus aims to allow such assistance to be granted directly to foreign arbitral tribunals.¹⁶²⁴ Hitherto, the Swiss courts have provided assistance only to other state courts, and not directly to arbitral tribunals. This change in approach brings the Swiss *lex arbitri* into line with German, French, English and US law. Second, as a result of another amendment, Swiss courts, when assisting in arbitration, will be expressly allowed to consider foreign types of evidence, such as cross-examination.¹⁶²⁵ While the CCP CH already offered a broad range of evidence, the types of evidence that may be considered under the revised law are therefore even more diverse.¹⁶²⁶ Although it is too soon to assess the consequences of these amendments, they should certainly enhance the attractiveness of Switzerland as a forum for arbitration.

Furthermore, the appellate remedies available in Switzerland—whether directly against the decision of the *juge d'appui* or indirectly through a challenge to the arbitral award—were also subject to careful scrutiny.¹⁶²⁷ Regarding the former, it was demonstrated that third parties must demonstrate a threat of irreparable harm in order to appeal such a decision; while the parties to the arbitration—in order to avoid jeopardising the effectiveness of the arbitral proceedings—require the consent of the arbitral tribunal to appeal.¹⁶²⁸ Regarding the latter, the reluctance of the SFT to set aside arbitral awards and therefore its commitment to respecting the discretion of the arbitral tribunal were discussed. It is thus difficult to have an arbitral award set aside based on what happened during court assistance in the taking of evidence. This is

1623 See p. 219 et seqq. *supra*.

1624 See p. 227 et seq. *supra*.

1625 See p. 223 and p. 242 *supra*.

1626 See p. 240 et seqq. *supra*.

1627 See p. 256 et seqq. *supra*.

1628 See p. 259 et seqq. *supra*.

completely in line with the other *leges arbitri* analysed in this book, and the tendency to uphold arbitral awards represents one of the key hallmarks of arbitration.

§ 3 Outlook

From the examination of the present topic, one thing has become clear: court assistance in the taking of evidence is above all a matter of legal policy and thus varies from jurisdiction to jurisdiction. However, as the comparative section and the chapter on the Swiss status quo have shown, there seems to be a clear tendency among state courts to voluntarily assist arbitral tribunals. If this liberal approach were also adopted in other jurisdictions, this would take us significantly closer to reaching an international consensus on how court assistance in the taking of evidence should be provided. As a next step, it could even be enshrined in an international convention such as the HEC.¹⁶²⁹

Until such a consensus is reached, it remains crucial that practitioners understand the different mechanisms for obtaining court assistance in the various jurisdictions in which evidence is located. One way or another, it is to be expected that court assistance in the taking of evidence will become a more important procedural issue in international arbitration. As pointed out in the introduction to this book, concern seems to be growing over the arbitral tribunal's lack of power over third parties.¹⁶³⁰ This book therefore aims to provide in-depth analysis of how this obstacle may be overcome. It has not only demonstrated how this works in practice in several of the most popular forums for arbitration, but also provided tactical insights which will hopefully be of great value in future arbitrations.

1629 See p. 118 et seqq. *supra*.

1630 See p. 3 *supra*; Queen Mary Survey (2018), 8.

Bibliography

- ABDOLLAHI TONY, The Hague Convention: A Medium for International Discovery, 40 N.C.J. Int'l L. & Com. Reg. 771 (2015).
- ALFORD ROGER P., Ancillary Discovery to Prove Denial of Justice, 53 Va. J. Int'l L. 127 (2012).
- AMBAUEN IRMA, 3. Teil ZPO versus 12. Kapitel IPRG: Eine Gegenüberstellung im Kontext der Opting-out-Möglichkeiten: Unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der zwingenden Bestimmungen, der Schiedsfähigkeit und der Anfechtbarkeit von Schiedssprüchen (Schulthess 2016).
- AMIRFAR CATHERINE M. / LEID NATALIE L. / POPOVA INA C., National Report for the United State of America (2019), in: ICCA International Handbook on Commercial Arbitration, Lise Bosman ed. (Kluwer Law International 2019), (cited: AMIRFAR et al.).
- AMRAM PHILIP, Explanatory Report on the Convention of 18 March 1970 on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters.
- ANDREWS NEIL / LANDBRECHT JOHANNES, Schiedsverfahren und Mediation in England (Stämpfli 2015).
- ANDREWS NEIL, Arbitration and Contract Law: Common Law Perspectives (Springer 2016).
- ARFAZADEH HOMAYOON, Note – 10 Janvier – 1996 – Tribunal de Grande Instance, 14 ASA Bull. 325 (1996).
- ARROYO MANUEL, Chapter 2, Part II: Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 190 [Finality, challenge: principle], in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-ARROYO).
- ASHFORD PETER, The IBA Guidelines on Party Representation in International Arbitration: A Guide (Cambridge University Press 2016).
- AUDIT BERNARD / D'AVOUT LOUIS, Droit international privé (8th ed., LGDJ 2018).
- BAGNER HANS, Article I, in: Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention, Herbert Kronke, Patricia Nacimiento, Dirk Otto & Nicola C. Port eds. (Kluwer Law International 2010), (cited: KRONKE et al.-BAGNER).

- BAIZEAU DOMITILLE, Chapter 2, Part II: Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 192 [Waiver of annulment], in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: Arroyo-Baizeau).
- BALTHASAR STEPHAN / ZIADE ROLAND, International Arbitration in France, in: International Commercial Arbitration: International Conventions, Country Reports and Comparative Analysis, 353, Stephan Balthasar ed. (C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: BALTHASAR-BALTHASAR/ZIADE).
- BALTHASAR STEPHAN, International Arbitration in Germany, in: International Commercial Arbitration: International Conventions, Country Reports and Comparative Analysis, 377, Stephan Balthasar ed. (C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: BALTHASAR-BALTHASAR).
- BANGERT JAN, Die Bindung privater Schiedsgerichte an Art. 6 Abs. 1 EMRK, in: Human Rights, Democracy and the Rule of Law: Menschenrechte, Demokratie und Rechtstaat: Droits de l'homme, démocratie et Etat de droit: Liber amicorum Luzius Wildhaber, 41, Stephan Breitmoser, Bernhard Ehrenzeller, Marco Sassòli, Walter Stoffel & Beatrice Wanger Pfeifer eds. (DIKE 2007).
- BEALE KENNETH / LUGAR JUSTIN / SCHWARZ FRANZ, Solving the § 1782 Puzzle: Bringing Certainty to the Debate Over 28 U.S.C. § 1782's Application to International Arbitration, 47 Stan. J. Int'l L. 51 (2011), (cited: BEALE et al.).
- BÉGUIN JACQUES / MICHEL MENJUCQ, Droit du commerce international (2nd ed., LexisNexis 2011).
- BENTO LUCAS, The Globalization of Discovery: The Law and Practice under 28 U.S.C. § 1782 (Kluwer Law International 2019).
- BERGER BERNHARD / KELLERHALS FRANZ, International and Domestic Arbitration in Switzerland (3rd ed., Stämpfli 2015).
- BERTI STEPHEN V. / DROESE LORENZ, Art. 3, 11a, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti e ds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-BERTI/DROESE).
- BESCH MORRIS / KREUZEDER MANUELA, Die neue DIS-Schiedsgerichtsordnung, 26 RIW 256 (2018).

BESSON SÉBASTIEN / THOMMESEN NINA, Introduction to the Swiss Rules, in: Swiss Rules of International Arbitration: Commentary, Tobias Zuber-bühler, Christoph Müller & Philipp Habegger eds. (2nd. ed., Schulthess 2013), (cited: ZUBERBÜHLER et al.-BESSON/THOMMESEN).

BESSON SÉBASTIEN, Arbitration and Human Rights, 24 ASA Bull. 395 (2006).

BETTINGER JASMIN NICOLE, Prozessmodelle im Zivilverfahrensrecht: Erfolg des Haupverhandlungsmodells auch in der Schweiz? (Mohr Siebeck 2016).

BEYELER MARTIN, TI/BGer - Einsicht in Submissionsakten im Rahmen zivil-rechtlicher Verfahren, BR DC online Nr. 303 (2013), (cited: BEYELER, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 January 2013).

BIAGGINI GIOVANNI, Art. 29a Rechtsweggarantie, in: BV Kommentar: Bundes-verfassung der Schweizerischen Eidgenossenschaft, Giovanni Biaggini ed. (2nd. ed., Orell Füssli 2017), (cited: OFK-BIAGGINI).

BLACKABY NIGEL / PARTASIDES CONSTANTINE / REDFERN ALAN / HUNTER MARTIN, Redfern and Hunter on International Arbitration (6th ed., Oxford University Press 2015), (cited: BLACKABY et al.).

BLACKMAN JONATHAN / STIEFLER JESSICA, Discovery in Aid of Arbitration under 28 USC 1782, in: The Arbitration Review of the Americas 2018, 25 (Law Business Research 2017).

BLESSING MARC

- Comparison of the Swiss Rules with UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules and Others, in: The Swiss Rules of International Arbitration 17, ASA Special Series no. 22 (ASA 2004), (cited: BLESSING, Witnesses).
- The Law Applicable to the Arbitration Clause, in: Improving the Efficiency of Arbitration Agreements and Awards: 40 Years of Application of the New York Convention, 168, Albert Jan van den Berg ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 9 (Kluwer Law International 1999), (cited: BLESSING, Applicable Law).

BÖCKSTIEGEL KARL-HEINZ, Taking Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration – Legal Framework and Trends in Practice, in: The Taking of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration 1, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Klaus-Peter Berger & Jens Bredow eds., Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, Band 26 (Carl Heymanns Verlag 2010), (cited: BÖCKSTIEGEL, Beweiserhebung).

BOND STEPHEN R. / PARALIKA MARILY / SECOMB MATTHEW, ICC Rules of Arbitration, The Arbitral Proceedings, Article 26 [Hearings], in: Concise International Arbitration, 410, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: MISTELIS-BOND/PARALIKA/SECOMB).

BOOG CHRISTOPHER / STARK-TRABER SONJA, Art. 375, in: Berner Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung, Band III, Art. 353-399 ZPO und Art. 407 ZPO, Heinz Hausheer & Hans P. Walther eds. (Stämpfli 2014), (cited: BK-BOOG/STARK-TRABER).

BOOG CHRISTOPHER

- Chapter 2, Part II: Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 183 [Procedure: provisional and conservatory measures], in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-BOOG).
- Die Durchsetzung einstweiliger Massnahmen in internationalen Schiedsverfahren: Aus schweizerischer Sicht, mit rechtsvergleichenden Aspekten (Schulthess 2011).

BOOG CHRISTOPHER / WIMALASENA PHILIP, The 2018 DIS Rules: New Rules for a Renewed Institution, 36 ASA Bull. 10 (2018).

BORN GARY B.

- International Arbitration: Law and Practice (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2016), (cited: BORN, Law and Practice).
- International Commercial Arbitration (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2014), (cited: BORN, Int. Comm. Arb.).

BRACHER NICOLAS, Mitwirkungspflichten und Verweigerungsrechte Dritter bei der Beweiserhebung im Zivilprozess (Helbing Lichtenhahn 2011).

BRADSHAW ROBERT, How to Obtain Evidence from Third Parties: A Comparative View, 36 J. Int'l Arb. 629 (2019).

BREKOULAKIS STAVROS L. / RIBEIRO JOHN / SHORE LAURENCE, UNCITRAL Model Law, Art. 5, 25, 27, 34, in: Concise International Arbitration, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: MISTELIS-BREKOULAKIS et al.).

BREKOULAKIS STAVROS, The Relevance of the Interests of Third Parties in Arbitration: Taking a Closer Look at the Elephant in the Room, 113 Penn St. L. Rev. 1165 (2009).

BRUNNER ALEXANDER / STEININGER THOMAS, ZPO 375, in: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung ZPO: Kommentar, Alexander Brunner, Dominik Gasser & Ivo Schwander eds. (2nd ed., DIKE 2016), (cited: DIKE-BRUNNER/STEININGER).

BUCHER ANDREAS

- Art. 11-11a, 176, 182, 184, 185, 190, 191, in: Commentaire Romand: Loi sur le droit international privé: Convention de Lugano, Andreas Bucher ed. (Helbing Lichtenhahn 2011), (cited: CR-BUCHER).
- Die neue internationale Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit in der Schweiz (Helbing Lichtenhahn 1989).

BURROWS ANDREW, English Private Law (3rd ed., Oxford University Press 2013).

BUTCHERS JUDITH / KIMBROUGH PHILIP, The Arbitral Tribunal's Role in Default Proceedings, 22 Arb. Int. 233 (2006).

CACHARD OLIVIER, Droit du commerce international (3rd ed., LGDJ 2018).

CADIET LOÏC / JEULAND EMMANUEL, Droit judiciaire privé (10th ed., Lexis-Nexis 2017).

CALLÉ PIERRE / DARGENT LAURENT, Art. 145, 1504, 1509, in: Dalloz: Code de procédure civile (2019).

CHAINAIS CÉCILE, Les mesures provisoires dans le nouveau droit français de l'arbitrage, in: L'arbitre et le juge étatique: Études de droit comparé à la mémoire de Giuseppe Tarzia, 281, Achille Saletti, Jacques van Compernolle & Jean-François van Drooghenbroeck eds. (Bruylant 2014).

CLAY THOMAS

- Code de l'arbitrage commenté: 2015 (LexisNexis 2015).
- Le nouveau droit français de l'arbitrage (Lextenso 2011), (cited: CLAY, Arbitrage).

COLOMBINI MARCO, Vorsorglicher Rechtsschutz vor Konstituierung des Schiedsgerichts: Unter besonderer Berücksichtigung des Eilschiedsrichterverfahrens der ICC (DIKE 2016).

CONLEY ANNA, A New World of Discovery: The Ramifications of Two Recent Federal Courts Decisions Granting Judicial Assistance to Arbitral Tribunals, 17 Am. Rev. Int'l Arb. 45 (2006).

COYLE JOHN F., The Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation in the Modern Era, 51 Colum. J. Transnat'l L. 302 (2013).

CRAIG LAURENCE W., Common Law Principles on the Taking of Evidence, in: Beweiserhebung in internationalen Schiedsverfahren 9, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel ed., Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, Band 14 (Carl Heymann Verlag 2001).

DASSER FELIX / WÓJTOWICZ PIOTR, Challenges of Swiss Arbitral Awards: Updated Statistical Data as of 2017, 36 ASA Bull. 276 (2018).

DASSER FELIX

- Equality of Arms in International Arbitration: Do Rules and Guidelines Level the Playing Field and Properly Regulate Conduct? – Can They? Will They? Should they? The Example of the IBA Guidelines on Party Representation, in: International Arbitration and the Rule of Law: Contribution and Conformity, 634, Andrea Menaker ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 19 (Kluwer Law International 2017), (cited: DASSER, Guidelines).
- Schiedsgerichte und staatliche Gerichte: Nebeneinander, nacheinander, miteinander – ein Durcheinander?, in: 90 Jahre Fürstlicher Gerichtshof: Festschrift für Gert Delle Karth, 109, Hubertus Schumacher & Wigbert Zimmermann eds. (Jan Sramek Verlag 2013), (cited: DASSER, Schiedsgerichte).

DE WESTGAVER CLAIRE M. / ZINATULLINA ELLINA, Will Adverse Inferences Help Make Document Production in International Arbitration More Efficient?, Kluwer Arbitration Blog (2 August 2017).

DELANEY COLIN R.P. / FRUCHTER MARCUS D., National Report of United States of America, in Working Session “State Court Participation in Arbitration – Help or Hindrance?”, (AIJA Annual Congress 2015).

DENNIS IAN H., The Law of Evidence (6th ed., Sweet & Maxwell 2017).

DERAINS YVES / KIFFER LAURENCE, National Report for France (2018), in: ICCA International Handbook on Commercial Arbitration, Lise Bosman ed. (Kluwer Law International 2018).

DEVOT DAMIEN / LAURENT-BELLUE ANNE-VICTOIRE, National Report of France, in Working Session “State Court Participation in Arbitration – Help or Hindrance?”, (AIJA Annual Congress 2015).

DEY RICHARD / TULLOCH MOHINI / WILLIS AMANDA, Animals, arbitration, aviation, in: Halsbury’s Laws, Volume 2 (5th ed., LexisNexis 2017), (cited: DEY et al.).

DONDE RAHUL, Court Assistance in Acquiring Evidence in International Arbitration, in: 40 under 40 International Arbitration (2018), 269, Carlos Gonzalez-Bueno ed. (Dykinson, S.L. 2018).

DUPEYRON CARINE / VALENTINI MARIE, Legal Instruments Used in the Search for Evidence in Support of Arbitration: Comparative Study of Art. 145 of the French Code of Civil Procedure and S. 28 USC §1782 in the United States, Int'l Bus. L.J. 533 (2013).

DUPEYRON CARINE, Shall National Courts Assist Arbitral Tribunals in Gathering Evidence?, in: International Arbitration and the Rule of Law: Contribution and Conformity 458, Andrea Menaker ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 19 (Kluwer Law International 2017).

DUPREY PIERRE, Présentation du nouveau décret sur l'arbitrage, in: L'arbitrage: principes et pratiques, 14, Les cahiers du Conseil National des Barreaux (Conseil National des Barreaux 2011).

DUTOIT BERNARD, Art. 11a, 176, 182, 183, 184, 185, in: Droit international privé suisse: Commentaire de la loi fédérale du 18 décembre 1987 (5th ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2016).

EBERL STEFANIE / EBERL WALTER, Praktische Durchführung der Beweisaufnahme, in: Beweis im Schiedsverfahren 25, Walter Eberl ed. (Nomos 2015).

EHLE BERND

- Concurrent Jurisdiction: Arbitral Tribunals and Courts Granting Interim Relief, in: International Arbitration and Mediation: From the Professional's Perspective, 157, Anita Alibekova & Robert Carrow eds. (Yorkhill Law Publishing 2007), (cited: EHLE, Concurrent Jurisdiction).
- Emergency Arbitration in Practice, in: New Developments in International Commercial Arbitration 2013, 87, Christoph Müller & Antonio Rigozzi eds. (Schulthess 2013), (cited: EHLE, Emergency Arbitration).

ELsing SIEGFRIED H. / TOWNSEND JOHN M., Bridging the Common Law-Civil Law Divide in Arbitration, 18 Arb. Int. 59 (2002).

ELUL MURIEL H. / MOSQUERA REBECA E., 28 U.S.C. Section 1782: U.S. Discovery in Aid of International Arbitration Proceedings, in: International Arbitration in the United States, 317, Laurence Shore et al. eds. (Kluwer Law International 2017).

EMANUELE FERDINANDO / JEDREY NATHANIEL E. / MOLFA MILO, Evidence in International Arbitration: The Italian Perspective and Beyond (Thomson Reuters 2016), (cited: EMANUELE et al.).

FELLAS JOHN / MOSEQUERA REBECA, AAA/ICDR International Arbitration Rules, Chapter 3, Article 23 [Former Article 20] [Hearing], in: Concise International Arbitration, 593, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015).

FELLMANN WALTER, Art. 158 Vorsorgliche Beweisführung, in: Kommentar zur Schweizerischen Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO), Thomas Sutter-Somm, Franz Hasenböhler & Christoph Leuenberger eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2016), (cited: SUTTER-SOMM et al.-FELLMANN).

FOUCHARD PHILIPPE

- Note – Cour de cassation (1re Ch. civile) 1er décembre 1999, Cour de cassation (1re Ch. civile) 1er décembre 1999, Rev. Arb. 96 (2000), (cited: FOUCHEARD, note on Paris Court of Cassation, 1 December 1999, 1st Civil Chamber, in: Rev. Arb. 2000).
- Note – Tribunal de grande instance de Paris (Ord. référé) 11 mai 1987; Note – Tribunal de grande instance de Paris (Jug. référé) 22 mai 1987; Note – Tribunal de grande instance de Paris (Jug. référé) 23 juin 1987, Rev. Arb. 699 (1988), (cited: FOUCHEARD, note on Paris High Court, 11 May 1987, in: Rev. Arb. 1988).

FRIEDMAN MARK W. / LAVAUD FLORIANE, UNITED STATES, in: Arbitration Guide: IBA Arbitration Committee (2018).

FURRER ANDREAS / GIRSBERGER DANIEL / AMBAUEN IRMA, Art. 182-186, in: Handkommentar zum Schweizer Privatrecht: Internationales Privatrecht Art. 1-200 IPRG, Andreas Furrer, Daniel Girsberger & Markus Müller-Chen eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2016), (cited: CHK-FURRER et al.).

GAILLARD EMMANUEL / DE LAPASSE PIERRE, Le nouveau droit français de l'arbitrage interne et international, Recueil Dalloz 175 (2011).

GAILLARD EMMANUEL / SAVAGE JOHN, Fouchard Gaillard Gold on International Commercial Arbitration (Kluwer Law International 1999).

GAUTHEY DANIELLE / MARKUS ALEXANDER R., L'entraide judiciaire internationale en matière civile (Stämpfli 2014).

GEIMER REINHOLD

- Note§ 1033, 1050, in: Zöller Zivilprozessordnung: mit FamG (§§ 1-185, 200-270, 433-484) und Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz, den Einführungsgesetzen, mit Internationalem Zivilprozessrecht, EU-Verordnungen, Kostenanmerkung: Kommentar, Richard Zöller ed. (32nd ed., Dr. Otto Schmidt 2018), (cited: ZÖLLER-GEIMER).
- Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit und Verfassung (aus deutscher Sicht), in: Integritätsprobleme im Umfeld der Justiz – Die Organisation der Rechtsberatung: Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit und Verfassungsrecht –, 113, Peter F. Schlosser ed. (Giesecking 1994).

GEISINGER ELLIOTT, “Soft Law” and Hard Questions: ASA’s Initiative in the Debate on Counsel Ethics in International Arbitration, in: The Sense and Non-sense of Guidelines, Rules and other Para-regulatory Texts in International Arbitration, ASA Special Series no. 37, Daniele Favalli ed. (Juris 2015).

GEISINGER ELLIOTT / SCHNEIDER MICHAEL E. / DASSER FELIX, IBA Guidelines on Party Representation in International Arbitration: Comments and Recommendations by the Board of the Swiss Arbitration Association (ASA), ASA Position Paper (2014), (cited: GEISINGER et al.).

GIRSBERGER DANIEL / VOSER NATHALIE, International Arbitration: Comparative and Swiss Perspectives (3rd ed., Schulthess 2016).

GODFREY JENNA M., Americanization of Discovery: Why Statutory Interpretation Bars 28 U.S.C. § 1782(a)’s Application in Private International Arbitration Proceedings, 60 Am. U. L. Rev. 475 (2010).

GÖKSU TARKAN

- Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit – Anfechtung eines Editionsentscheids durch das ASTRA, 41 BR DC 375 (2016), (cited: GÖKSU, note on DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 January 2013).
- Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit (DIKE 2014).

GRABENWARTER CHRISTOPH / PABEL KATHARINA, Der Grundsatz des fairen Verfahrens, in: EMRK/GG: Konkordanzkommentar zum europäischen und deutschen Grundrechtsschutz: Band I, Kapitel 1-19, Oliver Dörr, Rainer Groter & Thilo Marauhn eds. (2nd ed., Mohr Siebeck 2013), (cited: DÖRR et al.-GRABENWARTER/PABEL).

GREENBERG SIMON / LAUTENSCHLAGER FELIX, Part I: International Commercial Arbitration, Chapter 9: Adverse Inferences in International Arbitral Practice, in: International Arbitration and International Commercial Law: Synergy, Convergence and Evolution, 179, Stefan M. Kroll, Loukas A. Mistelis, Pilar Perales Viscasillas & Vikki M. Rogers eds. (Kluwer Law International 2011).

GUSY MARTIN F. / HOSKING JAMES M., A Guide to the ICDR International Arbitration Rules (2nd. ed., Oxford University Press 2019).

GUSY MARTIN F. / ILLMER MARTIN, Die ICDR Guidelines for Arbitrators Concerning Exchanges of Information – zugleich eine deutsch-U.S.-amerikanische Analyse zur Kostenreduzierung in AAA/ICDR Schiedsverfahren –, 6 SchiedsVZ 284 (2008).

GUYAN PETER, Art. 156, in: Basler Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO), Karl Spühler, Luca Tenchio & Dominik Infanger eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2017), (cited: BSK-GUYAN).

HAAS ULRICH, Das Verhältnis von schiedsgerichtlichem und staatlichem vorläufigem Rechtsschutz – Obergericht Kanton Bern, Entscheid vom 19.4.2012 – ZK 12 111 –, 17 ZZPInt 347 (2012).

HABEGGER PHILIPP, Art. 374, 375, 378, in: Basler Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO), Karl Spühler, Luca Tenchio & Dominik Infanger eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2017), (cited: BSK-HABEGGER).

HABERBECK PHILIPP H., Bundesgerichtliche Rechtsprechung zu Art. 190 Abs. 2 lit. d IPRG, 24 AJP 1413 (2015).

HAGUE CONFERENCE ON PRIVATE INTERNATIONAL LAW, Practical Handbook on the Operation of the Evidence Convention (HEC 2016), (cited: HEC HANDBOOK, 2016).

HANOTIAU BERNARD, The Conduct of the Hearings, in The Leading Arbitrator's Guide to International Arbitration, 359, Lawrence W. Newman & Richard D. Hill eds. (2nd ed., Juris 2008).

HARRIS BRUCE / PLANTEROSE ROWAN / TECKS JONATHAN, The Arbitration Act 1996: A Commentary (Wiley Blackwell 2014), (cited: HARRIS et al.).

HARRIS DAVID / O'BOYLE MICHAEL / WARBRICK COLIN, Law of the European Convention on Human Rights (3rd ed., Oxford University Press 2014), (cited: HARRIS D. et al.).

HARTMANN PETER, § 1050, in: Beck'scher Kurz-Kommentar, Band 1: Zivilprozessordnung mit FamFG, GVG und anderen Nebengesetzen, Adolf Baum-bach, Wolfgang Lauterbach, Jan Albers & Peter Hartmann eds. (77 ed., C.H. Beck 2019), (cited: BECKKUKO-HARTMANN).

HASCHER DOMINIQUE T., European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration of 1961: Commentary, in: Y.B. Comm. Arb. XXXVI 504 (2011).

HASENBÖHLER FRANZ

- Art. 157, 162, Vorbemerkungen zu Art. 165-167, 165, 167, in: Kommentar zur Schweizerischen Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO), Thomas Sutter-Somm, Franz Hasenböhler & Christoph Leuenberger eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2016), (cited: SUTTER-SOMM et al.-HASENBÖHLER).
- Das Beweisrecht der ZPO: Allgemeine Bestimmungen, Mitwirkungspflichten und Verweigerungsrechte (Schulthess 2015).

HAY PETER, US-Amerikanisches Recht: Ein Studienbuch (6th ed., C.H. Beck 2015).

HAZARD GEOFFREY C., Discovery and the Role of the Judge in Civil Law Jurisdictions, 73 Notre Dame L. Rev. 1017 (1999).

HIGI PETER, Art. 162, in: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung ZPO: Kommentar, Alexander Brunner, Dominik Gasser & Ivo Schwander eds. (2nd ed., DIKE 2016), (cited: DIKE-HIGI).

HODGES PAULA, Equality of Arms in International Arbitration: Who is the Best Arbiter of Fairness in the Conduct of Proceedings?, in: International Arbitration and the Rule of Law: Contribution and Conformity, 599, Andrea Menaker ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 19 (Kluwer Law International 2017).

HOFBAUER SIMONE, Chapter 1, Part I: History of Arbitration, in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-HOFBAUER).

HOFFMANN ANNE K. / SHETTY NISH, Evidence and Hearings, in: International Arbitration: The Coming of a New Age?, 197, Albert Jan van den Berg ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 17 (Kluwer Law International 2013).

HOFMANN DIETER A. / FUCHS ANJA, 5 Jahre ZPO aus der Sicht des internationalen Zivilprozesses und der Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit / 1.-2., in: 5 Jahre ZPO: Stolpersteine und überraschende Entwicklungen, 115, Annette Dolge ed. (Schulthess 2016).

HOLTZMANN HOWARD M. / NEUHAUS JOSEPH E., *A Guide to the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration: Legislative History and Commentary* (Kluwer Law International 1989).

HORY ALEXANDRE, Note – Cour de cassation (Ch. com.) 10 mars 1998 – Société Isautier v. Société Prudence Crédit; Note – Cour d'appel de Versailles (2e Ch.) 8 octobre 1998 – Société Akzo Nobel et autres v. SA Elf Atochem, Rev. Arb. 57 (1999), (cited: HORY, note on Société Akzo Nobel et autres v. SA Elf Atochem, Versailles Court of Appeal, 8 October 1998, 2nd Civil Chamber, in: Rev. Arb. 1999).

HOSANG ALAIN

- Adverse Inferences as a Consequence of the Non-Production of Documents According to the 2010 IBA Rules of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration, in: *Private Law: national – global – comparative: Festschrift für Ingeborg Schwenzer zum 60. Geburtstag*, 791, Band 1, Andrea Büchler & Markus Müller-Chen eds. (Stämpfli 2011), (cited: HOSANG, Adverse Inferences).
- Obstructionist Behavior in International Commercial Arbitration: Legal Analysis and Measures Available to the Arbitral Tribunal (Eleven International Publishing 2014), (cited: HOSANG, Obstructionist Behavior).

HURNI CHRISTOPH, Anfechtbarkeit von Entscheiden betreffend die Ernennung von Schiedsrichtern (Art. 362 ZPO): BGE 141 III 444 und Urteil 4A_490/2015 vom 25. Februar 2016 (Publikation vorgesehen), 152 ZBJV 299 (2016).

HUSMANN MARKUS, Art. 271, in: *Basler Kommentar: Strafrecht: Strafgesetzbuch, Jugendstrafgesetz*, Marcel A. Niggli & Hans Wiprächtiger eds. (4th ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2018), (cited: BSK-HUSMANN).

HWANG MICHAEL / HON JENNIFER, A New Approach to Regulating Counsel Conduct in International Arbitration, 33 ASA Bull. 658 (2015).

ICC DISPUTE RESOLUTION BULLETIN, Issue 2, Julien Fouret & Samaa Haridi eds. (ICC 2018).

ILLMER MARTIN / STEINBRÜCK BEN, U.S. Discovery and Foreign Private Arbitration: The Foreign Lawyer's Perspective, 25 J. Int'l Arb. 329 (2008).

ILLMER MARTIN, International Arbitration in England and Wales, in: *International Commercial Arbitration: International Conventions, Country Reports and Comparative Analysis*, 299, Stephan Balthasar ed. (C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: BALTHASAR-ILLMER).

JARROSSON CHARLES / PELLERIN JACQUES, Le droit français de l'arbitrage après le décret du 13 janvier 2011, Rev. Arb. 5 (2011).

JARROSSON CHARLES, Le juge et l'instance arbitrale: le juge, l'arbitre et la preuve en droit français, in: L'arbitre et le juge étatique: Études de droit comparé à la mémoire de Giuseppe Tarzia, 331, Achille Saletti, Jacques van Compernolle & Jean-François van Drooghenbroeck eds. (Bruylant 2014).

JERMINI CESARE / BERNARDONI NICOLA, Chapter 1, Part II: Domestic Arbitration under the Swiss code of Civil Procedure, in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-JERMINI/BERNARDONI).

KARRER PIERRE A., The Civil and Common Law Divide: An International Arbitrator Tells It Like He Sees It, in: Handbook on International Arbitration and ADR, 49, American Arbitration Association ed. (Juris 2010).

KAUFMANN-KOHLER GABRIELLE / RIGOZZI ANTONIO, International Arbitration: Law and Practice in Switzerland (Oxford University Press 2015).

KIDANE WON L., The Culture of International Arbitration (Oxford University Press 2017).

KLAUS PHILIPP, Verfahren nach dem Haager Beweisaufnahmeübereinkommen, 40 ZZZ 300 (2016).

KLETT KATHRIN / LEEMANN MATTHIAS, Art. 77, in: Basler Kommentar: Bundesgerichtsgesetz, Marcel A. Niggli, Peter Uebersax, Hans Wiprächtiger & Lorenz Kneubühler eds. (3rd. ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2018), (cited: BSK-KLETT/LEEMANN).

KLETT KATHRIN, Art. 76, in: Basler Kommentar: Bundesgerichtsgesetz, Marcel A. Niggli, Peter Uebersax, Hans Wiprächtiger & Lorenz Kneubühler eds. (3rd. ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2018), (cited: BSK-KLETT).

KLEY ANDREAS, Art. 29a, in: Die schweizerische Bundesverfassung: St. Galler Kommentar, Bernhard Ehrenzeller, Benjamin Schindler, Rainer J. Schweizer & Klaus A. Vallender eds. (3rd. ed., Schulthess 2014), (cited: SGK-KLEY).

KNEISEL SEBASTIAN / LECKING CLAUDIA, Verteidigungstrategien gegen die Anordnung der Document-Production – insbesondere nach den IBA-Regeln zur Beweisaufnahme in der internationalen Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, 11 SchiedsVZ 150 (2013).

KNOEPFLER FRANCOIS, Jurisprudence suisse en matière d'arbitrage international, 8 SIER 599 (1998).

KNÖFEL OLIVER L.

- Haager Übereinkommen über die Beweisaufnahme im Ausland in Zivil- und Handelssachen vom 18. März 1970, in: Internationaler Rechtsverkehr in Zivil- und Handelssachen: Loseblatt-Handbuch mit Texten, Kommentierungen und Länderberichten: Band I, Reinhold Geimer & Rolf. A Schütze eds. (53 ed., C.H. Beck 2017), (cited: GEIMER/SCHÜTZE-KNÖFEL).
- Judicial Assistance in the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Aid of Arbitration: A German Perspective, 5 J. Priv. Int. L. 281 (2009), (cited: KNÖFEL, Judicial Assistance).

KNOLL JOACHIM, Chapter 2, Part II: Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Art. 182, 185, in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-KNOLL).

KODEK GEORG E., Verfassung und Grundrechte, in: Schiedsverfahrensrecht: Band 11, Christoph Liebscher, Paul Oberhammer & Walter H. Rechberger eds. (Springer 2012).

KRAAYVANGER JAN / RICHTER MALTE / WENDLER JAN, US-Beweishilfe in Schiedsverfahren – ein Anschlag auf die internationale Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit?, 6 SchiedsVZ 161 (2008), (cited: KRAAYVANGER et al.).

KREINDLER RICHARD H., Chapter 2 §2.05: The Role of State Courts in Assisting Arbitral Tribunals Confronted with Guerrilla Tactics, in: Guerilla Tactics in International Arbitration, 93, Günther J. Horvath & Stephan Wilske eds. (Kluwer Law International 2013).

KREINDLER RICHARD / WOLFF REINMAR / RIEDER MARKUS S., Commercial Arbitration in Germany (Oxford University Press 2016), (cited: KREINDLER et al.).

KRONKE HERBERT, Introduction: The New York Convention Fifty Years on: Overview and Assessment, in: Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention, Herbert Kronke, Patricia Nacimiento, Dirk Otto & Nicola Christine Port eds. (Kluwer Law International 2010), (cited: KRONKE et al.-KRONKE).

KRSUL TIMOTHY C., The Limits on Enforcement of Arbitral Third-Party Subpoenas: Should They be Loosened?, in: Handbook on Arbitration Practice, 181, American Arbitration Association ed. (Juris 2010).

- KÜHN WOLFGANG, Common Law vs Civil Law Proceedings in International Commercial Arbitration, in: *Festschrift für Hans-Jochem Lüer zum 70. Geburtstag*, 3, Wilhelm Molled. (C.H. Beck 2008).
- LACHMANN JENS P., *Handbuch für die Schiedsgerichtspraxis* (3rd ed., Dr. Otto Schmidt 2008).
- LALIVE PIERRE / POUDRET JEAN-FRANÇOIS / REYMOND CLAUDE, *Le droit de l'arbitrage interne et international en Suisse: Edition annotée et commentée du Concordat sur l'arbitrage du 27 mars 1969 et des dispositions sur l'arbitrage international de la Loi fédérale du 18 décembre 1987 sur le droit international privé* (Payot 1989), (cited: LALIVE et al.).
- LANDROVE JUAN C. / GREUTER JAMES J., *The Civil Astreinte as an Incentive Measure in Litigation and International Arbitration Practice in Switzerland: Is There a Need for Incorporation?*, in: *L'harmonisation international du droit*, 523, Christine Chappuis, Bénédict Foëx & Thomas Kadner Graziano eds. (Schulthess 2007).
- LAU CHRISTOPHER, *Do Rules and Guidelines Level the Playing Field and Properly Regulate Conduct? – An Arbitrator's Perspective*, in: *International Arbitration and the Rules of Law: Contribution and Conformity*, 559, Andrea Menaker ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 19 (Kluwer Law International 2017).
- LCIA, 2018 Annual Casework Report (2018).
- LEVY DANIEL, *Emergency Arbitrators: Characters in Search of Author*, in: *International Arbitration and the Rule of Law: Contribution and Conformity*, 180, Andrea Menaker ed., ICCA Congress Series, no. 19 (Kluwer Law International 2017), (cited: LEVY D.).
- LEVY LAURENT, *Les Astreintes et l'arbitrage international en Suisse*, 19 ASA Bull. 21 (2001), (cited: LEVY).
- LEW JULIAN D.M. / MISTELIS LOUKAS A. / KRÖLL STEFAN M., *Comparative International Commercial Arbitration* (Kluwer Law International 2003), (cited: LEW et al.).
- LEW JULIAN, *Does National Court Involvement Undermine the International Arbitration Process?*, 24 Am. U. Int'l L. Rev. 489 (2009).

- LIEBSCHER CHRISTOPH, Preliminary Remarks, in: New York Convention: Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958: Commentary, Reinmar Wolff ed. (2nd ed., C.H. Beck 2018), (cited: WOLFF-LIEBSCHER).
- LOQUIN ÉRIC, L'arbitrage du commerce international (LexTenso 2015).
- LUTTRELL SAM, Ten Things to Consider When Seeking Adverse Inferences in International Arbitration, in: 40 under 40 International Arbitration (2018), 281, Carlos Gonzales-Bueno ed. (Dykinson, S.L. 2018).
- MABILLARD RAMON, Art. 183, 185, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-MABILLARD).
- MALAMENT LAURA E., Making or Breaking Your Billion Dollar Case: U.S. Judicial Assistance to Private International Arbitration Under 28 U.S.C. §1782(a), 67 Vand. L. Rev. 1213 (2014).
- MARGHITOLA RETO, Document Production in International Arbitration (Kluwer Law International 2015).
- MARKUS ALEXANDER R., Rechtsmittel gegen Entscheide des juge d'appui bei der internationalen Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit der Schweiz, 31 ASA Bull. 504 (2013).
- MARTINEZ-FRAGA PEDRO J., The American Influence on International Commercial Arbitration: doctrinal developments and discovery methods (Cambridge University Press 2013).
- MCILWARTH MICHAEL / SAVAGE JOHN, International Arbitration and Mediation: A Practical Guide (Kluwer Law International 2010).
- MEIER ANDREAS L., Die Anwendung des Haager Beweisübereinkommens in der Schweiz: Unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Beweisaufnahme für U.S.-amerikanische Zivilprozesse (Helbing Lichtenhahn 1999).
- MEKAT MARTIN C., Cross Examination: Das Kreuzverhör in der deutschen Schiedsverfahrenspraxis, 15 SchiedsVZ 119 (2017).
- MERKIN ROBERT / FLANNERY LOUIS, Arbitration Act 1996 (5th ed., Routledge 2014).
- MEYER FRANK, Art. 6 EMRK, in: Konvention zum Schutz der Menschenrechte und Grundfreiheiten: Kommentar, Ulrich Karpenstein & Franz C. Mayer eds. (2nd ed., C.H. Beck 2015), (cited: KARPENSTEIN/MAYER-MEYER).

MEYER-LADEWIG JENS / HARRENDORF STEFAN / KÖNIG STEFAN, Art. 6 EMRK, in: Handkommentar Europäische Menschenrechtskonvention, Jens Meyer Ladewig, Martin Nettesheim & von Stefan Raumer eds. (4th ed., Nomos 2017), (cited: HK-EMRK-LADEWIG et al.).

MISTELIS LOUKAS A. / DI PIETRO DOMENICO, Introductory remarks, Art. V [Grounds to refuse enforcement of foreign arbitral awards], in: Concise International Arbitration, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: MISTELIS-MISTELIS/DI PIETRO).

MOLITORIS MICHAEL, Der Zeugenbeweis im Schiedsverfahren, in: Beweis im Schiedsverfahren, 73, Walter Eberl ed. (Nomos 2015).

MOSIMANN OLIVIER L., Anti-Suit Injunctions in International Commercial Arbitration (Eleven International Publishing 2010).

MOURRE ALEXIS

- FRANCE, in: Arbitration Guide: IBA Arbitration Committee (2012), (cited: MOURRE, France).
- Judicial Penalties and Specific Performance in International Arbitration, in: Performance as a Remedy: Non-Monetary Relief in International Arbitration, 335, Michael E. Schneider & Joachim Knoll eds. (Juris 2011), (cited: MOURRE, Judicial Penalties).

MÜLLER-CHEN MARKUS, Art. 3, in: Zürcher Kommentar zum IPRG, Band I, Art. 1-108, Markus Müller-Chen & Corinne Widmer Lüchinger eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2018), (cited: ZK-MÜLLER-CHEN).

MÜNCH JOACHIM, Vorbemerkungen zu § 1025, § 1025, 1033, 1050, 1059, in: Münchner Kommentar zur Zivilprozeßordnung: mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und Nebengesetzen, Band 3, Thomas Rauscher & Wolfgang Krüger eds. (5th ed., C.H. Beck 2017), (cited: MüKo-MÜNCH).

NACIMIENTO PATRICIA, Article V (t) (d), in: Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention, Herbert Kronke, Patricia Nacimiento, Dirk Otto & Nicola C. Port eds. (Kluwer Law International 2010), (cited: KRONKE et al.-NACIMIENTO).

NATER-BASS GABRIELLE / ROUVINEZ CHRISTINA, Article 24, in: Swiss Rules of International Arbitration: Commentary, Tobias Zuberbühler, Christoph Müller & Philipp Habegger eds. (2nd. ed., Schulthess 2013), (cited: ZUBERBÜHLER et al.-NATER-BASS/ROUVINEZ).

NESBITT SIMON / DAROWSKI MICHAEL, LCIA Arbitration Rules, Article 18 and Annex to the LCIA Rules [Legal Representatives], in: Concise International Arbitration, 521, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: MISTELIS-NESBITT/DAROWSKI).

NEWMAN LAWRENCE W., Cross-Examination in International Arbitration - Opportunities and Challenges, in: The Leading Arbitrators' Guide to International Arbitration, 403, Lawrence W. Newman & Richard D. Hill eds. (2nd ed., Juris 2008).

NIEDERMAIER TILMAN, International Arbitration in the U.S., in: International Commercial Arbitration: International Conventions, Country Reports and Comparative Analysis, 660, Stephan Balthasar ed. (C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: BALTHASAR-NIEDERMAIER).

NOUGEIN HENRI-JACQUES / DUPEYRÉ ROMAIN, Règles et pratiques du droit français de l'arbitrage (Lextenso 2012).

NYC BAR COMMITTEE, 28 U.S. § 1782 as a Means of Obtaining Discovery in Aid of International Commercial Arbitration – Applicability and Best Practices (2010), (cited: NYC BAR COMMITTEE REPORT (2010)).

O'CALLAGHAN KIERON / FINNIS JEROMS, Support and Supervision by the Courts, in: Arbitration in England with chapters on Scotland and Ireland, 413, Julian D.M. Lew, Harris Bor, Gregore Fullelove & Joanne Greenaway eds. (Kluwer Law International 2013).

O'MALLEY NATHAN D. / EATON LUKE N., U.S. Discovery in Aid of International Arbitration: Where Things Presently Stand, 31 J. Int'l Arb. 11 (2014).

O'MALLEY NATHAN D., Rules of Evidence in International Arbitration: An Annotated Guide (2nd ed., Routledge 2019).

OETIKER CHRISTIAN

- Art. 176, 179, 180, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 190, 192, in: Zürcher Kommentar zum IPRG, Band II, Art. 108a-200, Markus Müller-Chen & Corinne Widmer Lüchinger eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2018), (cited: ZK-OETIKER).
- Article 26, in: Swiss Rules of International Arbitration: Commentary, Tobias Zuberbühler, Christoph Müller & Philipp Habegger eds. (2nd. ed., Schulthess 2013), (cited: ZUBERBÜHLER et al.-OETIKER).
- Sense and Nonsense of Written Witness Statements, in: New Developments in International Commercial Arbitration 2009, 29, Christoph Müller & Antonio Rigozi eds. (Schulthess 2009), (cited: OETIKER, Witness Statements).

- Witnesses before the International Arbitral Tribunal, 25 ASA Bull. 253 (2007), (cited: OETIKER, Witnesses).
- ORELLI MARIELLA, Chapter 2, Part II, Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 176 [Field of application; seat of the arbitral tribunal], in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: ARROYO-ORELLI).
- ORLOWSKI VICTORIA, FAA Section 10 Applications to Vacate an Award (Including “Manifest Disregard”), in: International Arbitration in the United States, 503, Laurence Shore et al. eds. (Kluwer Law International 2017).
- OTHENIN-GIRARD SIMON, Quelques observations sur le for de nécessité en droit international privé suisse (Art. 3 LDIP), 9 SZIER 251 (1999).
- PABST STEFFEN, Haager Übereinkommen über die Beweisaufnahme im Ausland in Zivil- oder Handelssachen, Vorbemerkungen zu Art. 1, Art. 1, 9, 14, 23, in: Münchner Kommentar zur Zivilprozeßordnung: mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und Nebengesetzen, Band 3, Thomas Rauscher & Wolfgang Krüger eds. (5th ed., C.H. Beck 2017), (cited: MüKo-PABST).
- PARK WILLIAM W., A Fair Fight: Professional Guidelines in International Arbitration, 30 Arb. Int. 409 (2014).
- PATOCCHI P. MICHELE / JERMINI CESARE, Art. 192, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-PATOCCHI/JERMINI).
- PATOCCHI P. MICHELE / NIEDERMAIER TILMAN, Chapter XV: UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules – UNCITRAL Rules –, in: Institutional Arbitration: Article-by-Article Commentary, Rolf A. Schütze ed. (C.H. Beck 2013), (cited: SCHÜTZE-PATOCCHI/NIEDERMAIER).
- PAULSSON JAN, Arbitration in Three Dimensions, LSE Law, Society and Economy Working Papers 2 (2010).
- PAULSSON MARIKE R. P., The 1958 New York Convention in Action (Kluwer Law International 2016), (cited: PAULSSON M.).
- PETER WOLFGANG / BRUNNER CHRISTOPH, Art. 180, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-PETER/BRUNNER).

PETER WOLFGANG, Witness ‘Conferencing’, 18 Arb. Int. 27 (2002).

PIFFNER DANIEL C. / HOCHSTRASSER DANIEL, Art. 176, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-PIFFNER/HOCHSTRASSER).

PFISTERER STEFANIE

- Art. 190, in: Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-PFISTERER).
- Art. 356, in: Berner Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung, Band III: Art. 353-399 ZPO und Art. 407 ZPO, Heinz Hausheer & Hans P. Walther eds. (Stämpfli 2014), (cited: BK-PFISTERER).

PITKOWITZ NIKOLAUS, Chapter I: Issues Specific to Arbitration in Europe, Is There Still a Scope of Application of the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration?, in: Austrian Yearbook on International Arbitration, Vol. 2013, 93, Christian Klausegger & Peter Klein et al. eds. (Manz’sche Verlags- und Universitätsbuchhandlung 2013).

POUDRET JEAN-FRANÇOIS / SÉBASTIEN BESSON, Comparative Law of International Arbitration (2nd ed., Sweet and Maxwell, Schulthess 2007).

PRÜTTING HANS, § 1033, 1050, in: Zivilprozessordnung: Kommentar, Hans Prütting & Markus Gehrlein eds. (11th ed., Luchterhahn 2019), (cited: PRÜTTING/GEHRLEIN-PRÜTTING).

QUEEN MARY UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

- International Arbitration Survey: Current and Preferred Practices in the Arbitral Process (2012), (cited: QUEEN MARY SURVEY (2012)).
- International Arbitration Survey: Improvements and Innovations in International Arbitration (2015), (cited: QUEEN MARY SURVEY (2015)).
- International Arbitration Survey: The Evolution of International Arbitration (2018), (cited: QUEEN MARY SURVEY (2018)).

RACINE JEAN-BAPTISTE, Droit de l’arbitrage (puf 2016).

RADICATI DI BROZOLO LUCA, International arbitration and domestic law, in: International Commercial Arbitration: Different Forms and their Features, 40, Giuditta Cordero-Moos ed. (Cambridge University Press 2013).

RAESCHKE-KESSLER HILMAR

- Discovery in International Commercial Arbitration, in: *The Taking of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration*, 45, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Klaus-Peter Berger & Jens Bredow eds., Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, Band 26 (Carl Heymanns Verlag 2010), (cited: RAESCHKE-KESSLER, Discovery).
- Witness Conferencing, in: *The Leading Arbitrator's Guide to International Arbitration* 415, Lawrence W. Newman & Richard D. Hill eds. (2nd ed., Juris 2008), (cited: RAESCHKE-KESSLER, Witness Conferencing).

RAINEY BERNADETTE / WICKS ELIZABETH / OVEY CLARE, Jacobs, White, and Ovey: *The European Convention on Human Rights* (7th ed., Oxford University Press 2017), (cited: RAINES et al.).

RAUSCHER THOMAS, *Beweisaufnahme nach der Verordnung (EG) Nr. 1206/2001, Art. 1 Anwendungsbereich*, in: *Münchner Kommentar zur Zivilprozeßordnung: mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und Nebengesetzen*, Band 3, Thomas Rauscher & Wolfgang Krüger eds. (5th ed., C.H. Beck 2017), (cited: MüKo-RAUSCHER).

RAWDING NIGEL / FULLELOVE GREGORY / MARTIN PENNY, *International Arbitration in England: A Procedural Overview*, in: *Arbitration in England with chapters on Scotland and Ireland*, 398, Julian D.M. Lew, Harris Bor, Gregore Fullelove & Joanne Greenaway eds. (Kluwer Law International 2013), (cited: RAWDING et al.).

REED LUCY, Chapter 2, §1.04: Sanctions Available for Arbitrators to Curtail Guerrilla Tactics, in: *Guerilla Tactics in International Arbitration*, 93, Günther J. Horvath & Stephan Wilske eds. (Kluwer Law International 2013).

REINER ANDREAS / ASCHAUER CHRISTIAN, Chapter II – ICC Rules –, in: *Institutional Arbitration: Article-by-Article Commentary* 25, Rolf A. Schütze ed. (C.H. Beck 2013), (cited: SCHÜTZE-REINER/ASCHAUER).

REYMOND CLAUDE, Civil Law and Common Law Procedures: Which is the More Inquisitorial? A Civil Lawyer's Response, 5 Arb. Int. 357 (1989).

RISSE JÖRG / HALLER HEIKO, Die “IBA-Regeln” zur Beweisaufnahme in der internationalen Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, in: *Beweis im Schiedsverfahren*, 115, Walter Eberl ed. (Nomos 2015).

RISSE JÖRG, Section 27 – Establishing the Facts, in: Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Stefan M. Kröll & Patricia Nacimiento eds. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: BÖCKSTIEGEL et al.-RISSE).

ROBERTSON ANN R. / FRIEDMAN SCOTT L., Coming To America: The Use of 28 U.S.C. §1782, 25 J. Arb. Stud. 59 (2015).

RODRIGUEZ RODRIGO / VOLKEN PAUL, Art. 11a, in: Zürcher Kommentar zum IPRG, Band I, Art. 1-108, Markus Müller-Chen & Corinne Widmer Lüchinger eds. (3rd ed., Schulthess 2018), (cited: ZK-RODRIGUEZ/VOLKEN).

ROGERS CATHERINE A., Ethics in International Arbitration (Oxford University Press 2014).

ROSELL JOSÉ, Arbitration Costs as Relief and/or Damages, 28 J. Int'l Arb. 115 (2011).

ROTHSTEIN DANIEL J., A Proposal to Clarify U.S. Law on Judicial Assistance in Taking Evidence for International Arbitration, 19 Am. Rev. Int'l Arb. 61 (2008).

RÜEDE THOMAS / HADENFELDT REIMER, Schweizerisches Schiedsgerichtsrecht nach Konkordat und IPRG (2nd ed., Schulthess 1993).

RÜETSCHI SVEN, Art. 152, 162, 164, 165, 166, 167, in: Berner Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung, Band II, Artikel 150-352 ZPO, Artikel 400-406 ZPO, Heinz Hausheer & Hans P. Walther eds. (Stämpfli 2012), (cited: BK-RÜETSCHI).

RÜTZEL STEFAN / WEGEN GERHARD / WILSKE STEPHAN, Commercial Dispute Resolution in Germany – Litigation Arbitration Mediation – (2nd ed., C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: RÜTZEL et al.).

SAATHOFF ARNO, Möglichkeiten und Verfahren gerichtlicher Hilfe bei der Beweisaufnahme zugunsten fremdnationaler Handelsschiedsgerichtsverfahren mit internationaler Beteiligung: Untersuchung im Recht der Vereinigten Staaten von Amerika und der Bundesrepublik Deutschland (Universität Köln 1987).

SACHS KLAUS / LÖRCHER TORSTEN, §1050 - Court Assistance in Taking Evidence and Other Judicial Acts, in: Arbitration in Germany: The Model Law in Practice, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Stefan M. Kröll & Patricia Nacimiento eds. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: BÖCKSTIEGEL et al.-SACHS/LÖRCHER).

- SACHS KLAUS / NIEDERMAIER TILMANN, Die Rechtsfigur der “adverse inference” in der internationalen Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, in: Beweis im Schiedsverfahren, 129, Walter Eberl ed. (Nomos 2015).
- SAENGER INGO, §1050, in: Zivilprozessordnung: Familienverfahren, Gerichtsverfassung, Europäisches Verfahrensrecht: Handkommentar, Ingo Saenger ed. (7th ed., Nomos 2019), (cited: HK-SAENGER).
- SALOMON CLAUDIA T. / FRIEDRICH SANDRA, Obtaining and Submitting Evidence in International Arbitration in the United States, 24 Am. Rev. Int'l Arb. 549 (2013), (cited: SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, Obtaining Evidence).
- SALOMON CLAUDIA T. / FRIEDRICH SANDRA, Witnesses, Subpoenas, Documents and the Relationship Between the FAA and State Law, in: International Arbitration in the United States, 317, Laurence Shore et al. eds. (Kluwer Law International 2017), (cited: SALOMON/FRIEDRICH, FAA).
- SANTACROCE FABIO G., The emergency arbitrator: a full-fledged arbitrator rendering an enforceable decision?, 31 Arb. Int. 283 (2015).
- SCHAEFER JAN K., Court Assistance in Arbitration - Some Observations on the Critical Stand-by Function of the Courts, 43 Pepp. L. Rev. 521 (2016).
- SCHARDT RAMONA, Neue Regelungen der DIS-Schiedsgerichtsordnung zur Steigerung der Verfahrenseffizienz, 17 SchiedsVZ 28 (2019).
- SCHELHAAS HARRIET, Article 7.2.4, in: Commentary on the UNIDROIT Principles of International Commercial Contracts (PICC), 909, Stefan Vogelauer ed. (2nd ed., Oxford University Press 2015), (cited: VOGELAUER-SCHELHAAS).
- SCHERER MATTHIAS, SWITZERLAND, in: Arbitration Guide: IBA Arbitration Committee (2018).
- SCHERER MAXI / RICHMAN LISA / GERBAY RÉMY, Arbitrating under the 2014 LCIA Rules: A User’s Guide (Kluwer Law International 2015), (cited: SCHERER et al.).
- SCHLOSSER PETER
– §1033, 1042, 1050, in: Kommentar zur Zivilprozessordnung: ZPO, Band 10: §§1025-1066, Reinhard Bork & Herbert Roth eds. (23 ed., Mohr Siebeck 2014), (cited: STEIN/JONAS-SCHLOSSER).

- Die lange Leine vom Gericht zum Schiedsgericht: Ein französisches Lehrstück für Deutschland, die Schweiz und manch' andere, in: *Festschrift für Walther J. Habscheid zum 65. Geburtstag, 6. April 1989*, 273, Walter F. Lindacher, Dieter Pfaff, Günther H. Roth, Peter Schlosser & Eberhard Wieser eds. (Giesecking 1989).
- SCHMID ERNST F., Art. 162, 164, 166, in: *Basler Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO)*, Karl Spühler, Luca Tenchio & Dominik In-fanger eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2017), (cited: BSK-SCHMID).
- SCHMIDT-AHRENTS NILS / DE JONG ARON, The “Right” Place of Arbitration: How Germany Might Profit from Brexit, 16 *SchiedsVZ* 281 (2018).
- SCHNEIDER MARCEL, Funktionen des staatlichen Richters am Sitz des internationalen Schiedsgerichts gemäss 12. Kapitel des IPRG (DIKE 2009).
- SCHNEIDER MICHAEL E. / SCHERER MATTHIAS, Art. 182, 184, in: *Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht*, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-SCHNEIDER/SCHERER).
- SCHNEIDER MICHAEL E., President’s Message: Yet another opportunity to waste time and money on procedural skirmishes: The IBA Guidelines on Party Representation, 31 *ASA Bull.* 497 (2013).
- SCHOIBL NORBERT A., Europäische Rechtshilfe bei der Beweisaufnahme in Civil- und Handelssachen durch ordentliche Gerichte für Schiedsgerichte, in: *Festschrift für Walter H. Rechberger zum 60. Geburtstag*, 513, Ludwig Bittner, Thomas Klicka, Georg E. Kodek & Paul Oberhammer eds. (Springer 2005).
- SCHOTT MARKUS / COURVOISIER MAURICE, Art. 186, in: *Basler Kommentar: Internationales Privatrecht*, Heinrich Honsell, Nedim P. Vogt, Anton K. Schnyder, Stephen V. Berti eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2013), (cited: BSK-SCHOTT/COURVOISIER).
- SCHRAMM DOROTHÉE / GEISINGER ELLIOTT / PINSOLLE PHILIPPE, in *Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards: A Global Commentary on the New York Convention*, Herbert Kronke, Patricia Nacimiento, Dirk Otto & Nicola C. Port eds. (Kluwer Law International 2010), (cited: KRONKE et al.-SCHRAMM et al.).

SCHUMACHER HUBERTUS, Grundsätze der Beweiserhebung im Schiedsverfahren, in: Beweiserhebung im Schiedsverfahren, 1, Hubertus Schumacher ed. (Manz'sche Verlags- und Universitätsbuchhandlung 2011).

SCHÜTZE ROLF A.

- § 1033, 1050, in: Zivilprozessordnung und Nebengesetze: Grosskommentar, Elfter Band, §§916-1066, Bernhard Wieczorek & Rolf A. Schütze eds. (4th ed., De Gruyter 2018), (cited: WIECZOREK/SCHÜTZE-SCHÜTZE).
- Die Ermessensgrenzen des Schiedsgerichts bei der Bestimmung der Beweisregeln, 4 SchiedsVZ 1 (2006), (cited: SCHÜTZE, Ermessensgrenzen).
- Rechtsverfolgung im Ausland: Prozessführung vor ausländischen Gerichten und Schiedsgerichten (5th ed., De Gruyter 2016), (cited: SCHÜTZE, Rechtsverfolgung).

SCHWAB KARL H. / WALTER GERHARD, Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit: Systematischer Kommentar zu den Vorschriften der Zivilprozessordnung, des Arbeitsgerichtsgesetzes, der Staatsverträge und der Kostengesetze über das privatrechtliche Schiedsgerichtsverfahren (7th ed., C.H. Beck 2005).

SCHWEIZER MARK, Vorsorgliche Beweisabnahme nach schweizerischer Zivilprozessordnung und Patentgesetz, 21-22 ZZZ 3 (2010).

SERAGLINI CHRISTOPHE / ORTSCHEIDT JÉRÔME, Droit de l'arbitrage interne et international (Lextenso 2013).

SHARPE JEREMY K., Drawing Adverse Inferences from the Non-production of Evidence, 22 Arb. Int. 549 (2006).

SHEPPARD AUDLEY, Introduction, S. 2, 34, 41, 43, 44, 68, in: Concise International Arbitration, Loukas A. Mistelis ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015).

SHORE LAURENCE / CHENG TAI-HENG / LA CHUISA JENELLE / SCHANER LAWRENCE S. / SENN MARA, Introduction, in: International Arbitration in the United States, 3, Laurence Shore et al. eds. (Kluwer Law International 2017), (cited: SHORE et al.).

SINCLAIR ANTHONY C., Differences in the Approach to Witness Evidence Between the Civil and Common Law Traditions, in: The Art of Advocacy in International Arbitration, 23, Doak Bishop & Edward G. Kehoe eds. (JurisNet 2010).

SLAPPER GARY / KELLY DAVID, The English Legal System (18th ed., Routledge 2017).

SMIT HANS

- American Assistance to Litigation in Foreign and International Tribunals: Section 1782 of Title 28 of the U.S.C. Revisited, 25 Syracuse J. Int'l L. & Com. 1 (1998), (cited: SMIT, Section 1782 Revisited).
- Assistance Rendered by the United States in Proceedings Before International Tribunals, 62 Colum. L. Rev. 1264 (1962), (cited: SMIT, International Tribunals).
- International Aspects of Federal Civil Procedure, 61 Colum. L. Rev. 1031 (1961), (cited: SMIT, International Aspects).
- International Litigation Under the United States Code, 65 Colum. L. Rev. 1015 (1965), (cited: SMIT, International Litigation).

SOLOMON DENNIS, International Commercial Arbitration: The New York Convention, in: International Commercial Arbitration: International Conventions, Country Reports and Comparative Analysis, 45, Stephan Balthasar ed. (C.H. Beck 2016), (cited: BALTHASAR-SOLOMON).

SOURGENS FRÉDÉRIC G. / DUGGAL KABIR A.N. / LAIRD IAN A., Evidence in International Investment Arbitration (Oxford University Press 2018), (cited: SOURGENS et al.).

STACHER MARCO

- Einführung in die internationale Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit der Schweiz, (DIKE 2015).
- Art. 356, in: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung ZPO: Kommentar, Alexander Brunner, Dominik Gasser & Ivo Schwander eds. (2nd ed., DIKE 2016), (cited: DIKE-STACHER).

STAUGHTON CHRISTOPHER, Civil Law and Common Law Procedures: Which is the More Inquisitorial? A Common Lawyer's Response, 5 Arb. Int. 351 (1989).

STEINBRÜCK BEN

- Die Unterstützung ausländischer Schiedsverfahren durch staatliche Gerichte: Eine rechtsvergleichende Untersuchung des deutschen, österreichischen, englischen, schweizerischen, französischen und US-amerikanischen Schiedsrechts (Mohr Siebeck 2009).
- Internationale Zuständigkeit deutscher Gerichte für selbständige Beweisverfahren in Schiedssachen (zu OLG Düsseldorf, 7.2.2008 – I-20 W 152/07, unten, S. 442, Nr. 29), 8 IPrax 424 (2010), (cited: STEINBRÜCK, Note on OLG Düsseldorf, 7 February 2008, I-20 W 152/07, in: 8 IPrax 424 (2010)).

- STRONG, Discovery Under 28 U.S.C. § 1782: Distinguishing International Commercial Arbitration and International Investment Arbitration, 1 Stan. J. Complex Litig. 295 (2013).
- SUSSMAN EDNA, Ethics in International Arbitration: Soft Law Guidance for Arbitrators and Party Representatives, in: Soft Law in International Arbitration, 239, Lawrence W. Newmann & Michael J. Radine eds. (JurisNet 2014).
- SUTCLIFFE JONATHAN / WIRTH MARKUS, Witness Evidence: Written or Oral, Who asks the Questions, in: The Taking of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration, 33, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Klaus-Peter Berger & Jens Bredow eds., Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, Band 26 (Carl Heymanns Verlag 2010).
- SUTTON DAVID ST. J. / GILL JUDITH / GEARING MATTHEW, Russell on Arbitration, (24th ed., Sweet & Maxwell 2015), (cited: SUTTON et al.).
- SWISS CHAMBERS' ARBITRATION INSTITUTION, Swiss Chambers' Arbitration Institution: Commented Statistics 2018, (cited: SCAI STATISTICS (2018)).
- TERCIER PIERRE / BERSHEDA TETIANA, Document Production in Arbitration: A Civil Law Viewpoint, in: The Search for "Truth" in Arbitration, 77, Markus Wirth, Christina Rouvinez & Joachim Knoll eds., ASA Special Series No. 35 (Juris 2011).
- THORENS-ALADJEM SOPHIE, Le juge d'appui en matière d'arbitrage interne et international, 35 ASA Bull. 530 (2017).
- TIMÁR KINGA / KRAAYVANGER JAN, U.S. Discovery in Aid of Foreign Arbitration – A Journey through the Jungle of U.S. Court Rulings – and a Guide, 10 SchiedsVZ 66 (2012).
- TOMS CHRISTIAN, National Report of United Kingdom, in Working Session "State Court Participation in Arbitration – Help or Hindrance?" (AIJA Annual Congress 2015).
- TRITTMANN ROLF, Basics and Differences of the Continental and Common Law System and State Court Proceedings, in: The Taking of Evidence in International Commercial Arbitration, 15, Karl-Heinz Böckstiegel, Klaus-Peter Berger & Jens Bredow eds., Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Institution für Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit, Band 26 (Carl Heymanns Verlag 2010).
- UHLMANN FELIX, Art. 90, in: Basler Kommentar: Bundesgerichtsgesetz, Marcel A. Niggli, Peter Uebersax, Hans Wiprächtiger & Lorenz Kneubühler eds. (3rd. ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2018), (cited: BSK-UHLMANN).

- UNCITRAL NYC GUIDE**, Online Guide on the Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards, 1958 (New York), (cited: **UNCITRAL NYC GUIDE**).
- UNCITRAL YB (1968-1970)**, UNCITRAL Yearbook, Volume I, 1968-1970 (cited: **UNCITRAL YB (1968-1970)**).
- UNCITRAL, Case Law (2012)**, 2012 Digest of Case Law on the Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration (cited: **UNCITRAL, Case Law (2012)**).
- VALENTINE SARAH**, Ruth Bader Ginsburg: An Annotated Bibliography, 7 N.Y.C. L. Rev. 391 (2004).
- VAN HOUTTE VERA**, Chapter 5. Adverse Inferences in International Arbitration, in: Written Evidence and Discovery in International Arbitration: New Issues and Tendencies, 195, Teresa Giovannini & Alexis Mourre eds., ICC Dossiers Vol. 6 (Kluwer Law International 2009).
- VÁRADY TIBOR / BARCELÓ JOHN J. / KRÖLL STEFAN / VON MEHREN ARTHUR T.**, International Commercial Arbitration: A Transnational Perspective (6th ed., West Academic Publishing 2015), (cited: **VÁRADY et al.**).
- VARGA ISTVÁN**, Beweiserhebung in transatlantischen Schiedsverfahren: Eine Suche nach Kompromissen zwischen deutscher und US-amerikanischer Beweisrechtstradition (Nomos 2006).
- VEIT MARC D.**, Chapter 2, Part II: Commentary on Chapter 12 PILS, Article 184 [Procedure: taking of evidence], in: Arbitration in Switzerland: The Practitioner's Guide, Manuel Arroyo ed. (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2018), (cited: **ARROYO-VEIT**).
- VERBIST HERMAN / SCHÄFER ERIK / IMHOOS CHRISTOPHE**, ICC Arbitration in Practice (2nd ed., Kluwer Law International 2015).
- VITTOZ BORRIS**, Recalcitrant witnesses summoned by the State court at the seat of the arbitration to attend an arbitration hearing: Note on the Ordinance of 9 February 2015 issued by the Tribunal de première instance in Geneva, 33 ASA Bull. 921 (2015).
- VOIT WOLFGANG**, §1033, 1050, in: Zivilprozessordnung: mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz: Kommentar, Hans-Joachim Musielak & Wolfgang Voit eds. (16th ed., Franz Vahlen 2019), (cited: **MUSIELAK/VOIT-VOIT**).

VON ENZBERG DONATA / ROHRSSEN BENEDIKT, National Report for Germany, in Working Session “State Court Participation in Arbitration – Help or Hindrance?” (AIJA Annual Congress 2015).

VON HEIN JAN, Art. 1 EG-BewVO, in: Europäisches Zivilprozess- und Kollisionsrecht: EUZPR/EuIPR: Kommentar: Band II, Thomas Rauscher ed. (4th ed., Dr. Otto Schmidt 2015), (cited: RAUSCHER-VON HEIN).

VON SEGESSION GEORG

- Vorsorgliche Massnamen im Internationalen Schiedsprozess, 25 ASA Bull. 473 (2007), (cited: VON SEGESSION, Interim Measures).
- Witness Preparation in International Commercial Arbitration, 20 ASA Bull. 222 (2002), (cited: VON SEGESSION, Witness Preparation).

VON SELLE DIRK, §142, in: BeckOK ZPO, Volkert Vorwerk & Christian Wolf eds. (32nd ed., C.H. Beck 2019), (cited: BeckOK-VON SELLE).

WAGNER GERHARD / BÜLAU MAXIMILIAN, Procedural Orders by Arbitral Tribunals: In the Stays of Party Agreements?, 11 SchiedsVZ 6 (2013).

WAGNER GERHARD, Europäisches Beweisrecht – Prozessrechtsharmonisierung durch Schiedsgerichte, 9 ZeuP 441 (2001).

WAINCYMER JEFFREY

- Procedure and Evidence in International Arbitration (Kluwer Law International 2012), (cited: WAINCYMER, Evidence).
- Regulatory Developments in the Control of Counsel in International Arbitration: The IBA Guidelines on Party Representation in International Arbitration and the New LCIA Rules and Annex, 30 Arb. Int. 513 (2014), (cited: WAINCYMER, Regulatory Developments).

WALDMANN BERNHARD, Art. 29a, in: Basler Kommentar: Bundesverfassung, Bernhard Waldmann, Eva M. Belser & Astrid Epiney eds. (Helbing Lichtenhahn 2015), (cited: BSK-WALDMANN).

WALTER GERHARD / BOSCH WOLFGANG / JÜRGEN BRÖNNIMANN, Internationale Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit in der Schweiz: Kommentar zu Kapitel 12 des IPRG-Gesetzes (Stämpfli 1991), (cited: WALTER et al.).

WALZ CLAUDIA, Interim Measures: Seeking them before Arbitral Tribunals or Courts?, in: Selected Papers on International Arbitration, 143, Vol. 4 (Stämpfli 2018).

- WEBER-STECHER URS, Art. 356, in: Basler Kommentar: Schweizerische Zivilprozessordnung (ZPO), Karl Spühler, Luca Tenchio & Dominik Infanger eds. (3rd ed., Helbing Lichtenhahn 2017), (cited: BSK-WEBER-STECHER).
- WILLISSEGGER DANIEL, Grundstruktur des Zivilprozesses: Grundlagen, Grundelemente, Gerichtsverfahren (Schulthess 2012).
- WILSKE STEPHAN / FOX TODD J., F. Action Before State Courts (Article II (3)), in: New York Convention: Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards of 10 June 1958: Commentary, Reinmar Wolff ed. (2nd ed., C.H. Beck 2018), (cited: WOLFF-WILSKE/FOX).
- WILSKE STEPHAN / MARKERT LARS, § 1050, 1065, in: BeckOK ZPO, Volkert Vorwerk & Christian Wolf eds. (32nd ed., C.H. Beck 2019), (cited: BeckOK-WILSKE/MARKERT).
- WIRTH MARKUS / HOFFMANN-NOWOTNY URS, Rechtshilfe deutscher Gerichte zugunsten ausländischer Schiedsgerichte bei der Beweisaufnahme – ein Erfahrungsbericht, 3 SchiedsVZ 66 (2005).
- WIRTH MARKUS, Ihr Zeuge, Herr Rechtsanwalt! Weshalb Civil-Law-Schiedsrichter Common-Law-Verfahrensrecht anwenden, 1 SchiedsVZ 9 (2003).
- WOLFF REINMAR, Judicial Assistance by German Courts in Aid of International Arbitration, in: International Arbitration and the Courts, 233, Devin Bray & Heather L. Bray eds. (JurisNet 2015).
- WYSS LUKAS F., Vorsorgliche Massnahmen und Beweisaufnahme – die Rolle des Staatlichen Richters bei Internationalen Schiedsverfahren aus Schweizer Sicht, 9 SchiedsVZ 1964 (2011).
- ZUBERBÜHLER TOBIAS / HOFMANN DIETER / OETIKER CHRISTIAN / ROHNER THOMAS, IBA Rules of Evidence: Commentary on the IBA Rules on the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration (Schulthess 2012), (cited: ZUBERBÜHLER et al.).
- ZWEIGERT KONRAD / KÖTZ HEIN, Einführung in die Rechtsvergleichung auf dem Gebiet des Privatrechts (3rd ed., J.C.B. Mohr (Paul Siebeck) 1996).

Table of Cases

The numbers in bold letters refer to the respective page number.

I. Arbitral Tribunals

ICC

ICC Case No. 13490, Procedural Order of July 2006,

25 ICC Bulletin 8 (2014). **74**

Manufacturer v. Buyer,

ICC Case No. 8486 (1996), Y.B. Comm. Arb. 172 (1999). **68**

Agent v. Principal and Managing director of principal,

ICC Case No. 7453 (1994), Y.B. Comm. Arb. 107 (1997). **68**

Buyer Y v. Seller A and others,

ICC Case No. 7661 (1996), Y.B. Comm. Arb. 163 (1997). **68**

ICSID

Methanex Corporation v. Government of the United States of America,

ICSID, 3 August 2005. **61**

Waste Management, Inc. v. United Mexican States,

ICSID, ARB (AF)/00/3, 30 April 2004. **97**

Azinian et al. v. United Mexican States,

ICSID, ARB (AF)/92/2, 1 November 1999. **43**

IUSCT

Frederica Lincoln Riahi v. Government of the Islamic Republic of Iran,

IUSCT, 27 February 2003, 600-485-1. **61**

Houston Contracting Co. v. National Iranian Oil Co. IUSCT,

22 July 1988, 378-173-3. **61**

II. European Court of Human Rights

Mutu et Pechstein v. Switzerland,

ECtHR, no. 40575/10 and 67674/10, 2 October 2018. **112**

Nourredine Tabbane v. Switzerland,

ECtHR, no. 41069/12, 24 March 2016. **106, 112, 114, 238**

Eiffage S.A. et autres v. Switzerland,

ECtHR, no. 1742/05, 15 September 2009. **112**

Tamminen v. Finland,

ECtHR, no. 40847/98, 15 June 2004. **111**

- Transport Fluviais do Sado S.A. v. Portugal,
 ECtHR, no. 35943/02, 16 December 2003. **112**
- Roland Volkmer v. Germany,
 ECtHR, no. 39799/98, 22 November 2001. **111**
- Osmo Suovaneniemi and others v. Finland,
 ECtHR, no. 31737/96, 23 February 1999. **112**
- Dombo Beheer B.V. v. the Netherlands,
 ECtHR, App no 14448/88, 27 October 1993. **111**
- Ruiz-Mateos v. Spain,
 ECtHR, no. 12952/87, 23 June 1993. **111**
- Pfeifer and Plankl v. Austria,
 ECtHR, no. 10802/84, 25 February 1992. **112**
- Schenk v. Switzerland,
 ECtHR, no. 10862/84, 12 July 1988. **111**
- R v. Switzerland,
 ECtHR, no. 10881/84, 4 March 1987. **114**
- Lithgow and Others v. the United Kingdom,
 ECtHR, no. 9006/80; 9262/81; 9263/81; 9265/81; 9266/81; 9313/81;
 9405/81, 8 July 1986. **111**
- Bramelid and Malmström v. Sweden,
 ECtHR, no. 8588/79 and 8589/79, 12 December 1983. **112**
- Deweert v. Belgium,
 ECtHR, no. 6903/75, 27 February 1980. **112**

III. Countries

Canada

- B.F. Jones Logistics Inc. et al. v. Rolko et al.,
 Ontario Superior Court of Justice, Canada, 24 August 2004,
 CanLII 21276. **94**
- Delphi Petroleum Inc. v. Derin Shipping and Training Ltd.,
 Federal Court of Canada, 3 December 1993,
 in: UNCITRAL; A/CN.9/SER.C/ABSTRACTS/4. **94**

England and Wales

Court of Appeal of England and Wales

- CGU International Insurance Plc & Ors v. AstraZeneca Insurance Co Ltd
 [2006] EWCA 1340 (Civ.). **180**
- Lord Borough of Southwark v. Kofi-Adu
 [2006] EWCA 28 (Civ.). **11**

Tajik Aluminium Plant v. Hydro Aluminium AS & Ors

[2005] EWCA 1218 (Civ.). **173**

Cetelem SA v. Roust Holding Ltd

[2005] EWCA 618 (Civ.). **174, 180**

Davies v. Eli Lilly & Ors,

[1987] EWCA 1 WLR 428. **13**

High Court of Justice of England and Wales

DTEK Trading S.A. v. Morozov & Anor

[2017] EWHC 94 (Comm.). **176**

Gerald Metals SA v. Timis & Ors

[2016] EWHC 2327. **179**

AB v. CD

[2014] EWHC 1 (QB). **174**

Cruz City 1 Mauritius Holding v. Unitech Ltd. & Ors

[2014] EWHC 3704 (Comm.). **176**

Euroil Ltd v. Cameroon Offshore Petroleum Sarl

[2014] EWHC 12 (Comm.). **174**

PJSC Vseukrainskyi Aktionernyi Bank v. Sergey Maksimov & Ors

[2013] EWHC 3203 (Comm.). **176**

B v. S

[2011] EWHC 691 (Comm.). **171**

Schwebel v. Schwebel

[2010] EWHC 3280 (TCC). **271**

Travelers Insurance Co Ltd v. Countrywide Surveyors Ltd

[2010] EWHC 2455 (TCC). **174**

Stuart Peter and Anor v. Skylet Andrew

[2009] EWHC 1511 (QB). **173**

Pacific Maritime (Asia) Ltd. v. Holystone Overseas Ltd

[2007] EWHC 2319 (Comm.). **178**

Permasteelisa Japan KK v. Bouyguesstroi & Anor

[2007] EWHC 3508 (TCC). **178**

Starlight Shipping Co v. Tai Ping Insurance Co Ltd.

[2007] EWHC 1893 (Comm.). **174**

Norbrook Laboratories Ltd v. Tank

[2006] EWHC 1055 (Comm.). **170**

Assimina Maritime Ltd. v. Pakistan Shipping Corporation & Anor

[2004] EWHC 3005 (Comm.). **89, 173**

NB Three Shipping Ltd. v. Harebell Shipping Ltd

[2004] EWHC 2001 (Comm.). **179**

- South Tyneside Borough Council v. Wickes Building Supplies
[2004] EWHC 2428 (Comm.). 173
- World Trade Corporation v. C. Czarnikow Sugar Ltd
[2004] EWHC 2332 (Comm.). 271
- BNP Paribas v. Deloitte & Touche LLP
[2003] EWHC 2874 (Comm.). 173
- Commerce and Industry Co, Canada v. Certain Underwriters of Lloyds of London
[2002] EWHC 2 All ER. 175, 177, 178

France

Paris Court of Appeal

- Société Dresser-Rand Group Inc. v. Société Diana Capital I F.C.R.,
 Paris Court of Appeal, 28 February 2017, First Civil Chamber, 15/06036.
62
- M. Ch. Di Sabatino et autre v. Société Animated Ventures et autres,
 Paris Court of Appeal, 7 October 2014, Rev. Arb. 531 (2015). **154**
- Société Filali Film Alimentaire S.A.R.L v. Société Bielloni Convertin Spa,
 Paris Court of Appeal, 4 November 2014, Rev. Arb. 1037 (2014). **164**
- Société Otor Participations et autres v. Carlyle Holdings 1 et autre,
 Paris Court of Appeal, 7 October 2004, Rev. Arb. 737 (2005). **74**
- Société d'étude et représentations navales et industrielles (SOERNI)
 et autres v. Société Aire sea broker limited (ASB),
 Paris Court of Appeal, 8 July 2009, 08-16-025. **25**

Courts of Cassation

- Paris Court of Cassation, 19 March 2015, 2nd Civil Chamber, 14-14389. **158**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 10 September 2014, 1st Civil Chamber, 13-22400. **15**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 27 February 2014, 2nd Civil Chamber, 13-10013. **157**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 10 January 2013, 2nd Civil Chamber, 12-12375. **161**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 26 May 2011, 2nd Civil Chamber, 10-20048. **158**
- Institut national de la santé et de la recherche médicale (INSERM)
 v. Fondation Letten F. Saugstad,
 Paris Court of Cassation, 26 January 2011, 1st Civil Chamber, 09-10198. **154**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 6 October 2010, 1st Civil Chamber, 08-20563. **163**
- Etat d'Israël v. Société NIOC,
 Paris Court of Cassation, 1 February 2005, 1st Civil Chamber,
 Rev. Arb. 693 (2005). **116**
- Paris Court of Cassation, 30 March 2004, 1st Civil Chamber, 02-12259.
115, 154

- Paris Court of Cassation, 13 June 2002, 2nd Civil Chamber, 00-20077. **153**
Paris Court of Cassation, 11 October 1995, 2nd Civil Chamber, 92-20496. **158**
Paris Court of Cassation, 11 April 1995, Comm. Chamber, 92-20985. **158**
Paris Court of Cassation, 18 February 1986, 2nd Civil Chamber, 84-10620. **161**

Court of First Instance

- Société Pangee v. Société Fancefert,
Paris High Court, 13 July 1999, Rev. Arb. 625 (1995). **154**

Germany

- OLG Köln, 6 July 2012, 19 Sch 8/11. **277**
OLG Frankfurt am Main, 17 February 2011, 26 Sch 13/10
(search for '26 Sch 13/10'). **147, 148**
OLG Brandenburg, 16 February 2011, 13 U 11/10. **140**
OLG Düsseldorf, 7 February 2008, I-20 W 152/07, 8 IPRAx 424 (2010). **140**
OLG Karlsruhe, 14 September 2007, 10 Sch 01/07. **270**
OLG München, 15 March 2006, 34 Scho6/05. **277**

Hong Kong

- Vibroflotation A.G. v. Express Builders Co. Ltd., High Court of Hong Kong,
15 August 1994, in: UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/SER.C/ABSTRACTS/5. **94**

Singapore

- Dongwoo Mann + Hummel Co. Ltd. v. Mann + Hummel GmbH
[2008] 3 SLR 871, SGHC 67. **62**

Switzerland

Swiss Federal Tribunal (published decisions)

- DFT 144 III 120. **274**
DFT 143 IV 380. **271**
DFT 143 III 578. **266**
DFT 143 III 297. **272**
DFT 143 III 193. **105**
DFT 142 III 521. **257, 267**
DFT 142 III 360. **64, 106, 113, 267, 268, 271, 272, 273**
DFT 142 II 324. **259**
DFT 142 III 284. **271**
DFT 142 III 230. **258, 264**
DFT 141 III 444. **258, 261**
DFT 141 III 433. **240**

- DFT 141 III 395. **260**
DFT 141 III 229. **274, 275**
DFT 141 I 172. **105**
DFT 140 III 278. **275**
DFT 140 III 264. **64, 248**
DFT 138 III 322. **274**
DFT 138 III 270. **258**
DFT 138 III 76. **230**
DFT 136 III 605. **266**
DFT 136 III 345. **275**
DFT 135 III 334. **266**
DFT 134 III 186. **108**
DFT 134 I 140. **234, 273**
DFT 133 III 629. **260**
DFT 133 III 295. **272**
DFT 133 III 235. **107, 108, 236, 272**
DFT 133 III 139. **107, 269**
DFT 132 III 389. **274**
DFT 132 III 291. **10, 11, 243, 244, 245**
DFT 131 I 153. **234, 273**
DFT 130 III 35. **107**
DFT 130 III 235. **106**
DFT 130 II 425. **273**
DFT 129 III 445. **275**
DFT 129 II 183. **261**
DFT 128 III 330. **258**
DFT 128 III 234. **106**
DFT 128 III 191. **275**
DFT 127 III 576. **106, 107, 273, 274**
DFT 126 III 249. **275**
DFT 124 I 241. **235**
DFT 121 III 331. **107, 273, 274**
DFT 121 I 81. **258**
DFT 119 II 386. **106, 266, 273**
DFT 118 Ia 20. **254, 258**
DFT 117 II 346. **21, 32, 106, 239, 271**
DFT 117 Ia 166. **113**
DFT 116 II 639. **273**
DFT 116 II 373. **108**
DFT 115 II 294. **258**

DFT 114 II 289. **272**

DFT 112 Ia 166. **113**

Swiss Federal Tribunal (unpublished decisions)

DFT 4A_424/2018 of 29 January 2019. **271**

DFT 4A_438/2018 of 17 January 2019. **266, 275**

DFT 4A_308/2018 of 23 November 2018. **275**

DFT 4A_508/2017 of 29 January 2018. **274**

DFT 4A_427/2017 of 22 January 2018. **64, 272, 273**

DFT 4A_315/2017 of 17 January 2018. **10, 245**

DFT 4A_450/2017 of 12 March 2018. **269**

DFT 4A_592/2017 of 5 December 2017. **272**

DFT 4A_312/2017 of 27 November 2017. **274**

DFT 4A_236/2017 of 24 November 2017. **268, 269, 275**

DFT 4A_277/2017 of 28 August 2017. **64, 273**

DFT 4A_532/2016 of 30 May 2017. **271, 274**

DFT 4A_405/2016 of 2 March 2017. **269**

DFT 4A_32/2016 of 20 December 2016. **274**

DFT 4A_342/2015 of 26 April 2016. **106, 107, 273**

DFT 4A_520/2015 of 16 December 2015. **267**

DFT 4A_392/2015 of 10 December 2015. **275**

DFT 4A_172/2015 of 29 September 2015. **106**

DFT 4A_246/2014 of 15 July 2015. **107, 113, 273**

DFT 4A_544/2014 of 24 February 2015. **107, 273**

DFT 4A_606/2013 of 2 September 2014. **107**

DFT 4A_178/2014 of 11 June 2014. **267, 273**

DFT 4A_304/2013 of 3 March 2014. **274**

DFT 4A_256/2013 of 19 November 2013. **221**

DFT 4A_214/2013 of 5 August 2013. **266**

DFT 4A_672/2012 of 23 April 2013. **268, 269**

DFT 4A_576/2012 of 28 February 2013. **257, 267**

DFT 4A_407/2012 of 20 February 2013. **269**

DFT 4A_335/2012 of 30 January 2013. **234**

DFT 4A_538/2012 of 17 January 2013. **266**

DFT 4A_214/2012 of 10 January 2013. **258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263**

DFT 4A_198/2012 of 14 December 2012. **113, 267**

DFT 4A_110/2012 of 9 October 2012. **257, 267**

DFT 4A_682/2011 of 31 May 2012. **274**

DFT 4A_360/2011 of 31 January 2012. **107, 269**

DFT 4A_528/2011 of 23 January 2012. **235**

- DFT 4A_238/2011 of 4 January 2012. **113, 238**
DFT 4A_424/2011 of 2 November 2011. **268**
DFT 4A_64/2011 of 1 September 2011. **261**
DFT 4A_46/2011 of 16 May 2011. **107**
DFT 4A_404/2010 of 19 April 2011. **113**
DFT 4A_402/2010 of 17 February 2011. **106**
DFT 4A_386/2010 of 3 January 2011. **107, 273, 275**
DFT 4A_279/2010 of 25 October 2010. **115**
DFT 2C_8/2010 of 4 October 2010. **15, 43**
DFT 4A_124/2010 of 4 October 2010. **277**
DFT 4A_43/2010 of 29 July 2010. **113**
DFT 4A_320/2009 of 2 June 2010. **113, 274**
DFT 4A_612/2009 of 10 February 2010. **113**
DFT 5A_171/2009 of 15 October 2009. **261**
DFT 4A_215/2008 of 23 September 2008. **258**
DFT 4A_539/2008 of 19 February 2008. **269**
DFT 4A_450/2007 of 9 January 2008. **63**
DFT 4A_399/2007 of 4 December 2007. **245, 246**
DFT 4C_379/2006 of 22 May 2007. **226**
DFT 2A.599/2006 of 5 April 2007. **248**
DFT 4A_2/2007 of 28 March 2007. **56, 63**
DFT 4P.335/2006 of 27 February 2007. **265**
DFT 4A_370/2007 of 21 February 2007. **113**
DFT 4P.105/2006 of 4 August 2006. **113**
DFT 5P.362/2005 of 19 May 2006. **258**
DFT 4P.23/2006 of 27 March 2006. **239, 271, 273**
DFT 4P.208/2004 of 14 December 2004. **268**
DFT 4P.115/2003 of 16 October 2003. **222**
DFT 4P.143/2001 of 18 September 2001. **275**
DFT 4P.22/1996 of 25 July 1997. **63**
DFT 5C.215/1994 of 21 March 1995. **115**
DFT 4P.217/1992 of 15 March 1993, 11 ASA Bull. 408 (1993). **234, 256, 264, 272**

Cantonal Supreme Courts

- Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich,
RU160027-O/U of 6 December 2016. **245**
Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich,
LB120081 of 31 October 2012, 112 ZR 149 (2013). **232**
Cantonal Supreme Court of Zurich,
decree of 23 October 2001, 101 ZR 257 (2002). **245**

Cantonal Commercial Court

Cantonal Commercial Court of Zurich,
HE180200-O of 9 August 2018, 117 ZR 230 (2018). **232**

District Court

District Court of Zurich,
FR160295-L/U of 27. May 2016, cited in BSK-Habegger,
Art. 375 PILA CH n. 76a. **242, 243, 255, 262**

USA*Supreme Court*

Ashcroft v. Iqbal,
556 U.S. 662 (2009). 10
Bell Atl. Corp. v. Twombly,
550 U.S. 544 (2007). 10
Intel Corp. v. Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.,
542 U.S. 241 (2004). 186, 188, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 202, 203,
204, 205, 208, 210

Société Nationale Industrielle Aérospatiale v. U.S. Dist. Court,
482 U.S. 522 (1987). 121, 208

Mitsubishi v. Soler Chrysler-Plymouth,
473 U.S. 614 (1985). 194
Scherk v. Alberto-Culver Co.,
417 U.S. 506 (1974). 194

Courts of Appeals (Cir. Courts)

Abdul Latif Jameel Trans. Co. v. Fede Corp.,
No. 19-5315 (6th Cir. 2019). 201
Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA),
747 F.3d 1262 (11th Cir. 2014). 198, 200
Kolel Beth Yechiel Mechil of Tartikov, Inc. v. YLL Irrevocable Trust,
729 F.3d 99 (2d Cir. 2013). 213

Brandi-Dohrn v. IKB Deutsche Industriebank AG,
673 F.3d 76 (2d Cir. 2012). 210
Consorcio Ecuatoriano v. JAS Forwarding (USA),
685 F.3d 987 (11th Cir. 2012). 200
St. Hugh Williams v. NCL (Bahamas) LTD.,
686 F.3d 1169 (11th Cir. 2012). 115
Comision Ejecutiva Hidroeleccctrica del Rio Lempa v. Nejapa Power
Company LLC, **341 F. App'x 821 (3d Cir. 2009). 199**

- El Paso Corp. v. La Comission Ejecutiva Hidroelectrica,
341 F. App'x. 31 (5th Cir. 2009). **198**
- Bautisa v. Star Cruises,
396 F.3d 1289 (11th Cir. 2005). **115**
- In re Edelmann,
295 F.3d 171 (2d Cir. 2002). **209**
- Deiulemar Compagna v. M/V Allegra,
198 F.3d 473 (4th Cir. 1999). **185**
- National Broadcasting Company Inc NBC v. Bear Stearns Co Inc SBC TV,
(2d Cir.1999), Y.B. Comm. Arb. 884 (1999); see also 165 F.3d 184.
184, 187, 189, 193, 195, 214
- Bayer,
146 F.3d 188 (3d Cir. 1998). **208**
- Metallgesellschaft AG v. Hodapp,
121 F.3d 77 (2d Cir. 1997). **210**
- Euromepa S.A. v. R. Esmerian, Inc.,
51 F.3d 1095 (2d Cir. 1995). **210, 211**
- Malev Hungarian Airlines,
964 F.2d 97 (2d Cir. 1992). **211, 252, 253**
- In re Letter of Request from the Crown Prosecution Service of the United
Kingdom, 870 F.2d 686 (D.C. Cir. 1989). **205**
- Request for Assistance from Ministry of Legal Affairs of Trinidad and
Tobaga petition Jospheh Azar,
848 F.2d 1151 (11th Cir. 1988). **187**
- Rhone Mediterranee Compagnia Francese di Assicurazioni e
Riassicurazioni v. Achille Lauro,
712 F.3d 50 (3d Cir. 1983). **115**
- Burton v. Bush,
614 F.2d 389 (4th Cir. 1980). **185**
- Letters Rogatory Issued by Director of Inspection of Government of India,
385 F.2d 1017 (2d Cir. 1967). **188**

District Courts

- In re Children's Inv. Fund Found. (UK), Sir Christopher Hohn,
& Axon Partners, LP,
No. 18-MC-104 (VSB) (S.D.N.Y. 2019). **198**
- In re Servotronics, Inc.,
No. 2:18-mc-00364-DCN (D.S.C. 2018). **201**
- Stati v. Republic of Kazakhstan,
302 F. Supp. 3d 187 (D.C.C. 2018). **277**

- N.V. v. Benxi Iron & Steel Am., Ltd.,
No. 17-cv-01287 (N.D. Ill. 2017). **198, 202**
- In re Government of the Lao People's Democratic Republic,
Case 1:15-MC-00018 (D. n. Mar. I. 2016). **197, 201**
- Kleimar N.V.,
220 F. Supp. 3d 517 (S.D.N.Y. 2016). **198, 200, 209**
- Qualcomm Inc.,
162 F. Supp. 3d 1029 (N.D. Cal. 2016). **209**
- TJAC Waterloo, LLC,
No. 3:16-mc-9CAN (N.D. Ind. 2016). **202**
- Grupo Unidos Por El Canal S.A.,
No. 14-mc-80277-JST (N.D. Cal. 2015). **201**
- Grupo Unidos Por El Canal, S.A.,
No. 14-mc-00226-MSK-KMT (D.C. Colo. 2015). **201, 211**
- In re Petition for Asia Mar. Pac. Ltd.,
253 F. Supp. 3d 701 (S.D.N.Y. 2015). **210**
- In re Owl Shipping, LLC,
No. 14-5655 (D.N.J. 2014). **198, 200**
- In re Dubey,
949 F.Supp. 2d 990 (C.D. Cal. 2013). **201**
- Finserve Group Ltd.,
No. 4:11-mc-2044-RBH, 4 (D.S.C. 2011). **201**
- Anwar v. Fairfield Greenwich Ltd.,
297 F.R.D. 223 (S.D.N.Y. 2013). **210**
- Caratube Intl. Oil Company, Llp.,
730 F. Supp. 2d 101 (D.C.C. 2010). **196, 206**
- Chevron Corp. v. Jonathan S. Shefftz,
754 F. Supp. 2d 254 (D. Mass. 2010). **197**
- In re Veiga,
746 F. Supp. 2d 8 (D.D.C. 2010). **210**
- Winning (HK) Shipping Co. Ltd.,
No. 09-22659 (S.D. Fla. 2010). **198, 200**
- In re Arbitration between Norfolk Southern Corporation et al.,
626 F. Supp. 2d 882 (N.D. Ill. 2009). **197, 201**
- Operadora DB Mexico, S.A. DE C.V.,
Case No. 6:09-cv-Orl-22GJK., 23 (M.D. Fla. 2009). **199, 200**
- Schindler Elevator Corp. v. Otis Elevator Co.,
657 F. Supp. 2d 525 (D.N.J. 2009). **208**
- Ukrnafta v. Carpatsky Petroleum Corp.,
2009 WL 2877156 (D. Conn. 2009). **197**

- Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica del Rio Lempa v. Nejapa Power Company, LLC,
WL 4809035 (D. Del. 2008). **198, 199**
- In re Babcock Borsig AG,
583 F. Supp. 2d 233 (D. Mass. 2008). **200, 204, 211**
- La Comision Ejecutiva Hidroelecctrica v. El Paso,
617 F. Supp. 2d 481 (S.D. Tex. 2008). **195, 198, 199**
- Hallmark Capital Corporation,
534 F. Supp. 2d 951 (D. Minn. 2007). **194, 200, 204**
- In re Godfrey,
526 F. Supp. 2d 417 (S.D.N.Y. 2007). **209**
- Oxus Gold PLC,
MISC 06-82 (D.N.J. 2007). **197**
- In re Order for Labor Court of Brazil,
466 F. Supp. 2d 1020 (N.D. Ill. 2006). **207**
- In re Roz Trading Ltd.,
469 F. Supp. 2d 1221 (N.D. Ga. 2006). **199, 204, 211**
- In re Application of the Petition of Compania Chilena de Navegacion,
2004 WL 1084243 (E.D.N.Y. 2004). **185**
- In re Ishiara Chemical Co., Ltd.,
121 F. Supp. 2d 209 (E.D.N.Y. 2000). **207**
- In re Application of National Broadcasting Co.,
1998 WL 1994 (S.D.N.Y. 1998). **189**
- Application of Medway Power Ltd.,
985 F. Supp. 402 (S.D.N.Y. 1997). **187, 188**
- In re Trygg-Hansa Ins. Co., Ltd.,
896 F. Supp. 624 (E.D. La. 1995). **188**
- Application of Technostroyexport,
853 F. Supp. 695 (S.D.N.Y. 1994). **188, 189, 194, 204**
- In Re Deiulemar di Navigazione S.P.A.,
153 F.R.D. 592 (E.D. La. 1994). **185**

Table of Legislation

I. Conventions

ECHR	Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms (1950), as amended in 2013.
ECICA	European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (1961).
European Convention on Information on Foreign Law	– European Convention on Information on Foreign Law (1968).
HEC	Convention of 18 March 1970 on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters (1970).
HCP	Convention of 1 March 1954 on civil procedure (1954).
ICSID Convention	– Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and Nationals of Other States (1966), as amended on 10 April 2006.
NYC	United Nations Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards (1958).
Panama Convention	– Inter-American Convention on International commercial arbitration (1975).
Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation between USA and Germany	– Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation between USA and Germany (1956).

II. European Law

EER	Council Regulation (EC) No 1206/2001 of 28 May 2001 on co-operation between the courts of the Member States in the taking of evidence in civil or commercial matters (2001).
Paris Agreement	– Agreement relating to Application of the European Convention on International Commercial Arbitration (1962).

III. Countries

Austria

CCP AU	Code of Civil Procedure (1895), as amended in 2018.
--------	---

Belgium

JC BE	Belgian Judicial Code (2013), as amended in 2019.
-------	---

Colombia

Const. CO Constitution of Colombia (1991), as amended in 2015.

Costa Rica

Const. CR Constitution of Costa Rica (1949), as amended in 2015.

El Salvador

Const. SV Constitution of El Salvador (1983), as amended in 2014.

England, Wales and Northern Ireland

Civil Evidence Act 1995 – Civil Evidence Act (1995),
as amended of 5 October 2015.

CPR 1998 The Civil Procedure Rules (1998),
as amended in 2019.

CPR 1998 Practice Directions – Practice Direction to the Civil Procedure
Rules (1998).

EAA 1996 English Arbitration Act (1996),
as amended of 20 February 2020.

EAA 1950 English Arbitration Act (1950).

High Court and County Courts Order 1996 – The High Court and County
Courts (Allocation of Arbitration Proceedings) Order (1996).

France

CCP FR Code of Civil Procedure (1973),
as amended on 1 January 2019.

Const. FR (1791) Constitution of France (1791).

Germany

CCA DE Courts Constitutions Act Germany (1975),
as amended on 12 December 2019.

CCP DE Code of Civil Procedure (1950),
as amended on 12 December 219.

Netherlands

CCP NL Code of Civil Procedure of the Netherlands (1986),
as amended on 1 January 2019.

Panama

Const. PA Constitution of Panama (1972), as amended in 2004.

Paraguay

Const. PY Constitution of Paraguay (1992), as amended in 2011.

Peru

Const. PE Constitution of Peru (1993), as amended in 2009.

Singapore

IAA SG International Arbitration Act (1994),
as amended on 21 November 2019.

Sweden

SAA SE Swedish Arbitration Act (1999),
as amended on 1 March 2019.

Switzerland

CCP CH Swiss Civil Procedure Code (2008),
as amended on 1 January 2020, SR 272.

Const. CH Federal Constitution of the Swiss Confederation (1999),
as amended on 1 January 2020, SR 101.

Federal Supreme Court Regulations – Federal Supreme Court Regulations (2006), SR. 173.110.131, as amended on 1 February 2018.

FSCA CH Federal Supreme Court Act (2005),
as amended on 1 January 2019, SR 173.110.

Intercantonal Arbitration Convention CH Intercantonal Arbitration Convention (1969), SR 220.300.

PILA CH Federal Act on Private International Law (1987),
as amended on 1 January 2020, SR 291.

SCC CH Swiss Criminal Code (1937),
as amended on 3 March 2020, SR 311.0.

Cantonal Legislation

Court and Authorities Organisation Act ZH – Court and Authorities Organisation Act in Civil and Criminal Procedure of the Canton of Zurich (2010), as amended on 26 February 2019.

Court Organisation Act BS – Court Organisation Act of the Canton of Basle City (2015), as amended on 23 December 2019.

Introductory Act BE – Introductory Act to Civil Procedure Code, Swiss Criminal Procedure Code and Swiss Juvenile Criminal Procedure Law of the Canton of Berne (2009),
as amended on 1 June 2013.

Judiciary Organisation Act GE – Judiciary Organisation Act of the Canton of Geneva (2011), as amended on 14 May 2019.

United States of America

FAA USA Federal Arbitration Act (1925), Title 9 USC,
as amended in 2018.

FRAP USA	Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure (1967), as amended on 1 December 2019.
FRCR USA	Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (1938), as amended on 1 December 2018.
USC	The Code of Laws of the United States of America (1994), as amended in 2018.
Uruguay	
Const. UY	Constitution of Uruguay (1985), as amended in 2004.
Venezuela	
Const. VE	Const. of Venezuela (1999), as amended in 2009.

Legislative Materials

I. Bibliography of United Nations Documents

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/669 (2009)

UNCITRAL, General Assembly, Report of Working Group II (Arbitration and Conciliation) on the work of its fiftieth session, A/CN.9/669, 9 March 2009.

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/WG.II/WP.108 (2000)

UNCITRAL, General Assembly, 32nd session, Settlement of Commercial Disputes, A/CN.9/WG.II/WP.108, 14 January 2000.

UNCITRAL, A/40/17 (1985)

UNCITRAL, General Assembly, Report of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law on the work of its eighteenth session, 3-21 June 1985, A/40/17.

UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the 325th meeting (1985)

UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for meetings devoted for the preparation of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, 309th Meeting, Article 25; Article 26, Article 27, 17 June 1985.

UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the 309th meeting (1985)

UNCITRAL, Summary Records of the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law for meetings devoted for the preparation of the UNCITRAL Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration, 309th Meeting, Article 5; Article 6, 5 June 1985.

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/264 (1985)

UNCITRAL, 18th session, 25 March 1985, A/CN.9/264, Analytical Commentary on Draft Text of a Model Law on International Commercial Arbitration.

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/263 (1985)

UNCITRAL, 18th session, Vienna, 19 March 1985, A/CN.9/263, Analytical compilation of comments by Governments and international organizations on the draft text of a model law on international commercial arbitration: Report of the Secretary-General.

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/246 (1984)

UNCITRAL, General Assembly, Report of the Working Group on International Contract Practices on the Work of its seventh session, 6 March 1984, A/CN.9/246.

UNCITRAL, A/CN.9/245 (1983)

UNCITRAL, General Assembly, Report of the Working Group on International Contract Practices on the Work of its sixth session,
22 September 1983, A/CN.9/245.

UNCITRAL, A./CN.9/WG.II/WP.44 (1983)

UNCITRAL, Working Group, 6th session, 29 August-9 September 1983.

II. Bibliography of the Hague Convention on International Private Law

HEC Questionnaire (2014)

Hague Conference on Private International Law, Synopsis of Responses to the Questionnaire of November 2013 Relating the Hague Convention of 18 March 1970 on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters (Evidence Convention), Revised Version (2014).

HEC Questionnaire (2009)

Hague Conference on Private International Law, Synopsis of Responses to the Questionnaire of May 2008 Relating the Hague Convention of 18 March 1970 on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters (Evidence Convention).

HEC Questionnaire (2004)

Hague Conference on Private International Law, Synopsis of the Replies to the Questionnaire Relating to the Hague Convention of 18 March 1970 on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters (Prel. Doc. No 4).

HEC Recommendations (2003)

Hague Conference on Private International Law, Conclusions and Recommendations Adopted by the Special Commission on the Practical Operation of the Hague Apostille, Evidence and Service Conventions (2003).

HEC Special Commission (1985)

Hague Conference on Private International Law: Report of the Special Commission on the Operation of the Hague Convention on the Taking of Evidence Abroad in Civil or Commercial Matters (1985), 24 International Legal Materials 1668 (1985).

III. European Law

ECtHR Annual Report (2018)

ECtHR Annual Report (2018).

EER Impact Assessment (2018)

European Commission, Impact Assessment, Proposal for Regulation of the European Parliament and the Council amending Council Regulation (EC) No 1206/2001 of 28 May 2001 on cooperation between the courts of the Member States in the taking of evidence in civil or commercial matters.

EU Study (2014)

Legal Instruments and Practice of Arbitration in the EU, Directorate-General for Internal Policies (2014).

EER Study (2007)

European Commission, Study on the Application of Council Regulation (EC) No 1206/2001, on Cooperation Between the Courts o the Member States in The Taking of Evidence in Civil or Commercial Matter (2007).

EER Report (2007)

Report from the Commission to the Council, the European Parliament and the European Economic and Social Committee on the application of the Council Regulation (EC) 1206/2001 of 28 May 2001 on cooperation between the courts of the Member States in the taking of evidence in civil or commercial matters (2007).

IV. Countries

England, Wales and Northern Ireland

EAA Supplementary Report (1997)

1997 Supplementary Report on the Arbitration Act 1996, Departemental Advisory Committee on Arbitration Law, January 1997.

EAA Report (1996)

1996 Report on the Arbitration Bill, Departmental Advisory Committee on Arbitration Law, February 1996.

France

Rapport to the Premier Minister (2011)

Rapport au Premier Ministre relatif au décret 2011-48 du 13 Janvier 2011 portant réforme de l'arbitrage, in: L'arbitrage: principes et pratiques 32, Les cahiers du Conseil National des Barreaux (Conseil National des Barreaux 2011).

Germany

Parliamentary Documentation 13/5274 (1996)

Deutscher Bundestag, Drucksache 13/5274 (1996).

Switzerland

FCDisp PILA CH Revision (2018)

Federal Council Dispatch About the Amendments of the PILA CH,
12th ch.: International Arbitration,

24 October 2018, Federal Law Gazette 2018, 7163 et seqq.

Rep. Consultation Procedure PILA CH (2018)

Revision of the PILA CH (International Arbitration), Report of the
Result of the Consultation Procedure, 8 August 2018.

Int. Arbitration in CH Study (2017) Internationale Schiedsgerichtsbarkeit in
der Schweiz: Eine Markt- und Regulierungskostenanalyse: Schluss-
bericht, School of Management and Law (2017).

Expl. Rep. Revision PILA CH (2017)

Explanatory Report of the Revision of the PILA CH (International
Arbitration), 11 January 2017.

Opinions Revision PILA CH (2017) Opinions of several Swiss organizations
about the Revision of the PILA CH (2017).

Guideline Judicial Assistance in Civil Matters CH (2013)

Federal Office of Justice, International Judicial Assistance in Civil
Matters: Guidelines, 3rd ed., January 2013.

FCDisp CCP CH (2006)

Federal Council Dispatch about the Federal Code of Civil Procedure,
28 June 2006, Federal Law Gazette 2006, 7221 et seqq.

FCDisp HEC CH (1993)

Federal Council Dispatch about the Approval of Four Conventions in
the Field of International Judicial Assistance in Civil- and Commercial
Matters, 8 September 1993, Federal Law Gazette 1993 III, 1261 et seqq.

United States of America

Advisory Committee FRCP USA (1970)

Notes of Advisory Committee on Rules—1970 Amendment.

Sen. Rep. 1580, 88th Cong. 2nd Sess. (1964)

Senate Report No. 1580, 88th Congress, 2nd Session (1964).

H.R. Rep. 1052, 88th Cong. 1st Sess. (1963)

House of Representatives Report No. 1052, 88th Congress, 1st Session.
(1963).

About the author

Lorenz Raess studied at the University of Fribourg, Switzerland, and at the University of Bordeaux, France. After completing his internships at the regional court of Bernese Jura-Seeland in Biel, Switzerland, a law firm in Berne and PricewaterhouseCoopers Ltd, he was admitted to the bar of the Canton of Berne in February 2017. He then worked at the chair for procedure (Civil Procedure Code/Debt Enforcement and Bankruptcy Law) and international private law of Professor Ramon Mabillard, and at the chair for infrastructure law and new technologies of Professor Martin Beyeler, at the University of Fribourg.

In April 2020, the Faculty of Law of the University of Fribourg accepted his dissertation with the grade summa cum laude. Today, he works at Ever-sheds Sutherland Ltd in Berne.

sui generis is an association dedicated to the promotion of free access to legal literature, court decisions, decisions of authorities and legislative materials. Since 2014, a legal open access journal has been published under the label *sui generis*. In 2019, the *sui generis* publishing house was founded.

sui generis book series

edited by Daniel Hürlimann and Marc Thommen

In this series, legal dissertations and postdoctoral theses, as well as textbooks and specialized publications, are made available to a wide audience. The books in this series are published in printed and online versions. The digital version is freely accessible worldwide (open access). The copyright remains with the authors; the works are published under a Creative Commons licence.

Published so far in the *sui generis* series:

001 – Monika Simmler: **Normstabilisierung und Schuldvorwurf**

002 – Marc Thommen: **Introduction to Swiss Law**

003 – Silvio Hänsenberger: **Die zivilrechtliche Haftung für autonome Drohnen unter Einbezug von Zulassungs- und Betriebsvorschriften**

004 – Mais A.M. Qandeel:
Enforcing Human Rights of Palestinians in the Occupied Territory

005 – Moritz Oehen:
Der Strafkläger im Strafbefehls- und im abgekürzten Verfahren

006 – Jens Lehne: **Crisis at the WTO: Is the Blocking of Appointments to the WTO Appellate Body by the United States Legally Justified?**

007 – Lorenz Garland: **Waffengleichheit im Vorverfahren**

008 – Christoph Urwyler:
Die Praxis der bedingten Entlassung aus dem Strafvollzug

009 – Dominik Elser: **Die privatisierte Erfüllung staatlicher Aufgaben**

010 – David Henseler:
Datenschutz bei drohnengestützter Datenbearbeitung durch Private

011 – Lorenz Raess:
Court Assistance in the Taking of Evidence in International Arbitration

Published in the *sui generis* series,
edited by Daniel Hürlimann and Marc Thommen.

1st edition, 30 September 2020
© 2020 Lorenz Raess

This work has been published under a Creative Commons license
which requires only the attribution of the author when being reused
(CC BY 4.0 – <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0>).



The pre-printing stage of this publication was supported by the Swiss National Science Foundation.

ISBN: 978-3-907297-11-7

DOI: 10.38107/011

Proofreading: Carolyn Boyle

Design: Müller+Hess, Basel

Print: Ebner & Spiegel, Ulm

www.suigeneris-verlag.ch

COURT ASSISTANCE IN THE TAKING OF EVIDENCE IN INTERNATIONAL ARBITRATION

Although international arbitration is widely hailed as an efficient, confidential and flexible way of settling commercial disputes, it has its limits. The arbitral tribunal's lack of coercive power is thrown into particularly stark relief when it comes to the taking of evidence from third parties outside the arbitral proceedings. If they do not comply voluntarily with the request of the arbitral tribunal to testify as a witness or disclose documents, assistance must be sought from state courts.

As the success of a case hinges on the evidence that a party can obtain, it is crucial to understand how to obtain evidence through state courts. At the heart of this work is the question of the conditions under which state courts may offer assistance in international arbitral proceedings. With a special focus on Switzerland and comparative aspects, this book provides helpful tactical insights for arbitral practitioners around the world.

sui generis

ISBN 978-3-907297-11-7

DOI 10.38107/011